KOREAN

BASIC COURSE
Volume 1

This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

B. NAM PARK
FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
WASHINGTON, D.C.
1968
PREFACE

FSI Korean Basic Course, Volume I, provides introductory materials in modern spoken Korean for the student who wishes to achieve a working command of the language currently spoken by an estimated 40 to 43 million people on the Korean peninsula and in Japan, Manchuria and the Soviet Union.

B. Nam Park, supervisor of Korean language instruction at FSI, is the principal author of the text. Richard B. Noss gave general direction to the project; James C. Bostain reviewed the English portions of the text for style and clarity of expression; Chunghua T. Kay, Korean instructor, worked closely with the author in the classroom testing, revision and tape recording and also typed the Korean version of the dialogues and the glossary; Evelyn C. Vass did the final typing of the English portions. The tape recordings which accompany this volume were produced in the Foreign Service Institute studios with the technical assistance of Jose M. Ramirez.

The Foreign Service Institute gratefully acknowledges the financial assistance of the U.S. Office of Education which has made the preparation and publication of this volume possible.

James R. Frith
Dean
School of Language Studies
Foreign Service Institute
Department of State
TABLE OF CONTENTS

PREPÆACE............................................................................................................. 111

INTRODUCTORY UNIT
Introduction........................................................................................................... 1
Organization and Use of This Course.............................................................. 2
Romanization...................................................................................................... 5
Korean Orthography (Hankil)............................................................................ 6
Special Symbols.................................................................................................. 6
Pronunciation...................................................................................................... 7
Basic Syllable Chart......................................................................................... 9
Syllable Final Consonant Chart....................................................................... 11

UNIT 1. GREETINGS
BASIC DIALOGUES............................................................................................. 19
Additional Greeting Expressions....................................................................... 25
Notes on Dialogues............................................................................................. 25
Grammar Notes................................................................................................. 27
1. The Verbal and the Copula........................................................................... 27
2. Particles in/nin, ii/ill, e............................................................................. 28
3. Nouns and Noun Phrases.......................................................................... 30
DRILLS................................................................................................................. 31
EXERCISES.......................................................................................................... 36

UNIT 2. FINDING ONE'S WAY AROUND
BASIC DIALOGUES............................................................................................. 39
Notes on Dialogues............................................................................................. 44
Grammar Notes................................................................................................. 45
1. Formal Polite Speech Sentences............................................................... 45
2. Particles /ka, lo/llo, e.............................................................................. 47
3. Determinatives i, oe, ki, oni, olin, wan................................................... 47
4. Post-Nouns kea, pun, cock.................................................................... 48
5. inmite and issinmite............................................................................. 48
DRILLS................................................................................................................. 50
EXERCISES.......................................................................................................... 59

UNIT 3. FINDING ONE'S WAY AROUND (Continued)
BASIC DIALOGUES............................................................................................. 61
Notes on Dialogues............................................................................................. 66
Grammar Notes................................................................................................. 67
1. Verbs: Action vs. Description and Transitive vs. Intransitive................. 67
   2. Future Tense......................................................................................... 68
   3. Honorifics............................................................................................ 68
   4. Negative an......................................................................................... 69
   5. Particle ees 'from', lat, 'in', 'on'...................................................... 69
   6. Particle e 'to'..................................................................................... 70
DRILLS................................................................................................................. 71
EXERCISES.......................................................................................................... 78

UNIT 4. SHOPPING
BASIC DIALOGUES............................................................................................. 81
Numerals (1)...................................................................................................... 87
### UNIT 5. SHOPPING (Continued)

**BASIC DIALOGUES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notes on Dialogues</th>
<th>111</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Numeral Phrases</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes on Dialogues</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammar Notes</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-n/in/nin + Nominal</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-l/lI kka yo?</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbs</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Counters cang, can, kwen, kwe, pun, mali</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRILLS</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXERCISES</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### UNIT 6. TIME

**BASIC DIALOGUES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notes on Dialogues</th>
<th>141</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Numeral Phrases</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes on Dialogues</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammar Notes</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Counters nyen, he, -wel, tal, cuil, il, nal, -si, sikan, pun</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-cI y0?</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-le/le</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbial Phrases</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRILLS</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXERCISES</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### UNIT 7. TIME (Continued)

**BASIC DIALOGUES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeral Phrases</th>
<th>171</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Notes on Dialogues</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammar Notes</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numeral Phrases</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particle lo/ilo 'as', 'in the capacity of', 'by means of'</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-n/in/nin ka yo?</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lyako/ilyako</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(1)l kka ha-</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particle kkaci</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRILLS</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflected Forms and Verb Phrases</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXERCISES</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### UNIT 8. TALKING ABOUT ONE'S WORK

**BASIC DIALOGUES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notes on Dialogues</th>
<th>199</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grammar Notes</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ki</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particle mate</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Grammar Notes................................................. 343
1. -(1)na, 'but'............................................. 343
2. -n/in [ceki] issnnikka? 'Have [you] ever done...?'... 343
3. Interrogative + -n/in/nin ci.......................... 344
4. Particles eke 'to' and ekses 'from'
5. Dependent Nouns........................................ 346

DRILLS......................................................... 347
EXERCISES.................................................. 357

UNIT 14. TALKING ABOUT ONE'S LIFE AND FAMILY
BASIC DIALOGUES........................................... 361
Notes on Dialogues......................................... 368
Grammar Notes............................................. 370
1. tte 'time', 'occasion', 'when'
2. Infinitive + se 'and...', 'and so on'
3. A Nominal + we [pakk e] 'beside Nominal'
4. ask 'each', 'at one time'
5. Infinitive + iss-

DRILLS......................................................... 372
EXERCISES.................................................. 373

UNIT 15. TALKING ABOUT ONE'S LIFE AND FAMILY (Continued)
BASIC DIALOGUES........................................... 387
Notes on Dialogues......................................... 394
Grammar Notes............................................. 395
1. bu 'after', 'the later time', 'next'
2. cas 'before', 'the previous time'
3. -n/in ci + (period of time) + tte-
4. -nin tongan 'while doing something'
5. Nominal + e teke se 'concerning Nominal'

DRILLS......................................................... 396
EXERCISES.................................................. 397

UNIT 16. TELEPHONING
BASIC DIALOGUES........................................... 411
Notes on Dialogues......................................... 419
Grammar Notes............................................. 420
1. -n/in/nin te 'while...', 'such is the case'
2. Infinitive + tu- (or noh-)
3. ke-
4. -n/in/nin ci

DRILLS......................................................... 422
EXERCISES.................................................. 423

UNIT 17. TELEPHONING (Continued)
BASIC DIALOGUES........................................... 435
Notes on Dialogues......................................... 440
Grammar Notes............................................. 440
1. Plain Speech: Formal and Informal
2. Personal Nouns in the Polite and Plain Speeches
3. Particles lako and ko

DRILLS......................................................... 442
EXERCISES.................................................. 443
UNIT 18. TALKING ABOUT WEATHER
   BASIC DIALOGUES................................................................. 465
   Notes on Dialogues............................................................. 472
   Grammar Notes................................................................. 473
       1. -ninkun/kun yo!.......................................................... 473
       2. Infinitive + ci............................................................ 473
       3. -n/in/nin kוש kath-.................................................. 474
       4. Particle chalam.......................................................... 475
       5. Particle la/to/ilato.................................................... 476
       6. -(1)l kyehwék 1- 'Be planning to'-.............................. 476
   DRILLS.............................................................................. 478
   EXERCISES....................................................................... 486

Korean-English Glossary......................................................... 488

Index to the Grammar Notes.................................................. 551
This is the first of two volumes designed to teach spoken Korean to English speakers. The Korean presented in this book is representative of the 'standard' speech of educated Koreans in Seoul, which has been the capital city and cultural, educational and political center of the country for over five hundred years. In Korea, as in every other nation, there is considerable local variation in pronunciation and vocabulary as well as in styles of speech. However, in schools all over Korea the language presented here is used and taught as the national standard and, if you learn it well, you will be speaking a form of Korean which has prestige throughout the country and which will be understood everywhere.

This course is written primarily for use in an intensive language program of twenty or more hours per week; but it can also be used for other situations, such as a language program in which one or more part-time students attend class for three to six hours per week, or for individual study with the aid of recorded tapes.

Acquiring proficiency in the use of language is like acquiring proficiency in any other skill, for example, driving an automobile— you must practice until the mechanics of driving - or speaking - are reflex. It is the aim of this course, therefore, to bring students to 'automacy' in speaking and understanding everyday Korean.

The following points are emphasized to both the teacher and the student:

1. **ALWAYS SPEAK AT A NORMAL CONVERSATIONAL SPEED.** Neither the teacher nor the student should ever allow himself to speak slower than a 'normal rate of speed'.

2. **AVOID THE USE OF ENGLISH IN THE CLASSROOM** except for occasional linguistic explanations or discussions by a linguist. Drill hours with the native-speaking instructor should be carried out entirely in Korean from the very beginning. Time spent in speaking English in class is largely time wasted.

3. **CORRECT MISTAKES IMMEDIATELY.** Mistakes made by a student should not be passed over, but should be immediately corrected by the instructor.

4. **AVOID QUESTIONS** beginning with WHY, such as "Why do you say it that way?"
If a student wants to ask questions, he should ask more useful and answerable questions beginning with HOW or WHEN, such as, "How do you use the word?" or, "When do you use this expression?"

5. AVOID DISCUSSIONS WITH THE INSTRUCTOR ABOUT KOREAN. Talking about Korean should be confined to the linguistic hour specially set aside for such discussions with a scientific linguist, separate from regular drill hours.

6. REVIEW CONSTANTLY. As the students proceed through the course, they should master everything thoroughly. Each new unit presupposes thorough mastery of what has been covered before. Otherwise, do not go ahead.

Organization and Use of This Course

Each unit in Korean Basic Course Volume 1 (Units 1-18) consists of four major parts: Basic Dialogues or other 'basic sentences', Notes on Dialogues, Grammar Notes, Drills and Exercises.

Basic Dialogues

Each unit begins with a connected dialogue of about ten sentences between two or (occasionally) more speakers. Each dialogue is to be practiced, memorized and acted out until it has been so 'overlearned' that the utterances and their sequence are understood and can be produced automatically without conscious thought or hesitation. In some units, there is a group of two or (rarely) more short dialogues which are related to one another. In such a unit, the dialogues may be treated as one connected dialogue.

In the Basic Dialogues, new words and phrases ('build-ups') are introduced immediately before each sentence. They are not part of the Dialogue itself.

In dealing with the Basic Dialogues, the following steps are suggested:

1. First, the instructor reads each sentence line-by-line at normal speed. The students listen with books closed, so that they may become accustomed to depending on their ears.

2. The instructor says the words or phrases of the 'build-ups' and then the complete sentences. The students repeat immediately after the instructor (books still closed). The instructor corrects errors by repeating mispronounced
words or phrases as they should have been said, so that the students can try again.

3. When the students are able to approximate an imitation of the instructor, they begin intensive practice on the dialogue, imitating the instructor line-by-line (books optionally open), until the instructor is satisfied that their performance is sure and fluent.

4. After going through the dialogue several times in this way, the students take the roles in the dialogue (books closed) and practice until they are freely able to do it from memory.

Notes on Dialogues and Grammar Notes

Notes on Dialogues and Grammar Notes follow the Basic Dialogue section. The Notes are intended to be self-explanatory and to be read outside the class after the Basic Dialogue has been introduced. The Notes on Dialogues are numbered according to the sentences in the dialogue, and are intended to give additional information on the use of the words, phrases or sentences. The Grammar Notes are systematic presentations of new patterns or major grammatical constructions that occur for the first time in the Basic Dialogues or other 'basic sentences' in the unit.

If the course is being taught (as intended) by a team composed of a scientific linguist and a native speaker, some explanation of the Notes may be appropriate in class. However, in general, drill time in class with a native instructor should be conducted entirely in Korean. If the native-speaking instructor is also a trained linguist and fluent in English, specific periods may be set aside for grammatical explanations; these should be kept separate from regular drill sessions during which English should be used only for translations or paraphrases designed to keep the student aware of the meaning of the Korean sentences he is practicing.

The Grammar Notes are written to give some basic understanding of Korean to the beginning student, and are intended to be immediately and practically relevant. If, however, the student finds them difficult to understand, he can simply ignore them. Instead of wasting time talking about Korean, extensive drill concentrated on specific points of pronunciation or grammar can produce the desired goal—proficiency in performance. The course is designed to produce an operational competence in Korean, not a theoretical understanding of it.

Drills

The Drills in this Course are of a considerable variety. However, each
unit basically has five kinds of drills:

Substitution Drills
Transformation (or Grammar) Drills
Response Drills
Combination Drills
Expansion Drills

It is to be noted that each drill has its own specific purpose, but the final goal of all the drills is to lead the student to develop his proficiency in free conversation. Without sufficient drill practice, he cannot achieve such proficiency. Therefore, a great proportion of class time is to be devoted to drills, until the students are able to do them accurately with their books closed.

Drills can be done in the following steps:

1. Drills are learned first like the sentences of the dialogues. That is, each new drill sentence is repeated after the instructor until it is correctly produced with books closed.

2. The students read the drill sentences aloud at normal speed from their books.

3. The drill is then done without the book; the instructor gives the appropriate cues or stimuli, and the students produce the proper responses.

a. Substitution Drills

In this course, there are several kinds of substitution drills: Simple Substitution; Multiple Substitution; Alternate Substitution, Correlation Substitution, etc. In substitution drills - of whatever kind - students will be required to produce the given pattern sentence, and then they will be required to make substitutions in one or more 'slots', using the 'cues' furnished by the instructor. Sometimes, he may be asked to form a properly arranged sentence by inserting a correlated cue. The basic aims of a substitution drill are twofold: the first is to make the student's control of the pattern sentences automatic and reflex, in order to develop fluency in actual free conversation; the second is to practice useful lexical items in the given sentence patterns. The lexical items are either those which have occurred previously or new related ones. New words and phrases added in the substitution drills are marked with an asterisk to the left of the sentence on their first occurrence. New words and phrases are used only in substitution drills. Substitution drills are printed in two columns, with English equivalents on the right and drill sentences with cues underlined on the left. English equivalents are not provided except for
the model sentences at the beginning of each drill; but only in Substitution Drills are English equivalents provided for subsequent sentences.

b. Response Drills

These are mostly question-and-answer drills designed to help the students develop ability to respond to questions normally. A model is provided at the beginning of the drill. The student is required to produce a response for each question or remark, using the cue or stimulus supplied by the instructor.

c. Transformation Drills

The student is required to produce sentences parallel in an easily generalizable way to the pattern sentence. For example, the student may be asked to transform a negative to an affirmative pattern; or a statement to a question. Transformation Drills are sometimes designated as Grammar Drills in this course.

d. Combination Drills

These are drills in which the student is asked to produce one long pattern by combining two short patterns.

e. Expansion Drills

Starting from a short sentence, the instructor gives cues one by one requesting the student to expand the sentence each time in specific ways.

Exercises

The exercises are of two sorts: (1) they ask the student to complete unfinished utterances or to give appropriate responses to the questions based on reality relevant to each situation; (2) they offer suggestions about additional practice and review for what has been covered in the unit.

The students should be able to do all these exercises fluently and accurately before going on to the next unit.

Romanization

The symbols used to represent Korean sounds are based on a phonemic analysis (see Pronunciation), but each word is transcribed morphophonemically - that is, each word is always written with the same sequence of symbols, even though its pronunciation may be changed by what precedes or follows it. However, if a word has two shapes, our selection is made on the basis of the final sound of the preceding word. The stems of inflected words (i.e. verbs) are written the same way always, even if phonetic changes take place when certain endings or suffixes are added to them.
Words are separated by spaces. A Korean word is a form which may be either (1) inflected or uninflected, (2) bound or free. Free forms can occur alone, while bound forms can occur only with other forms. If a bound form occurs with another form, the combination is a single word unless at least one of the bound forms also occurs with free forms in other constructions.

The first letter of a sentence (except 1 or 2) is capitalized. So is the first letter of a proper noun wherever it occurs.

Korean Orthography (Hankil)

In Volume 1, the dialogue portions of each unit are accompanied by Korean orthography (Hankil) throughout the text. And in the glossary at the end of the text, Hankil is provided for all entries, in addition to English equivalents.

We follow the standard Korean spelling rules in this text regardless of the transcription. Spaces within a phrase or sentence are based on Hankil writing rules; for example, particles are not separated from the words preceding them.

Since Hankil is relatively easy to learn, it may be introduced gradually during the middle part of the text, replacing the Romanized transcription completely by the time Volume 1 is completed. A student should thus be able to read in Hankil at normal speed before he goes on to Volume 2, which is entirely in Hankil and English.

It is not the intention of this text to teach spoken Korean through Hankil from the very beginning, since it requires some time before the student can read it fluently. Hankil can be easily mastered by reading (in Hankil) dialogues which have already been memorized by the students.

It is suggested that students interested in written Korean (which requires the knowledge of Chinese characters in addition to Hankil) use an appropriate basic reading text.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>In a KOREAN sequence</th>
<th>In an ENGLISH sequence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( )</td>
<td>Optional addition, no change of meaning. a(b) = a or ab; b is optional.</td>
<td>Explanatory information, not required in English.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Muos (11) hasimnikka?</td>
<td>Korean (language)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'What do [you] do?'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Literal translation:
[I] I'm fine. (I'm exist well.)

English items not represented in Korean:
[I] I'm fine. (I exist well.)

Alternate forms (like English a/an).
1/ka, 1l/l1

'Sentence' pronunciation of preceding words (like English can't you /kancha/)
sstehsımnikka?/sttessımnikka/
haksǝng/hakssǝng/
Hankuk mal/hangkungmal/

(In 'Build-ups') or child; baby

(In substitution drills) new lexical item.

End of question-sentence.

End of other kinds of sentences.

After (1) sentence adverbs and adverb phrases, (2) subordinate clauses.

(1) Connects parts of compound words (like English sister-in-law), (2--in Grammar Notes) indicates end of verb stem or beginning of some verb endings.

Pronunciation

Standard Korean, spoken by educated natives of Seoul, has an inventory of 8 vowels, 2 semi-vowels and 19 consonants:
(a) Vowels

i  i  u
   e  e  o
   ə  a

(b) Semi-vowels

w  y

(c) Consonants

p  t  c  k
 pp tt cc kk
 ph th ch kh h
 s
 ss
 m  n  ng
 l

Note: The symbols pp, tt, cc, kk, ph, th, ch, kh, ss, ng in the above chart are unit sounds, not combination sounds.

The Korean phonological system can be described in terms of possible syllable formation:

(a) 8 single vowels
(b) 144 consonant + vowel
(c) 11 semi-vowel + vowel
(d) 108 consonant + ɨ (semi-vowel) + vowel
(e) 90 consonant + ɨ (semi-vowel) + vowel
(f) 1 i + ɨ
(g) 1 ɨ + a + ɨ
(h) 8 consonant + ɨ + a + ɨ
(i) 56 vowel + consonant
(j) 1008 consonant + vowel + consonant
(k) 42 ɨ + vowel + consonant
(l) 35 ɨ + vowel + consonant
(m) 756 consonant + ɨ + vowel + consonant
(n) 630 consonant + ɨ + vowel + consonant

The most common syllable types, however, are the first five kinds: (a) 8 single vowels, (b) 144 consonant + vowel, (c) 11 semi-vowel + vowel, (d) 108 consonant + ɨ + vowel, (e) 90 consonant + ɨ + vowel.

The following chart shows the formation of the basic Korean syllables. It is essential that the student should ultimately be able to pronounce and distinguish each syllable type correctly.

Syllable Final Consonant Chart

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Possible syllable final consonants within or at the end of words.</th>
<th>Actual syllable-final sounds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) -k</td>
<td>/ -k/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) -t</td>
<td>/ -t/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-th</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-s</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-c</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-cc</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) -p</td>
<td>/ -p/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ph</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) -h</td>
<td>/ --/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5) -l</td>
<td>/ -l/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(6) -m</td>
<td>/ -m/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(7) -n</td>
<td>/ -n/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(8) -ng</td>
<td>/ -ng/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Practice 2

(1) kak
    kakk
    kakh
    /kak/

(2) tat
    tatt
    tath
    tas
    tass
    /tat/
INTRODUCTORY UNIT

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

tac
	tacoon /tat/
tach

(3) pap
	papp /pap/
paph

(4) ah /a/
(5) lal /lal/
(6) mam /mam/
(7) nan /nan/
(8) ang /ang/

Every syllable-final consonant within or at the end of a word becomes the initial consonant of the following syllable when a vowel occurs immediately after it. If two consonants occur in a cluster, the first of the cluster belongs to the preceding syllable and the second goes to the following syllable. Morphophonemic boundary within a word is not indicated. Thus, the consonant combinations -p p-, -t t-, -c c-, -k k-, -s s-, -p h-, -t h-, -c h-, -h h-, which may be divided morphemically so that the first consonant of the cluster belongs to the preceding syllable and the second to the following syllable, are not distinguished syllabically from the unit consonants pp, tt, cc, kk, ss, ph, th, ch, kh, even though the Korean orthography does distinguish them. In Korean, every syllable contains a vowel; therefore, there are as many syllables as there are vowels.

Practice 3

(1) kaka
	kakka
	kakha

(2) tata
	tatta
	tatha
	tasa
	tassa
	taca
	tacca
	tacha

(3) papa
	pappa
	papha

(4) sha

(5) lala

(6) mama

(7) nana

(8) anga

12
### KOREAN BASIC COURSE

**INTRODUCTORY UNIT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>Symbol:</th>
<th>Closest English Sound:</th>
<th>Short Description:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>'a' in 'father'</td>
<td>short</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>'u' in 'but'</td>
<td>open; phonetically [ɔ] or [ʌ]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>'o' in 'for'</td>
<td>rounded; with lips protruded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>'u' in 'food'</td>
<td>short with lip-rounding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>'u' in 'put'</td>
<td>long and unrounded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>'ee' in 'meet'</td>
<td>short</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>'e' in 'pen'</td>
<td>lower than English 'e'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a'</td>
<td>'a' in 'bat'</td>
<td>short</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Practice 4**

1. /a/
   - a: 'oh'
   - ai: 'child'
   - ae: 'well'

2. /e/
   - ase: 'quickly'
   - ai: 'yesterday'
   - ae: 'I' (polite form)

3. /o/
   - o: 'a family name'
   - o1: 'cucumber'
   - Co: 'a family name'

4. /u/
   - un: 'luck'
   - au: 'younger brother'
   - kutu: 'shoe'

5. /i/
   - in: 'silver'
   - iysa: 'doctor'
   - kim: 'gold'

6. /i/
   - i: 'lice'
   - Kim: 'a family name'
   - pi: 'rain'

7. /e/
   - ne: 'yes'
   - nek: 'child'
   - eku: 'gee'
   - ke: 'crab'

8. /æ/
   - æki: 'child'
   - peau: 'actor'
   - kæ: 'dog'

### KOREAN INJUCTIONAL ARTICLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2</th>
<th>Symbol:</th>
<th>Closest English Sound:</th>
<th>initially</th>
<th>medially</th>
<th>finally</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>'c' in 'can'</td>
<td>slightly aspirated</td>
<td>sometimes voiced</td>
<td>unreleased</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kk</td>
<td>'c' in 'scan'</td>
<td>unaspirated; tense</td>
<td>unaspirated; tense</td>
<td>unreleased</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kh</td>
<td>'k' in 'keen'</td>
<td>heavily aspirated</td>
<td>heavily aspirated</td>
<td>unreleased</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# KOREAN BASIC COURSE

## Practice 5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. /k/</th>
<th>2. /kk/</th>
<th>3. /kh/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kim 'a family name'</td>
<td>kkum 'dream'</td>
<td>khi 'height'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>koki 'meat'</td>
<td>kkachhi 'magpie'</td>
<td>kho 'nose'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aka 'baby'</td>
<td>akka 'a little while ago'</td>
<td>cokha 'nephew'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kuk 'soup'</td>
<td>cakku 'repeatedly'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3</th>
<th>Symbol: Closest English Sound:</th>
<th>Initially</th>
<th>Medially</th>
<th>Finally</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>'t' in 'top'</td>
<td>slightly aspirated</td>
<td>sometimes voiced intervocalically</td>
<td>unreleased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tt</td>
<td>'t' in 'stop'</td>
<td>unaspirated tense</td>
<td>unaspirated tense</td>
<td>unreleased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>th</td>
<td>'t' in 'teen'</td>
<td>heavily aspirated</td>
<td>heavily aspirated</td>
<td>unreleased</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Practice 6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. /t/</th>
<th>2. /tt/</th>
<th>3. /th/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tal 'moon'</td>
<td>ttal 'daughter'</td>
<td>thal 'mask' or 'trouble'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eti 'where'</td>
<td>itta 'later'</td>
<td>ithil 'two days'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pata 'sea'</td>
<td>patta 'receive'</td>
<td>pithal 'slope'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tot 'sail'</td>
<td>tto 'again'</td>
<td>tho 'particle (in grammar)'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4</th>
<th>Symbol: Closest English Sound:</th>
<th>Initially</th>
<th>Medially</th>
<th>Finally</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>'p' in 'pin'</td>
<td>slightly aspirated</td>
<td>sometimes voiced intervocalically</td>
<td>unreleased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pp</td>
<td>'p' in 'spin'</td>
<td>unaspirated tense</td>
<td>unaspirated tense</td>
<td>unreleased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ph</td>
<td>'p' in 'peen'</td>
<td>heavily aspirated</td>
<td>heavily aspirated</td>
<td>unreleased</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Practice 7

1. /p/
   - pal: 'foot'
   - palka: 'red'
   - phai: 'arm'

2. /pp/
   - ppul: 'fire'
   - ppul: 'horn'
   - phul: 'grass'

3. /ph/
   - ipal: 'hair-cut'
   - ipal: 'tooth'
   - naphal: 'trumpet'
   - naphal: 'trumpet'
   - naphal: 'trumpet'

   - nap: 'lead'
   - nappin: 'bad'
   - nophi: 'height'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Closest English Sound:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>'ch' in 'chick'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc</td>
<td>'j' in 'Jack'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ch</td>
<td>'ch' in 'cheek'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initially</th>
<th>Medially</th>
<th>Finally</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>slightly aspirated</td>
<td>sometimes voiced intervocalically</td>
<td>unreleased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unaspirated; tense</td>
<td>unaspirated; tense</td>
<td>unreleased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heavily aspirated</td>
<td>heavily aspirated</td>
<td>unreleased</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Practice 8

1. /c/
   - cam: 'sleep'
   - cok: 'scale'
   - ice: 'now'
   - ece: 'yesterday'

2. /cc/
   - ccam: 'spare time'
   - cok: 'side'
   - ecci: 'how'
   - occaa: 'why'

3. /ch/
   - cham: 'truth'
   - chima: 'skirt'
   - kicha: 'train'
   - achim: 'morning'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Closest English Sound:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>'s' in 'Smith'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ss</td>
<td>'ts' in 'puts'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short Description:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regularly voiceless; unreleased in final position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voiceless; tense; unreleased in final position</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Practice 9

1. /s/
   - sal: 'flesh'
   - s1: 'poetry'

2. /ss/
   - ssal: 'rice'
   - ssi: 'seed'
## INTRODUCTORY UNIT

**KOREAN BASIC COURSE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Closest English Sound:</th>
<th>Initially</th>
<th>Medially</th>
<th>Finally</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>'m' in 'mother'</td>
<td>consonantal</td>
<td>consonantal</td>
<td>syllabic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>'n' in 'name'</td>
<td>consonantal</td>
<td>consonantal</td>
<td>syllabic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ng</td>
<td>'ng' in 'sing'</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>consonantal</td>
<td>syllabic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Practice 10

1. /m/
   - mal 'horse'
   - Mikuk 'America'
   - imi 'already'
   - mom 'body'

2. /n/
   - nal 'day'
   - nul 'sister'
   - eni 'which'
   - men 'far'

3. /ng/
   - kang 'river'
   - congig 'paper'
   - pang 'room'
   - seng 'castle'

### Practice 11

1. /l/
   - læatio 'radio'
   - palam 'wind'
   - salang 'love'
   - kelsang 'chair'
   - pal 'foot'

### Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Closest English Sound:</th>
<th>Initially</th>
<th>Medially</th>
<th>Finally</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>'h' in 'hire'</td>
<td>strong friction</td>
<td>weak friction</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Practice 12

1. /h/
   
   hana  'one'          ohu  'afternoon'
   hilin 'cloudy'       inhi  'girl's name'
   hakkyo 'school'      ahin  '90'
   huson  'descendent'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>10</th>
<th>Symbol:</th>
<th>Closest English Sound:</th>
<th>Short Description:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a</td>
<td>'wh' in 'why'</td>
<td>lip rounding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>w before</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>'y' in 'yet'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>æ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Practice 13

1. /w/  2. /y/

1. wi  'stomach'           yek  'station'
   wenki 'energy'           yul'i  'glass'
   wê  'why'               yaku  'baseball'
   cengwen 'garden'        uyu  'milk'
   I-wol  'February'       wêlya  'moon-night'

2. yê  'yes'
제 1 과 인사

(대화 A)

안녕

1. 김 : 안녕하세요?

2. 제임스 : 네, 안녕하세요?

처음

별씀 만나

3. 김 : 처음 별씀 만나.

김

기수

4. 김 기수입니다.

이름

저

저의, 제

저의 이름, 제 이름

저의 이름은

제임스입니다

5. 제임스 : 제 이름은 제임스입니다.

선생

선생은

미국

사람

미국 사람

18
UNIT 1. Greetings
BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

**Kim**

annyang
peace; tranquility
1. Annyang-hasimnikka? How are you? (‘Are you at peace!’)

**James**

2. Ne, annyang-hasimnikka? Fine. How are you? (‘Yes, how are you?’)

**Kim**

cheim
first time
pweps1mnita/pweps1mnita/
(I see you)
3. Cheim pweps1mnita. (‘I’m glad to meet you.’) (‘I see you for the first time.’)

**Kim**

Kisu
(family name)
4. Kim Kisu imnita. (given name)

[It] am Kisu Kim.

**James**

ilim
name
ce
I
ce e ilim}
my
ce e ilim }
my name
ce ilim in
as for my name
Cheims1 imnita
5. Ce ilim in Cheims1 imnita. [It] is James

My name is James. (‘As for my name, it is James.’)

**Kim**

sensæng
teacher; you (polite)
sensæng in as for the teacher; as for you
Mikuk America; the United States
salam person
Mikuk salam an American
6. Sensæng in Mikuk salam imnikka? Are you an American?
6. 김 : 선생님 미국 사람입니까?

   예
   그렇습니다.

7. 제임스 : 예, 그렇습니다.

   무엇
   무엇을
   하십니까

8. 김 : 선생님 무엇을 하십니까?

   저는
   학생
   학생입니다.

9. 제임스 : 저는 학생입니다.

   공부
   공부합니까

10. 김 : 무엇을 공부합니까?

    한국
    말
    한국말
    공부합니다

11. 제임스 : 한국말을 공부합니다.

    (대화 B)

    제임스 선생

12. 김 : 제임스 선생, 안녕하십니까?
James  yes
ne  [it] is so; [that]'s right
kilo'simnita/kilo'simnita/

7. Ne, kilo'simnita.

Kim  what(thing)?
mues  what (as direct object)
mues il  do [you] do?
hasimnikka

8. Seo'sang in mues (il) hasimnikka?  What do you do? ('As for you, what do [you] do?')

James  I (as a topic); as for me
ce nin  student
haksang/hak'sang/

9. Ce nin haksang imnita.

Kim  studying
kongpu  do [you] study?
kongpu-hamnikka

10. Mues il kongpu-hamnikka?  What do [you] study?

James  Korea
Hankuk/Hangkuk/  language; utterance; speech
mal  Korean (language)

11. Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnikka.

[I] study Korean.

Dialogue B

Kim  Mr. James

12. Ceo'sang, annyang-hasimnikka?  Good morning, Mr. James.
아

13. 제임스 : 아, 안녕하세요가, 제 샌드?

잘

있으니다

14. 김 : 예, 잘 있습니다.

요즘

어떻게

지나십니까

15. 제임스 : 요즘 어떻게 지나십니까?

뭐분에

16. 김 : 뭐분에 잘 지내십니다.

재미

어떻습니다가

17. 제임스 : 재미 어떻게습니까?

그저

18. 제임스 : 그저 그렇습니다.

부인

부인도, 부인 7개서도

19. 김 : 부인 7개서도 안녕하십니까?

20. 제임스 : 예, 잘 있습니다.
13. A, annyang-hasimnikka, Kim
    Sensang?
    a

    Oh, how are you, Mr. Kim?
    James

    well
    cal
    issimnita
    [there] is; [there] exists
    (Yes) I'm fine. ('I exist well."
    Kim

    how; in what way
    yori
    ettehke/ettehke/
    cinasimnikka
    these days; lately
    How are you getting along these days?
    James

    are [you] getting along?
    cemi
    ettehsimnikka/ettehsimnikka/
    And how are you? ('As for you, how is
    Kim

    fun; interest
    (at favor)
    tekpun e/tekppune/
    I'm doing fine, thank you. ('I'm
    16. Tekpun e cal cinamnita.
    how is [it]?
    cmi
    Sessang in cemi ettehsimnikka?
    And how are you? ('As for you, how is fun?"
    James

    just
    kice
    Just so-so. ('It is just so."
    18. Kice kildehsimnita.
    Kim

    your wife; lady
    puin
    puin to
    your wife also
    puin kkese to
    How is your wife? ('Is your wife also
    19. Puin (kkese) to annyang-
    at peace?"
    hasimnikka?
    James

    She is fine. ('Yes, [she] exists
    well."
    20. Ne, cal issimnita.

21. 미안합니다.

22. 고맙습니다.

23. 친마에 말씀입니다.

24. 실례합니다.

25. 실례했습니다.

26. 실례하겠습니까.

27. 안 됩니다.

28. (아니오) 편찮습니다.

29. 안녕히 가십시오.

30. 안녕히 계십시오.

31. 또 볼게옵니다.
ADDITIONAL GREETING EXPRESSIONS

21. Mianhamnita. (I'm sorry Thank you for your trouble.
22. Komapsimnita. Thank you.
24. Sillye-hamnita./silyehamnita/ Excuse me (on leaving, on interrupting).
25. Sillye-hæessimnita. Excuse me (for what was done).
27. An twessimnita. That's too bad.
28. (Aniyo) kwænchanhsimnita. /kwænchanssimnita/ Not at all. ('No, that's all right,')
29. Annyænghi kasipsiyo. Goodbye (to someone leaving). ('Go peacefully.')
30. Annyænghi kyesipsiyo. Goodbye (to someone staying). ('Stay peacefully.')
31. Tto pwepkessimnita. (See you again. So long. I'll see you again.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogues.)

1.2. The expression Annyæng-hasimnikka? (‘Are you at peace?’) is a general greeting similar to such English expressions as ’How are you?’, ’How do you do?’, ’Good morning.’, ’Good evening.’, etc. It is used for first meetings at any time of the day. The usual response to Annyæng-hasimnikka? are Annyæng-hasimnikka?; Ne, annyæng-hasimnikka?

3. Cheim pwepsimnita. (‘I meet you for the first time.’) is regularly said by someone who has just been introduced. The response is usually Cheim pwepsimnita.; Annyæng-hasimnikka?.

4. Kim Kisu is a full name: the family name Kim plus the given name Kisu. Most Korean names consist of three syllables: the first is a family name, the last two are a given name. Can ‘I’ is the politest equivalent of na.
6. *Sansaeng* means either 'teacher' or polite 'you'. After a family name or a family name plus a given name it is used as a title or term of address like English Mr., Mrs., or Miss. This form of address (i.e. Name + Sansaeng) is most commonly used among or to the teachers of all levels, regardless of age and/or sex, but is also commonly used among and to educated male adults. Mr./Mistta/, Mrs./Missesa/, and Miss /Missa/, followed by the family name are commonly used by Koreans as forms of address when speaking to equals and young people. These forms of address are not applied to individuals older than or superior to the speaker. A full or last name + *Sa* 'Mr.' occurs for other than the addressee to refer to a male adult of any age, rank or status. A family name + *Sa* is also used as a term of address directly to the addressee who is a blue-collar worker.

7. *Ne, kilahsammnita.* ('What you just said is right, that's so!') is used as a response when you agree to the Yes-No question regardless of whether it is negative or affirmative. *Aniyo*, the opposite of *Ne*, means 'What you just said is wrong.' It is used in a parallel way as opposed to *Ne*. Often *Ne* and *Aniyo* are used similarly as 'yes' and 'no' in affirmative Yes-No questions but are the other way around in negative Yes-No questions.

10.11. When a situation is obvious, the subject or topic in a Korean sentence is usually omitted. For example, *Sansaeng in* musa il kongpu-hamnikka? 'What do you study?'; *Na nun* Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita. 'I study Korean.' Note that the subjects or topics in brackets may be omitted in speech. *Kongpu-hamnita* 'studies' is one of many Korean verbs which are formed from nouns. The noun *kongpu* 'studying' makes a verb (stem) by simply adding another verb (stem) *ha-* 'to do', that is, *kongpu + ha-* kongpu-ha- 'to study'. (See Grammar Notes, the Verbal.) Examples:

```
Kongpu-hamnita.  [I study.]
Kongpu-hamnikka?  ['Do [you] study?'
```

12. *Ceimsa Sansaeng,annyang-hamnника*? ('Mr. James, how are you?') and *Annyang-hamnника, Ceimsa Sansaeng?* ('How are you, Mr. James?') can be freely interchangeable.

15. *Yoom attohke cinasimnтика?* ('How do you pass by these days?') is a polite greeting to someone you know well, to ask him how things are going. The usual responses are *Takpun e cal cinamnita.* ('I pass by well at your favor.') or *Kice kilahsammnita.* 'Just so-so.'
19. Puin without being preceded by a name means either 'lady' or 'your wife'.
   A family name (with or without being followed by a given name) + Sensaeng
   (or a title) + puin means 'Mrs. _____' or 'Mr. so-and-so's wife'.
   Example:
   Kim Sensaeng puin  'Mrs. Kim' or 'Mr. Kim's wife'

21. Mianhamnita, is commonly used to apologize, or to express thanks
   immediately upon receiving something.

23. Chenman e malsim imnita, ('A million words.') is a formal response to
   'Thank you!', complimentary statements, and apologies. The English
   equivalent is 'You're welcome!' or 'Not at all.'

24. Silye-hamnita, ('I commit rudeness.'), Silye-haesimnita, ('I committed
   rudeness.'), Silye-hakessimnita, ('I'll commit rudeness.') are different
   only in time: present, past, and future, respectively. The proper one
   depends on the situation. Silye-hamnita, and Silye-hakessimnita,
   are used interchangeably for what is not done. Silye-haesimnita, is
   used for something already done. 'Excuse me.' in English is used
   generally for all three expressions.

27. An twessimnita. 'That's too bad.' ('[It] has not become.') is used to
   express the speaker's sympathy or regret.

28. (Aniy), kwanchanhsimnita. 'Not at all.' ('(No), that's not bad.') is
   an informal response to Mianhamnita, Komapsimnita, Silye-hamnita,
   (or Silye-hakessimnita, or Silye-haesimnita.), or to An twessimnita.

29. When two people part, the one who goes away says Annyonghi kyesipsiyo.
   ('Stay peacefully!'), and the one who remains says Annyonghi kasipsiyo.
   ('Go peacefully!'). If both are departing, they both say Annyonghi
   kasipsiyo.

---

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. The Verbals and the Copula

   In Korean, inflected words, which may be used by themselves as complete
   sentences, are called Verbals. Korean verbals are made up of two main parts:
   Verb Stems + Endings.

   Neither of the two main components in a verbal occurs alone. The verbals
   occur in a variety of forms depending on what endings are added to the verb stems,
but the verb stems maintain their shapes, in most instances. Hereafter, we will call verb stems as well as all members of the inflected class of words Verbs.

In Korean dictionaries, verbs always are listed with the ending -ta. For instance, ka-ta 'to go', o-ta 'to come', mek-ta 'to eat', ca-ta 'to sheep', ilk-ta 'to read'. This is called the dictionary form of a verb. When -ta is dropped from the dictionary form the Verb Stem remains. It is very important to recognize every verb stem because all the inflected forms are based on them.

Examples of Verbals:

(Ce nın) Kongpu-hamnita. (I'm studying.)
(Ce nın) Hankuk mal il kalichimnita. (I teach Korean.)
(Ce nın) Cinamnita. (I'm fine.) (I pass by well.)

(Imm) is a verb: ᵁ- is its stem and -nita is its ending. Imm is and the other inflected forms of ᵁ- (for example, its dictionary form ᵁ-ta) are used in sentences like 'Noun A is Noun B.' Often Noun A is not stated, but is understood. Thus, the verb stem ᵁ- is equivalent to one meaning of the English verb 'to be'. Notice, however, that the English verb 'to be' is used not only to connect two nouns ('A is B') as in 'I am a teacher', but is also used in sentences like 'A is in such and such a state', as in 'She is beautiful'. The Korean verb Imm is used only for 'A is B', never in sentences like 'A is beautiful'.

Imm is called the Copula; ᵁ- is the stem of the Copula.

The Copula never occurs alone. It is always preceded immediately by a noun and there is no pause between the noun and the Copula.

The Copula is distinguished from other verbals only in that the Copula never occurs as a complete sentence, whereas other verbals may occur as complete sentences. Observe the following Copula expressions:

(Ce nın) Kim imm. (I am Kim.)
(Ki kas;) Mua imm. (What is (it)?)
(Ce nın) Mikuk salam imm. (I am an American.)
(Ceimsi nın) Haksang imm. (James) is a student.)

2. Particles in/nin, il/lil, e

There is a class of uninflected words in Korean which occurs within a sentence or at the end of a sentence, but never at the beginning of one. These words are never preceded by a pause; they are regularly pronounced as though they were part of the preceding word. All such words are called Particles.
Some particles have only one shape; others occur in either of two shapes determined by the final sound of the preceding word.

(a) *in/nin* 'as for', 'in reference to' is a two-shape particle; *in* occurs after a word ending in a consonant and *nin* occurs after a word ending in a vowel.

1. It follows the general topic (often one already under discussion) about which something new or significant is about to be stated or asked.

   Examples:
   
   Ce nin haksæng imnita.  'I am a student.'
   Ce ilim in Ceimsi imnita.  'My name is James.'
   Sensæng in Mlkuk salam imnikka?  'Are you an American?'

2. *in/nin* also occurs as the particle of comparison following a topic which is being compared: A *in/nin* 'in comparison with (others)' or 'insofar as we're talking about A.'

   Examples:
   Sensæng in mues il hasimnikka?  'What are YOU doing?'
   Ce nin Yongs nin kongpu-hamnita.  'ENGLISH I am studying.'

   (*in/nin* never follows an interrogative word (i.e. a word that asks a question: 'What?!', 'Who?!', 'Where?!', etc.)

(b) *il/ill* is a two-shape particle: *il* occurs after a noun ending in a consonant and *ill* after a noun ending in a vowel. The particle *il/ill* singles out the preceding noun as the direct object of the following inflected expression. Examples:

   Mues il kongpu-hamnikka?  'What do [you] study?'
   Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita.  '[I] am studying Korean.'
   Ilpon mal il kalichimnita.  '[He] teaches Japanese.'
   Cungkuk mal il mal-hamnita.  '[He] speaks Chinese.'

(c) *e*

When the particle *e* occurs between two nouns, it is called the Possessive Particle. Noun 1 + *e* + Noun 2 means 'Noun 1's Noun 2' or 'Noun 2 of Noun 1.'

   Examples:
   ce e ilim  'my name'
   hakkyo e ilim  'the name of the school'
   Kim e chák  'Kim's book'

Korean nouns are uninflected words, that is, they have only one form. (They do not, for example, reflect the singular-plural distinction as English nouns do.) In Korean two or more nouns often make up noun phrases and are used as though they were one word. Compare:

(a) Single nouns:

Mikuk
's America', 'the U.S.'

salam
'person', 'man'

mal
'language', 'utterance'

(b) Noun Phrases:

(1) Country name + salam = Nationality

Mikuk salam
'(an) American' ( 'America person')

Yangkuk salam
'(an) Englishman' ( 'British person')

Ilpon salam
'(a) Japanese' ( 'Japan person')

Cungkuk salam
'(a) Chinese' ( 'China person')

(2) Country name + mal = language of the country named

Hankuk mal
'Korean (language)' ( 'Korea language')

Cungkuk mal
'Chinese (language)' ( 'China language')

Pullanse mal
'French' ( 'France language')

Yenge*
'English'

Note 1: Place name + mal = dialect

Soul mal
'Seoul dialect'

Pusan mal
'Pusan dialect'

Note 2: Place name + salam = Person of the place named

Nam-Han salam
'South Korean'

Pusan salam
'Pusanian'

Soul salam
'Seoulite'

Nyuyok salam
'New Yorker'

A noun which may occur as a free form is called a Free Noun. Hereafter, any noun or noun phrase which occurs in a position where a free noun can be substituted shall be called a Nominal Expression or simply a Nominal.

* Yenge is a single-word expression for 'English'.

Yangkuk mal ( 'British language') is rarely used for English.
DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

1. Ce ilim in Ceimsi imnita.  My name is James.
2. Ce ilim in Kim imnita.  My name is Kim.
3. Ce ilim in Kisu imnita.  My name is Kisu.
4. Ce ilim in Kim Kisu imnita.  My name is Kisu Kim.
5. Ce ilim in Pak imnita.  My name is Park (family name).
6. Ce ilim in I Kisu imnita.  My name is Kisu Lee (family name +
given name).
7. Ce ilim in Chwe imnita.  My name is Choe (family name).
8. Ce ilim in Cemg imnita.  My name is Chung (family name).

B. Substitution Drill

1. Ce mn haksang imnita.  I am a student.
2. Ce mn sensang imnita.  I am a teacher.
3. Ce mn Hankuk salam imnita.  I am a Korean.
4. Ce mn Mikuk salam imnita.  I am an American.
5. Ce mn Mikuk haksang imnita.  I am an American student.
6. Ce mn Hankuk haksang imnita.  I am a Korean student.
7. Ce mn Hankuk mal haksang imnita.  I am a Korean (language) student.
8. Ce mn Hankuk mal sensang imnita.  I am a Korean (language) teacher.
9. Ce mn Mikuk mal sensang imnita.  I am an American (language) teacher.
10. Ce mn Yenge sensang imnita.  I am an English teacher.
11. Ce mn Mikuk salam imnita.  I am an American.

C. Substitution Drill

1. Ce mn Hankuk salam imnita.  I am a Korean.
2. Ce mn Yengkk salam imnita.  I am an Englishman.
3. Ce mn Ilpon salam imnita.  I am a Japanese.
5. Ce mn Tokil salam imnita.  I am a German.
6. Ce mn Pullanse salam imnita.  I am a Frenchman.
7. Ce mn Seoul salam imnita.  I am from Seoul.
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 1

D. Substitution Drill

1. Sannæng in Mikuk salam imnikka?
   {Are you an American?
   {Is the teacher an American?

2. Sannæng in Hankuk salam imnikka?
   {Are you a Korean?
   {Is the teacher a Korean?

3. Sannæng in Yengkuk salam imnikka?
   {Are you an Englishman?
   {Is the teacher an Englishman?

4. Sannæng in Ilpom salam imnikka?
   {Are you a Japanese?
   {Is the teacher a Japanese?

5. Sannæng in Cungkuk salam imnikka?
   {Are you a Chinese?
   {Is the teacher a Chinese?

6. Sannæng in Tokil salam imnikka?
   {Are you a German?
   {Is the teacher a German?

7. Sannæng in Pullanse salam imnikka?
   {Are you a Frenchman?
   {Is the teacher a Frenchman?

8. Sannæng in Soul salam imnikka?
   {Are you from Seoul?
   {Is the teacher from Seoul?

9. Sannæng in Kim sannæng imnikka?
   {Are you Mr. Kim?
   {Is the teacher Mr. Kim?

*10. Sannæng in Hankuk yecæ imnikka?
    Is the teacher a Korean woman?

*11. Sannæng in Mikuk yecæ imnikka?
    Is the teacher an American woman?

*12. Sannæng in Yengkuk yecæ imnikka?
    Is the teacher an English woman?

E. Substitution Drill

1. Sannæng in Mikuk salam imnikka?
   Is the teacher an American?

2. Kim Sannæng in Mikuk salam imnikka?
   Is Mr. Kim an American?

3. Ceinsi Sannæng in Mikuk salam
   imnikka?
   Is Mr. James an American?

4. Pak Sannæng in Mikuk salam
   imnikka?
   Is Mr. Park an American?

5. Hakaæng in Mikuk salam imnikka?
   Is the student an American?

6. Hankuk mal hakaæng in Mikuk salam
   imnikka?
   Is the Korean (language) student an
   American?

7. Hankuk mal sannæng in Mikuk salam
   imnikka?
   Is the Korean (language) teacher an
   American
F. Substitution Drill

1. Sensaeng in mues (11) hasinminnaka?
   What do you do?
   What does the teacher do?
   What does the student do?

2. Haksang in mues (11) hasinminnaka?
   What do you do (to husband or wife, or to the same male adult friend)?

*3. Tangsin in mues (11) hasinminnaka?
   What does Mr. James do?

4. Geimsa Sensaeng in mues (11)
   hasinminnaka?
   What does Mr. Lee do?
   What does Mr. Choe do?

5. I Sensaeng in mues (11) hasinminnaka?
   What does Mr. Kim do?

6. Chwe Sensaeng in mues (11)
   hasinminnaka?
   What does Mr. Kim study?

7. Kim Sensaeng in mues (11) hasinminnaka?
   What does Mr. Kim learn?
   What does Mr. Kim teach?

*8. Kim Sensaeng in mues (11) kongpu-
    hamnikka?
   What does Mr. Kim read?

*9. Kim Sensaeng in mues (11) paumnikka?

*10. Kim Sensaeng in mues (11)
    kalichimnikka?

*11. Kim Sensaeng in mues (11)
    1(1)kalimnikka?

G. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sensaeng in mues 11
   1(1)ksimnikka?
   What does Mr. Kim read?

2. Pak Sensaeng in mues 11
   1(1)ksimnikka?
   What does Mr. Park read?

3. Pak Sensaeng in mues 11 paumnikka?
   What is Mr. Park learning?

4. Chwe Sensaeng in mues 11 paunnikka?
   What is Mr. Choe learning?
   What does Mr. Choe teach?

5. Chwe Sensaeng in mues 11
   kalichimnikka?

6. Mikuk haksang in mues kalichimnikka?
   What is the American student teaching?

*7. Mikuk haksang in mues 11 mal-
    hamnikka?
   What does the American student say?
   What does the American student speak?

8. Hankuk mal sensaeng in mues 11 mal-
    hamnikka?
   What does the Korean teacher say?

9. Hankuk mal sensaeng in mues 11
    kongpu-hamnikka?
   What is the Korean teacher studying?

10. Ilpon haksang in mues 11 kongpu-
    hamnikka?
H. Substitution Drill

1. (Cε нιн) Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnīta. I'm study(ing) Korean.
2. (Cε нιн) Mikuk mal il kongpu-hamnīta. I'm study(ing) the American language.
3. (Cε нιн) Ilpon mal il kongpu-hamnīta. I'm study(ing) Japanese.
4. (Cε нιн) Cungkuk mal il kongpu-hamnīta. I'm study(ing) Chinese.
5. (Cε нιн) Yenge līl kongpu-hamnīta. I'm study(ing) English.
6. (Cε нιн) Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnīta. I'm study(ing) Korean.
7. (Cε нιн) Hankuk mal il kalichimnīta. I'm teach(ing) Korean.
9. (Cε нιн) Hankuk mal il pawmnnīta. I'm learn(ing) Korean.
10. (Cε нιн) Hankuk mal il i(i)ksimnīta. I'm read(ing) Korean.

I. Substitution Drill

1. (Sensæng ēn) mues il kongpu-hamnikka? What do you study?
2. (Sensæng ēn) Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnikka? Do you study Korean?
    hamnikka?
3. (Sensæng ēn) Mikuk mal il kongpu-
    hamnikka? Do you study the American
    language?
4. (Sensæng ēn) Cungkuk mal il kongpu-
    hamnikka? Do you study Chinese?
5. (Sensæng ēn) Ilpon mal il kongpu-
    hamnikka? Do you study Japanese?
6. (Sensæng ēn) Yenge līl kongpu-hamnikka? Do you study English?
7. (Sensæng ēn) Tokil mal il kongpu-hamnikka? Do you study German?
8. (Sensæng ēn) Pullansæ mal il kongpu-
    hamnikka? Do you study French?
J. Substitution Drill

1. Ce nun Yenge lil mal-hamnita.
2. Kim Sensaeng in Yenge lil mal-hamnita.
5. Hankuk haksawng in Pullanse mal il powsnmita.
6. Hankuk haksawng in Tokil mal il powsnmita.
7. Hankuk haksawng in Tokil mal il ilksaminita.
8. Yongkuk haksawng in Tokil mal il ilksaminita.
10. Yongkuk haksawng in Cungkuk mal il kalichiminita.
11. Mikuk haksawng in Cungkuk mal il kalichiminita.

I speak English.
Mr. Kim speaks English.
Mr. Kim speaks French.
Mr. Kim is learning French.
Korean students are learning French.
Korean students are learning German.
Korean students read German.
British students read German.
British students read Chinese.
A British student is teaching Chinese.
An American student is teaching Chinese.

K. Response Drill (based on the dialogues)

Teacher:
1. Annyong-hasimnikka?
2. Chaeim pwepsinmita.
3. Ce ilim in Kim Kisu imnita.
4. Sensaeng in Mikuk salam imnittaka?
5. (Sensaeng in) muus (il) hasimnikka?
6. Mus il kongpu-hamnikka?
7. Ceimsi Sensaeng, annyong-hasimnikka?
8. Yocim ettehke cinasimnikka?
9. (Sensaeng in) cemi (ka) ettehsimnikka?

Student:
Ne, annyong-hasimnikka?
Annyong-hasimnikka? Cheim pwepsinmita.
Ce ilim in Ceimsi imnita.
Ne, kilohsimnita.
Ce nun haksawng imnita.; Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita.
Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita.
Ne, cal issimnita.
(Tokpun e) cal cinamnita.
Kise kilohsimnita.
UNIT 1

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

L. Response Drill

Teacher:
1. Mianhamnita.
2. Sillye-hamnita.
4. Sillyehakessimnita.
5. Annyeghi kasipsiyo.
6. Annyeghi kyesipsiyo.
8. Mianhamnita.
10. Tto pwepkessimnita.

Student:
Chenan e malessim imnita.
(Aniyo) kwanschanhsimnita.
(Aniyo) kwanschanhsimnita.
(Aniyo) kwanschanhsimnita.
Annyeghi kyesipsiyo.
Annyeghi kasipsiyo.
Chenan e malessim imnita.
(Aniyo) kwanschanhsimnita.
(Aniyo) kwanschanhsimnita.
Ne, tto pwepkessimnita.

EXERCISES

A. Tell Kim Sensang:
1. your name.
2. that you are an American.
3. that you are a student.
4. that you are studying Korean.
5. that you are fine.
6. that Mr. Park teaches Korean.
7. that you are glad to meet him.
8. that you speak Japanese.
9. that you read French.
10. that Mr. Park is learning English.
11. that the Korean (language) teacher is a woman from Seoul.
12. that the American is an English teacher.
13. that the English teacher speaks Chinese.
14. that the Chinese woman teaches German.
15. that the German (language) student speaks Japanese.

B. Conduct the following conversations:

Ask Mr. Kim:
1. if he is a Korean.
2. what he does.
3. what he teaches.
4. how he's getting along these days.
5. if the teacher is an American.
6. if the student is a Korean.
7. if he speaks Korean.
8. if Mr. James is a Korean (language) student.

Mr. Kim answers:
that he is.
that he is a teacher.
that he teaches Korean.
that he's doing fine.
that he is.
that he is an Englishman.
that he does.
that he is.
C. You've met a stranger at a party; tell him:

1. that you are glad to meet him.
2. that your name is so-and-so.
3. that you're studying Korean.
4. that Mr. Park is your Korean teacher.
5. that you'll see him again.
제 2 과 에서 찾기

(대화 A)

참가
실례
실례합니다

1. A: 참가 실례합니다.

말씀 좀 붓어 붓시다

2. 말씀 좀 붓어 붓시다.

3. B: 예, 무엇입니까?

대사관
미국 대사관이
어디
어디에
있습니까

4. A: 미국 대사관이 어디에 있습니까?

저기
저기에
쪽
왼쪽
왼쪽으로
가십시오

5. B: 저기에 있습니다. 왼쪽으로 가십시오.
UNIT 2. Finding One's Way Around
BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

A

camkan/camkkkan/
siluye
siluye-hamnita

1. Camkan siluye-hamnita.
   mal
   malssim
   com
   mule popsita/mulepopsita/

2. Malssim com mule popsita.

for a moment
rudeness
[I] commit rudeness
Excuse me for a moment.

word; speech; language
a little
let's inquire; let's ask
May I ask you a question? ('Let's inquire a word.')

B

Yes, what is [it]?

A

tæsakwan
Mikuk Tæsakwan i
eti
eti e
issînnîkkâ

4. Mikuk Tæsakwan i eti e issînnîkkâ?

embassy
the U.S. Embassy (as subject)
what place?
at what place?; where?
does [it] exist?; is [there]?

Where is the U.S. Embassy? ('At what place does the U.S. Embassy exist?')

B

that place; there
at that place; over there
side; direction
the left (side)
to the left
(please) go

5. Cekî e issînnîkkâ. Wen cok 1îlo kasipssiyô.

[It]'s over there. Go to the left.
6. A: 저 건물이 학교입니까?

7. B: 네, 그렇습니다.


아니요


(대화 B)

어메

시장

10. A: 시점이 어메 있습니까?

이 건물


지금

지금은

12. A: 지금은 무엇입니까?
kemmul
cê kemmul
hakkyo
6. Cê kemmul i hakkyo imnikka?

building
that building
school
Is that building a school?

B
Yes, it is.

A
very; very much
[I'm grateful
Thank you very much.

B
('a million words')
(No,) Not at all. ('You're welcome!')

Dialogue B

A
where
City Hall
Where is the City Hall?

B
dthis building
This building is the City Hall.

A
that (thing); the thing over there
as for that
What is THAT?
그것
여관


어느 것
배확점

14. A: 어느 것이 배확점입니까?

옆
옆에
시청 옆에

15. B: 배확점은 시청 옆에 있습니다.

공보
공보실
미국 공보실

16. A: 미국 공보실은 어디에 있습니까?

바로
앞
앞에
앞로 앞에

17. B: 바로 앞에 있습니다.

가사
가사합니다


14. ënî kes i pakhwacak imnikka?

15. Pakhwacak i sîchêng yêph e issîmnikka.

16. Mikuk Kongpowen in ât e issîmnikka?

17. Palo aph e issîmnikka.

18. Tetanhi kamsa-hamnîta.

19. Aniyo, chënman e yo.
UNIT 2

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogues)

1. Camkan siliye-hamnita. 'Excuse me for a moment.' is usually said when you stop a stranger to get some information.

2. Malssim com mule popsita. ('Let us ask [you] a word!') is often preceded by Camkan siliye-hamnita. and is regularly used to a stranger from whom you want to inquire about something, such as directions.

3. Musa 'what (thing)' is always a free noun. It is never used to modify a following noun.

5. Cook 'direction' occurs after determinatives (See Grammar Note 3) or place names. It never stands alone. Examples:
   - i cook
   - ce cook
   - ka cook
   - hakkyo cook
   - toseakwan cook
   - wen cook
   - clin cook

   'this way'
   'that way'
   'that way'
   'the direction of the school'
   'the direction of the embassy'
   'the left'
   'the right'

8.18 Komapsamnita. and Kansa-hamnita. 'Thank you.' are freely interchangeable on any occasion.

10. ate 'where' is the contracted form of sti + e.

13. Yakwan generally refers to 'inns' or 'hotels' of all sizes. However, modern western-style hotels are often called hotel.

14. eni 'which!', 'what' always occurs before a nominal (free or bound) as a determinative. It never occurs as a free form.

19. Chenman e yo. 'Not at all.' is the informal equivalent of Chenman e malssim imnita.
1. Formal Polite Speech Sentences

The nucleus of a Korean sentence comes at the end of the sentence. When the nucleus of a normal sentence is a verb, we talk about **verb-stems** and **verb-endings**. There are several levels and/or styles of speech which show the relationship between the speaker and the person spoken to and/or about. The distinctions of speech level are shown mostly by the inflected forms of verbs.

In all societies, everywhere, when people talk to one another, they give each other signals (gestures, tones of voice, word-choice, etc.) to show that they understand their personal relationship (equality, dominance, subordination) and the situation (polite-casual, formal-informal, etc.). Sometimes, in our democratic society, we like to pretend these things don’t exist, but they do. Very few of us can talk to our boss the way we talk to our best friend. In Korean, the personal relationship signals are built into the language.

Formal Polite Speech is the polite style of speech commonly used between adults who do not have a casual relationship. The four forms of Formal Polite Speech verb-endings are listed below.

(a) Formal Polite Statement Form: \(-mnita \sim -(s)\text{imnita}\)

In Formal Polite Statements, \(-mnita\) is added to a verb stem ending in a vowel; \(-(s)\text{imnita}\) to a verb stem ending in a consonant. **Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Verbal</th>
<th>Verbal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ka-</td>
<td>'to go'</td>
<td>Kamnita.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o-</td>
<td>'to come'</td>
<td>Omnita.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pau-</td>
<td>'to learn'</td>
<td>Pauhnita.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kongpu-ha-</td>
<td>'to study'</td>
<td>Kongpu-hamnita.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ilk-</td>
<td>'to read'</td>
<td>Ilk(s)hmnita.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mak-</td>
<td>'to eat'</td>
<td>Msk(s)nmnita.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a(i)-</td>
<td>'to know'</td>
<td>Amnita.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

45
(b) Formal Polite Question Form: \(-\text{mnikka}\) ~ \(-(s)\text{imnikka}\)

In Formal Polite Questions, \(-\text{mnikka}\) is added to a verb stem ending in a vowel, \(-(s)\text{imnikka}\) to a verb stem ending in a consonant. Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbal</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kamnita.</td>
<td>'I go.'</td>
<td>Kamnikka?</td>
<td>'Do [you] go?'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omnita.</td>
<td>'I come.'</td>
<td>Omninkka?</td>
<td>'Do [you] come?'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pamnita.</td>
<td>'I learn.'</td>
<td>Pamnikka?</td>
<td>'Do [you] learn?'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kongpu-hammna.</td>
<td>'I study.'</td>
<td>Kongpu-hammnikka?</td>
<td>'Do [you] study?'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ilk(s)imnita.</td>
<td>'I read.'</td>
<td>Ilk(s)imnikka?</td>
<td>'Do [you] read?'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mek(s)imnita.</td>
<td>'I eat.'</td>
<td>Mek(s)imnikka?</td>
<td>'Do [you] eat?'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(c) Formal Polite Imperative Form: \(-\text{ipsiyo} ~ -\text{ipsiyo}\)

In Formal Polite Requests, \(-\text{ipsiyo}\) is added to a verb stem ending in a vowel and \(-\text{ipsiyo}\) to a verb stem ending in a consonant. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Verbal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ha-</td>
<td>'to do'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ka-</td>
<td>'to go'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o-</td>
<td>'to come'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mule po-</td>
<td>'to inquire'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iss-</td>
<td>'to exist'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ilk-</td>
<td>'to read'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(d) Formal Polite Propositional Form: \(-\text{psita} ~ -\text{ipsita}\)

In Formal Polite Proposals ('Let's ____.'), \(-\text{psita}\) is added to a verb stem ending in a vowel, and \(-\text{ipsita}\) is added to a verb stem ending in a consonant. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Verbal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ka-</td>
<td>'to go'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kalichi-</td>
<td>'to teach'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mal-ha-</td>
<td>'to speak'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mule po-</td>
<td>'to inquire'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ilk-</td>
<td>'to read'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. Particles ı/ka, lo/ilo, e

(a) ı/ka

The particle ı/ka singles out the preceding word as the emphasized subject of a sentence; ı occurs after a word ending in a consonant and ka after a word ending in a vowel. When the particle ı/ka is added, the subject is emphatic. Observe the location of the emphasis in the English equivalents. Examples:

Hakkyo ı ka ıssımnita.  'There is a school.' ('A school exists.')
Cë kemul ı tẹskwán imınnita.  'That building is the embassy.'
Cë ka Hankuk mal il pẹumnit.  'I am studying Korean.'

(b) lo/ilo 'to, toward'

A place nominal + lo/ilo followed by such verbs as ka- 'to go', o- 'to come' indicates the direction of the following inflected expression. Lo occurs after a place noun which ends in a vowel and ilo after a noun ending in a consonant.

Examples:

Hakkyo lo kamnit.  'I go to school.'
Cip ilo osipiyi.  'I'm going toward the school.'
Wen cok ilo kasipiyi.  'Please come to the house.'
Wen go to the left (side).'

(c) e 'at', 'on', 'in', 'to'

A place (or location) noun + e indicates that the action of the following inflected expression takes place at the noun. Examples:

Seoul ı Hankuk e ıssımnita.  'Seoul is in Korea. ('Seoul is in Korea.')
Tẹskwán ı sti e ıssınnıkka?  'Where is the Embassy? ('At what place does the Embassy exist?')
Yékwan in palo aph e ıssımnita.  'A hotel is right ahead.'
Chëk il chëksang e tẹssımnita.  '[I] have placed (put) the book on the desk.'

3. Determinatives

There is a small class of uninflected words in Korean which never occur by themselves but are followed by nominals. Words of this class are called Determinatives. A determinitive + a nominal = a noun phrase. In Unit 2, we have the following determinatives: ı 'this', ce 'that', ka 'the (or that)', am 'which', oln 'right', wen 'left'. Observe the following examples:
UNIT 2

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

1 chak
i kes

ce salam
ce kes

ki kenmul
ki salam

en1 pemwacem
en1 kes

olin cook
wen cook

' this book'
' this (thing)'

' that man'
' that (thing over there)'

' that ('the') building'
' that man (mentioned previously)'

' which department store'
' which one'

' the right (direction)'
' the left (direction)'

Note that 1 ' this ____ and ce ' that ____' before nominals indicate nominals within the sight of the speaker, while ki ' that (or the)____' before a nominal refers to a previously mentioned one; olin 'the right____' and wen 'the left____' occur only before the word cook.

4. Post-Nouns: kes, pun, cook

Kes ('thing'), pun ('person'), cook ('side') belong to a small class of Korean nouns which never occur alone but only after such words as determinatives, free nouns, or other modifier classes of words and make up nominal phrases. Words of this class are called Post-Nouns. Examples:

i kes
ce pun
khin kes
wen cook

' this (thing)'
' that man (honored)'
'(a) big one'
' the left (side)'

5. Innita and Issimnita

In Korean there is a distinction between the expression (a) 'A is B' and (b) 'There is an A.' or 'A exists.' In Unit 1, we learned that the copula i- (of which innita is one inflected form) is used to denote 'Noun A is Noun B.' In contrast to the copula, the verb iss- (of which issimnita is one inflected form) means '(something) exists.' (See Grammar Note 1, Unit 1.) Compare:

(a)

(Ki kes in) chak innita.
I kenmul i hakkyo innita.
Na nin sensang innita.

' [It] is a book.'
'This building is a school.'
'I am a teacher.'

48
(b)

Ch'ek i issimnita.
'There is a book.'
('A book exists.')

Seul e taewakwan i issimnita.
'There is an Embassy at Seoul.'
('An embassy exists at Seoul.')

Note that a nominal i/ka + issimnita preceded by a personal noun as a topic occurs to express that the personal noun has or possesses the nominal. Examples:

Na nin ch'ek i issimnita.
'I have a book.'
('As for me a book exists.')

Senseong in Hankuk mal sacen i
issimnikka?
'Do you have a Korean dictionary?'

Ne, (na nin) sikye ka issimnita.
'Yes, I have a watch.'
A. Substitution Drill

1. Tawakwan i ati e issimnikka? Where is the Embassy?
2. Mikuk Tawakwan i ati e issimnikka? Where is the U.S. Embassy?
3. Hakkyo ka ati e issimnikka? Where is the school?
4. Sichang i ati e issimnikka? Where is the City Hall?
5. Pakhwacem i ati e issimnikka? Where is the department store?
6. Yakwan i ati e issimnikka? Where is the inn?
7. Kongpowan i ati e issimnikka? Where is the information center?
8. Mikuk Kongpowan i ati e issimnikka? Where is the USIS?
9. Hankuk Tawakwan i ati e issimnikka? Where is the Korean Embassy?
10. Haksang i ati e issimnikka? Where is the student?
11. Hankuk mal sansang i ati e issimnikka? Where is the Korean (language) teacher?
12. Ki kas i ati e issimnikka? Where is it?
13. Ai ka ati e issimnikka? Where is the child?
14. Puin i ati e issimnikka? Where is your wife? ('Where is the lady?')

B. Substitution Drill

1. Caki e issimnita. [It]'s over there.
2. Yeki e issimnita. [It]'s over here.
3. Wen cook e issimnita. [It]'s on the left.
4. Oin cook e issimnita. [It]'s on the right.
5. Aph e issimnita. [It]'s in front [of you].
6. Twi e issimnita. [It]'s in the back.
7. Yeph e issimnita. [It]'s beside [you].
8. Hakkyo e issimnita. [It]'s at school.
9. Mikuk e issimnita. [It]'s in America.
10. Hankuk e issimnita. [It]'s in Korea.
C. Substitution Drill (Supply ㅏ/ka Particle.)

1. Sicheng ㅏ issimnita. [There] is the City Hall.
2. Hakkyo (ka) issimnita. [There] is a school.
3. Kenmul (1) issimnita. [There] is a building.
4. Yewken (1) issimnita. [There] is an inn.
5. Sonaeng (1) issimnita. [There] is a teacher.
6. Kyosil (1) issimnita. [There] is a classroom.
7. Sikye (ka) issimnita. [There] is a watch.
9. Cheeksang (1) issimnita. [There] is a table.
10. Iyca (ka) issimnita. [There] is a desk.
11. Yenphil (1) issimnita. [There] is a chair.
12. Cito (ka) issimnita. [There] is a pencil.
13. Ai (ka) issimnita. [There] is a map.
14. Ai (ka) issimnita. [There] is a child.

D. Substitution Drill

1. Tsawkwan ㅏ yeke issimnita. The Embassy is here (‘at this place!’).
2. Tsawkwan ㅏ oke e issimnita. The Embassy is over there (‘at that place!’).
3. Hakkyo ka oke e issimnita. The school is over there.
4. Hakkyo ka wen cook e issimnita. The school is on the left.
5. Mikuk Kongpowen ㅏ wen cook e issimnita. USIS is on the left.
6. Mikuk Kongpowen ㅏ kenmul e issimnita. USIS is in this building.
7. Pawkwacem ㅏ kenmul e issimnita. The department store is in this building.
8. Pawkwacem ㅏ aph e issimnita. The department store is ahead.
9. Yewken ㅏ aph e issimnita. The inn is ahead.
10. Yewken ㅏ aph e issimnita. The inn is nearby.
E. Substitution Drill (Supply lo/ilo Particle.)

1. Wen cook ilo kasipsiyo.  
   (Please) go to the left.

2. Ohl cook (ilo) kasipsiyo.  
   (Please) go to the right.

3. I cook (ilo) kasipsiyo.  
   (Please) go this way.

4. Ce cook (ilo) kasipsiyo.  
   (Please) go that way.

5. Hakkyo (ilo) kasipsiyo.  
   (Please) go to school.

6. Ce kenmul (ilo) kasipsiyo.  
   (Please) go to that building.

7. Pakhwacom (ilo) kasipsiyo.  
   (Please) go to the department store.

8. Sicheng (ilo) kasipsiyo.  
   (Please) go to the city hall.

9. Yokwan (ilo) kasipsiyo.  
   (Please) go to the inn.

10. Tweakwan (ilo) kasipsiyo.  
    (Please) go to the Embassy.

F. Substitution Drill

1. Ce kenmul i hakkyo imnikka?  
   Is that building a school?

2. Ce kenmul i tweakwan imnikka?  
   Is that building the embassy?

3. Ce kenmul i Mikuk Tweakwan imnikka?  
   Is that building the U.S. Embassy?

4. Ce kenmul i sicheng imnikka?  
   Is that building the City Hall?

5. Ce kenmul i kongpowen imnikka?  
   Is that building the information center?

6. Ce kenmul i pakhwacom imnikka?  
   Is that building a department store?

7. Ce kas i pakhwacom imnikka?  
   Is that a department store?

8. I kas i pakhwacom imnikka?  
   Is this a department store?

9. KI kas i pakhwacom imnikka?  
   Is it a department store?

10. I kenmul i pakhwacom imnikka?  
    Is this building a department store?

11. ani kas i pakhwacom imnikka?  
    Which is the department store?

12. ani kenmul i pakhwacom imnikka?  
    Which building is the department store?
G. Substitution Drill (Supply /ka/ Particle)

1. Ce kemmul i hakkyo imnikka?  
   Is that building a school?
2. Ce salam i haksæng imnikka?  
   Is he ("that person") a student?
3. Ce kes i yêkwan imnikka?  
   Is that an inn?
4. Ce kemmul i Mikuk Teosalwan imnikka?  
   Is that building the U.S. Embassy?
5. Ce haksæng i Mikuk salam imnikka?  
   Is that student an American?
6. Ce yêca ka Yêngæ sensæng imnikka?  
   Is she ("that woman") an English teacher?
7. Ce cook i Mikuk Kongpowen imnikka?  
   Is USIS that way?
8. Ce hakkyo ka Hankuk mal hakkyo imnikka?  
   Is that school a Korean language school?
9. Ce kemmul i pakhwacem imnikka?  
   Is that building a department store?
10. Ce puin i Hankuk yêca imnikka?  
    Is that lady a Korean woman?

H. Substitution Drill

1. Sensæng e ilim in mües imnikka?  
   What is your name?
2. Haksæng e ilim in mües imnikka?  
   What is the student's name?
3. Ce sensæng e ilim in mües imnikka?  
   What's that teacher's name?
4. I kemmul e ilim in mües imnikka?  
   What's the name of this building?
5. Ce hakkyo e ilim in mües imnikka?  
   What's the name of that school?
6. Ce Mikuk salam e ilim in mües imnikka?  
   What's the name of that American?
7. Ce Hankuk salam e ilim in mües imnikka?  
   What's the name of that Korean?
8. Ki salam e ilim in mües imnikka?  
   What's the name of that man?
9. Ce yêkwan e ilim in mües imnikka?  
   What's the name of that inn?
10. Ce ai e ilim in mües imnikka?  
    What's the name of that child?
11. Ce puin e ilim in mües imnikka?  
    What's the name of that lady?
I. Substitution Drill

1. Печхвасем in hakkyo yeph e issimnita.
   The department store is next to the school.

2. Tweakwan in hakkyo yeph e issimnita.
   The Embassy is next to the school.

3. Mikuk Tweakwan in hakkyo yeph e issimnita.
   The U.S. Embassy is next to the school.

4. Mikuk Kongpowa in hakkyo yeph e issimnita.
   USIS is next to the school.

5. Hankan yakwan in hakkyo yeph e issimnita.
   The Korean inn is next to the school.

6. Jihong in hakkyo yeph e issimnita.
   The bank is next to the school.

7. Sangcем in hakkyo yeph e issimnita.
   The store is next to the school.

8. Hothel in hakkyo yeph e issimnita.
   The hotel is next to the school.

9. Cip in hakkyo yeph e issimnita.
   The house is next to the school.

10. Kongwan in hakkyo yeph e issimnita.
    The park is next to the school.

J. Substitution Drill

1. Печхвасем in sicheng yeph e issimnita.
   The department store is next to the City Hall.

2. Печхвасем in sicheng аph e issimnita.
   The department store is in front of the City Hall.

3. Печхвасем in sicheng twi e issimnita.
   The department store is behind the City Hall.

4. Печхвасем in sicheng wen cook e issimnita.
   The department store is on the left side of the City Hall.

5. Печхвасем in sicheng olin cook e issimnita.
   The department store is on the right side of the City Hall.

6. Печхвасем in sicheng аph cook e issimnita.
   The department store is on the front side of the City Hall.

7. Печхвасем in sicheng twi cook e issimnita.
   The department store is on the back side of the City Hall.

8. Печхвасем in sicheng kakkai issimnita.
   The department store is near the City Hall.
K. Substitution Drill (Supply in/nin Particle.)

1. Pëchwacëm in sìchëng yëph e issimnita.
   The department store is next to the City Hall.

2. Sìchëng in tewakwañ yëph e issimnita.
   The City Hall is next to the Embassy.

3. Hakkëo nin yëkwañ yëph e issimnita.
   The school is next to an inn.

4. Yëkwañ in inhëng yëph e issimnita.
   The inn is next to a bank.

5. Inhëng in sangcëm yëph e issimnita.
   The bank is next to a store.

6. Sangcëm in hotel yëph e issimnita.
   The store is next to a hotel.

7. Hotel in cip yëph e issimnita.
   The hotel is next to a house.

8. Cip in kongwëm yëph e issimnita.
   The house is next to a park.

   The park is right near the street.

L. Substitution Drill

1. Pëchwacëm in sìchëng yëph e issimnita.
   The department store is next to the City Hall.

2. Hakkëo nin sìchëng apëh e issimnita.
   The school is in front of the City Hall.

3. Hënkuek Tewakwañ in sìchëng twiè issimnita.
   The Korean Embassy is behind the City Hall.

4. Inhëng in sìchëng wen cook e issimnita.
   The bank is on the left side of the City Hall.

5. Sangcëm in sìchëng olin cook e issimnita.
   The store is on the right side of the City Hall.

6. Hotel in sìchëng kakkai issimnita.
   The hotel is near the City Hall.

7. Kôngwëm in sìchëng apëh ccook e issimnita.
   The park is on the front side of the City Hall.

8. Cip in sìchëng twiè ccook e issimnita.
   The house is on the back side of the City Hall.

9. Mikuk Kôngpëwañ in sìchëng yëph e issimnita.
   USIS is next to the City Hall.
**UNIT 2**

**KOREAN BASIC COURSE**

M. Response Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tutor: Mikuk Tæsakwan i issimnikka?</th>
<th>'Is there a U.S. Embassy?'</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Student: Ne, Mikuk Tæsakwan i issimnitaka.</td>
<td>'Yes, [there] is a U.S. Embassy.'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Ceki e issimnikka? Ne, ceki e issimnitaka.
2. Ce kes i hakkyo imnikka? Ne, ce kes i hakkyo imnitaka.
4. I kenmul i síchëng imnikka? Ne, i kenmul i síchëng imnitaka.
5. (Sensæng in) Mikuk salam imnikka? Ne, Mikuk salam imnitaka.
6. (Sensæng in) Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnitaka? Ne, Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnitaka.
7. Cal issimnikka? Ne, cal issimnitaka.
12. Ilpon mal il kalichimnitaka? Ne, Ilpon mal il kalichimnitaka.

N. Response Drill (Answer the question based on the dialogue.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. Malssim com mule popsita.</td>
<td>Ne, mues imnikka.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Tætænhi komapsimnitaka.</td>
<td>Aniyo, chenman e malssim imnitaka.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Yocim ettekhe cinasimnikka?</td>
<td>(Tskpun e) cal cinamnitaka.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Sensæng in Mikuk salam imnikka?</td>
<td>Ne, kilehsimnitaka.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. iyca ka eti e issimnikka?</td>
<td>Cheaksang aphe issimnitaka.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

56
0. Grammar Drill (Based on Grammar Note 2 supply ı/ka in a proper place.)

  Tutor: Tæskwan ıte issimnikka?
  Student: Tæskwan ı te issimnikka?

  1. Sichëng (ı) cëki e issimnitata.
  2. Hakkyo (ka) wen cöok e issimnitata.
  3. Celmiso Sensëng (ı) Mük salam imnitata.
  4. Haksëng (ı) kongpu-hamnitata.
  5. Yëki (ka) tæskwan imnitata.
  6. iyca (ka) ıt e issimnikka?
  7. Kim Kisu (ka) haksëng imnikka?
  8. Sëul (ı) Hënkuk e issimnikka?
  9. eni kes (ı) pekhwacëm imnikka?
 10. I kømmul (ı) sichëng imnikka?

  P. Transformation Drill (Transform the sentence as in the example supplying
                 the particle ı/ka.)

  Tutor: I kes ı chëk imnitata.
  Student: Chëk ı issimnitata.

                 'This is a book.'
                 'There is a book.'

  1. I kes ı hakkyo imnitata.
  2. I kes ı tæskwan imnitata.
  3. I kes ı sichëng imnitata.
  4. I kes ı sikye imnitata.
  5. I kes ı iyca imnitata.
  6. I kes ı kyosil imnitata.
  7. I kes ı Cungkuk Tæskwan imnitata.
  8. I kes ı chëksang imnitata.
  9. I kes ı pekhwacëm imnitata.
 10. I kes ı yëkwan imnitata.

                 Hakkyo (ka) issimnitata.
                 Tæskwan (ı) issimnitata.
                 Sichëng (ı) issimnitata.
                 Sikye (ka) issimnitata.
                 iyca (ka) issimnitata.
                 Kyosil (ı) issimnitata.
                 Cungkuk Tæskwan (ı) issimnitata.
                 Chëksang (ı) issimnitata.
                 Pekhwacëm (ı) issimnitata.
                 Yëkwan (ı) issimnitata.
UNIT 2

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

Q. Response Drill (Use the particle in/nin in place of i/ka and answer the questions as in the example.)

Tutor: Hakkyo ka issimnikka?
Student: Ne, hakkyo nin issimnita.

1. Cče kes il pækhwaem imnikka?
Student: Ne, cče kes il pækhwaem imnitya.

2. Sïchæng i wen cock e issimnikka?
Student: Ne, sïchæng i wen cock e issimnitya.

3. Çëimsëi ka Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnikka?
Student: Ne, Çëimsëi nin Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnitya.

4. iyca ka yëki e issimnikka?
Student: Ne iyca nin yëki e issimnitya.

5. Kim Kisu ka Hankuk salam imnikka?
Student: Ne, Kim Kisu nin Hankuk salam imnitya.

6. Sœul i Hankuk e issimnikka?
Student: Ne, Sœul in Hankuk e issimnitya.

7. Pak Sënsëng i Yënge ilil kalichimnikka?
Student: Ne, Pak Sënsëng in Yënge ilil kalichimnitya.

8. Mikuk salam i Cungkuk mal il pœumnikka?
Student: Ne, Mikuk salam in Cungkuk mal il pœumnitya.

R. Grammar Drill (Supply the right particle wherever appropriate: in/nin, il/ilil, e, ilo/lo.)

Tutor: Cë ilim Çëimsëi imnitya.
Student: Cë ilim in Çëimsëi imnitya.

1. Cče (nin) haksæng imnitya.
Student: Cče (nin) haksæng imnitya.

2. Mues (il) kongpu-hamnikka?
Student: Mues (il) kongpu-hamnitya.

3. Hankuk mal (il) pœumnitya.
Student: Hankuk mal (il) pœumnitya.

4. Pak Sënsëng in Yënge (ilil) kalichimnitya.
Student: Pak Sënsëng in Yënge (ilil) kalichimnitya.

5. Tëwoakwan in cëki (e) issimnitya.
Student: Tëwoakwan in cëki (e) issimnitya.

6. Wen cock (ilo) kasipsïyo.
Student: Wen cock (ilo) kasipsïyo.

7. Cče kes (in) mues imnikka?
Student: Cče kes (in) mues imnitya.

8. Palo apë (e) issimnitya.
Student: Palo apë (e) issimnitya.

9. Hakkyo (lo) kasipsïyo.
Student: Hakkyo (lo) kasipsïyo.

10. Olin cock (ilo) kasipsïyo.
Student: Olin cock (ilo) kasipsïyo.

11. Cče nin Yënge (ilil) mal-hamnitya.
Student: Cché nin Yënge (ilil) mal-hamnitya.

12. Çëimsëi Sënsëng in Ilpon mal (il) kalichimnitya.
Student: Çëimsëi Sënsëng in Ilpon mal (il) kalichimnitya.
EXERCISES

A asks B for the following information and B responds.

A asks:

1. where the U.S. Embassy is.
2. what that building is.
3. which building the department store is.
4. where USIS is.
5. where the City Hall is.
6. what he does.
7. how he's doing these days.
8. whether that building is a department store.
9. whether the school is next to the City Hall.
10. whether the school is behind the City Hall.
11. whether the department store is in front of the U.S. Embassy.
12. whether USIS is beside the Embassy.
13. whether that is the school building.
14. where a bank is.
15. whether the park is near the street.
16. whether the store is beside the street.

B answers:

that it is next to the City Hall.
that it is the USIS building.
that the department store is in front of USIS.
that it is in front of the department store.
that it is in front of USIS.
that he teaches Korean.
that he's doing O.K.
that it is.
that it is behind the City Hall.
that it is in front of the City Hall.
that it is next to the Embassy.
that it is in the Embassy building.
that it is a department store.
that it is near the park.
that it is beside the street.
that it is so.
제3과  길 찾기(계속)

(대화 A)

여보세요
길
좀
몇여 보십시오.

1. A: 여보세요. 길 좀 몇여 보십시오.

어디를
찾습니까?

2. B: 예, 어디를 찾습니까?

역
서울역
가는 길
아십니까, 잊니가?

3. A: 서울역에 가는 길은 아십니까?

뚝 바로
가십시오.


여기에서

5. A: 여기에서 면니까?
UNIT 3. Finding One's Way Around (Continued)
BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

A

yose yo
kil
com
mul pokessimnita

hello there!; say!
street; road; way
a little
I will inquire

1. Yose yo! Kil com mul
pokessimnita.

Excuse me. May I ask you for directions?
('I'll inquire about the street a little.')

B

eti lil
chacsimnikka/chassimnikka/

where (as direct object)
do [you] look for?

2. Ne, eti lil chacsimnikka?

Certainly, where do you want to go?
('What (place) are you looking for?')

A

yek
Seoul Yeok e
kanin kil
asimnikka

station
to Seoul Station
the way to ('going way')
do [you] know?

3. Seoul Yeok e kanin kil il asimnikka?

Can you tell me how to get to Seoul
Station? ('Do you know the way to
Seoul Station?')

B

ttokpalo
kasipsiyo

straight ahead, straight
(please) go

4. Ne, ttokpalo kasipsiyo.

Go straight ahead.

A

yeki ese
me(ll)mnikka

from here
is [it] far?

5. Yeki ese mennikka?

Is [it] far from here?
안 뜰니다
가깝습니다


8. B: 아니요, 괜찮습니다.
(대화 B)

9. 박 어디에 가십니까, 갑니까?

10. 김: 정거장에 갑니다.

정거장에서
하계출니가
부었을 하계출니가

11. 박: 정거장에서 부었을 하계출니가?

거기
거기에서
란나겠습니까

참고

7. Tëtanhi komapSIMNita. tëtanhi

8. Aniyö, kwëñchanchSIMNita. kwëñchanhsIMNita (No,) Not at all.

Dialogue B

9. étë e kasIMNikka? in what place; to what place do [you] go?

10. Cëngkocang e kamnita. railroad station

11. Cëngkocang ese mUES (il) hakessIMNikka

What are you going there for? ('What are you going to do at the station?')
12. 김: 거기에서 친구를 만나겠어요.

누구

13. 박: 그 친구는 누구입니까?

그분

그분을

14. 김: 제임스 선생입니다. 그분을 안녕하세요?

모릅니다

학교 선생

15. 박: 아니요, 모릅니다. 학교 선생입니까?

아니요

외교관

16. 김: 아니요, 학교 선생이 아닙니다. 외교관입니다.

Additional Expressions for Classroom Use

17. 알겠습니까?

18. 예, 알겠습니다.

19. 아니요, 모르겠습니다.

20. 다시 한번 말씀해주세요.

12. Kaki ese chinku lil manakessimnit. I'm going to meet a friend there.

13. Ki chinku ninn nuku imnikka? Who is he ('that friend')?

14. Ceim: Senaeng imnita. Ki pun il amnikka? (He is) Mr. James. Do you know him?

15. Aniyo, molimnita. Hakkyo senaeng imnikka? No, I don't know [him]. Is he a teacher?

16. Aniyo, hakkyo senaeng i an imnita. Wekyokwan imnita. No, [he] is not a (school) teacher. [He] is in the foreign service.

Additional Expressions for Classroom Use

17. Alkessimnikka? Do you understand? ('Will you know?')

18. Ne, alkessimnita. Yes, I understand. ('Yes, I'll know.')

19. Aniyo, molikessimnita. No, I don't understand. ('No, I'll not know.')


21. Ice pelyessimnita. I forgot [it].

Icesimnita.
NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogues.)

1. Vepose yo. 'Hello there!' ('Please look here.') is the informal polite equivalent of the less frequently used form Yeposipsiyo. Vepose yo. is said only when you try to get the attention of a passerby and is not said as the equivalent of the English greeting expression 'Hi!' or 'Hello.' Vepose yo! also occurs regularly when you make and/or receive a phone call.

Ki l com mule pokessanmita. ('I'll inquire [you] about the street a little.') is used when you ask someone for street directions.

2. The verb stem chae- means 'to look for (something, someone)', 'to find', 'to get (money at the bank)', 'to claim (something)', etc.

3. Seul Yek e kanin kil il asimikka? means literally 'Do you know the street which goes to Seoul Station?' The phrase 'place noun + e kanin kil' is the equivalent of English 'the way to + place noun.'

4. The verb stem in Memnikka? 'Is [it] far?' is ma(1)-. l in ma(1)- is dropped when either -(1)mnita or -(1)mnikka ending is added to the stem.

13. Nuku 'who' or 'what person' is a noun. When nuku is used as the subject of a sentence, with the particle i/ka, it has the irregular form nuka. When other particles follow, the full form nuku occurs. For example, nuku ilil 'whom!', nuku wa 'with whom!', nuku eke 'to whom!', nuku e 'whose', etc.

14. Ki pun 'he (honored)' is the polite equivalent of ki salam ('that person'). Salam is a free noun, whereas pun occurs only as a post-noun.

15. The verb stem moli- 'do not know' is the negative of the verb stem a(l)- 'know'. When one of -(1)mnita, -(1)mnikka, -(1)psita and -(1)sipsiyo endings is added to the stem a(l)-, l is dropped and is not pronounced.
GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Verbs: Action vs. Description and Intransitive vs. Transitive

Korean verbs fall into two main classes: Action Verbs and Description Verbs.

An action verb is used in sentences like 'X does something' or 'X takes a certain action', whereas a description verb is used in sentences like 'X is in such and such a state'. A Korean action verb corresponds generally to an English verb; a Korean description verb, to English 'be + adjective'.

The only difference between action and description verbs is that most description verbs do not occur in either propositative or imperative sentences. Otherwise, the forms of description verbs are similar to those of action verbs.

Korean verbs are further classified into another two main classes: Transitive and Intransitive. A transitive verb is one which may be preceded by an object, that is, noun + il/ii may precede the verb. There is no change in the verb itself. An intransitive verb is one which is never preceded by an object. Both transitive and intransitive verbs may be preceded by an emphasized subject, that is, noun + i/ka.

All description verbs are intransitive verbs; most action verbs are transitive, but some are intransitive and others are both transitive and intransitive. Examples:

**Group 1 (intransitive verbs)**

Hakkyo ka kakkapsimnita.  
'The school is near.'

Chewk i oohsimnita.  
'The book is good.'

Yaki ees tasakwan i me(ii)mnikka?  
'Is the embassy far from here?'

Hakseng i kongpu-hamnita.  
'The student is studying.'

Hakkyo ka sicak-hamnita.  
'School begins.'

**Group 2 (transitive verbs)**

Yange lil pesumnita.  
'[I]'m learning English.'

Hankuk mal il kalichsimnita.  
'[I]'m teaching Korean.'

Yange check i(i)kimnita.  
'[I] read an English book.'

Hakkyo lil sicak-hamnita.  
'[I] begin school.'

Note that inflected forms (e.g. 'verbals') may occur as complete sentences. In Korean when the context or situation is clear as to the subject and/or topic of a sentence, the speaker often omits the subject or the topic, and the sentence consists of the verbal alone, or the verbal plus its modifiers and/or objects. The topic/subject in the following examples may be omitted.

Examples:
(Sensæng in) eti e kamnikka?
(Ce nin) hakkyo e kamnita.
Ne, (hakkyo ka) mamnita.

'Where are (you) going?'
'(I) am going to school.'
'Yes, [it] ('the school') is far.'

2. Future Tense in Korean

Tenses in a Korean sentence are indicated in verbals. The form -(kess-) is infixed between the verb stem and the verb ending to mark the future tense. There is a small class of forms which occur after verb stems but always before verb endings. We shall call them Verb Suffixes. The form -(kess-) is called the Future Tense Suffix. When a verbal is a statement sentence and includes -(kess-), it indicates the speaker's intention for the future. If the verbal which includes -(kess-) is a question sentence, the speaker asks the addressee about his future intention or opinion. If the subject or the topic of the sentence is other than the speaker or the addressee, the sentence which includes -(kess-) denotes an opinion or presumption about the subject or the topic in the sentence. Examples;

(Ce nin) hakkyo e kakesimmnita.
(Ce ka) Yenge ll̄ paikesimmnita.
(Sensæng in) muus il hakkasesimmnika?
Chinku ll̄ mannakessimmnika?
Hakkyo ka kakkapkeesimmnika?
Kim Sensæng i cip e isskeesimmnita.

'I will go to school.'
'I will study English.'
'What are you going to do?'
'What will you do?'
'Are you going to meet a friend?'
'Will the school be near (do you think)?'
'Mr. Kim must be home (I suppose).'

3. Honorifics

Whenever the subject and/or the topic in the sentence is honored, a verb suffix -(1)si- is added immediately after the verb stem. We shall call the suffix -(1)si- the Honorific Suffix. When -(1)si- and other suffixes such as the future tense suffix -(kess-) occur in the same verb, the honorific suffix -(1)si- always precedes other suffixes. In an inflected form the honorific suffix is not used if the subject in the sentence is inferior to the speaker. Note that the speaker never honors himself, that is, the suffix -(1)si- in a verbal does not occur when the subject and/or the topic is the speaker. -si- occurs after a stem ending in a vowel; -(1)si- after a stem ending in a consonant. Compare:

a. eti e kamnikka?
   eti e kaisinnika?
   eti e kakesiimmnika?

'Where are [you] going.'
'Where are [you] going?' (H)
'Where will [you] go?' (H)
b. Muise il hamnikka?  'What do [you] do?'  
Muise il hasimnikka?  'What do [you] do?' (H)  
Muise il hasikessimnikka?  'What will [you] do?' (H)

c. Kim Sansæng i kalichimnita.  'Mr. Kim's teaching.'  
Kim Sansæng i kalichisimnita.  'Mr. Kim's teaching.' (H)  
Kim Sansæng i kalichisikessimnita.  'Mr. Kim will teach (I think).' (H)

d. Ce salam in Yængæ llæ pneumonia.  'He's learning English.'  
Ce salam in Yængæ llæ Pæusimnita.  'He's learning English.' (H)  
Ce salam in Yængæ llæ Pæusikessimnita.  'He will learn English.' (H)

4. Negative an

There are two ways of expressing negation in Korean statement and question sentences. One simple way is the use of the word an immediately before an inflected expression. However, with some verbs, an does not normally occur; another form of negation is used. (See Unit 4.) Compare:

a. Hakkyo e kamnita.  '[I] go to school.'
Hakkyo e an kamnita.  '[I] don't go to school.'

b. Kim Sansæng i omnita.  'Mr. Kim's coming.'
Kim sansæng i an omnita.  'Mr. Kim is not coming.'

c. Ne, kalichimnita.  'Yes, [I] teach.'
Aniyo, an kalichimnita.  'No, [I] don't teach.'

5. Particle esa 'from', 'at', 'in', 'on'

A place nominal + esa denotes either dynamic location or point of departure for the following inflected expression depending on what verb follows after it. Examples:

Ce nın Seoul esa omnita.  'I'm coming from Seoul.'
Hakkyo ka cip esa manmîta.  'The school is far from the house.'
Uli nın kyosil esa kongpu-hammîta.  'We study in the classroom.'
Gangkecsang esa chinku lil mannakessimnîta.  'I'll meet a friend at the station.'
Kim Sansæng i Seoul esa il-hammîta.  'Mr. Kim works in Seoul.'

Compare the above construction with place nominal + e in Unit 2. Before isimnîta 'exists!', a place nominal + e may occur but not a place nominal + esa.
6. Particle े 'to'

A place nominal े followed by either ka- 'to go' or o- 'to come' indicates the direction of the action of the inflected expression. Compare े with ㅣ오/ㅣ로 in Unit 2, Grammar Note 2. Observe the examples:

 Oversimplified ὴ 'to'

Se nun hakkyo े kamnita.  'I'm going to school.'
Se o cip े osipsiyo.  'Please come to my house.'
Gangkacang े kakessimnikka?  'Will you go to the station?'
Kim Sensang in Mikuk े an omnita.  'Mr. Kim is not coming to America.'
DRILLS

A. Substitution Drills

1. eti lil chacsimnikka?  What (place) are [you] looking for?
2. Mues (il) chacsimnikka?  What are you looking for?
3. eni bakkyo (lil) chacsimnikka?  What school are you looking for?
4. eni naksang (il) chacsimnikka?  Which student are you looking for?
5. eni kil (il) chacsimnikka?  Which street are you looking for?
6. eni pekhwacem (il) chacsimnikka?  Which department store are you looking for?
7. Nuku (lil) chacsimnikka?  Whom are you looking for?
8. eni kyosil (il) chacsimnikka?  Which classroom are you looking for?
9. eni sensang (il) chacsimnikka?  Which teacher are you looking for?
10. eni ai (lil) chacsimnikka?  Which child are you looking for?
11. eni pun (il) chacsimnikka  Whom (H) are you looking for?

B. Substitution Drill

1. Seoul Yek e kanin kil il asimnikka?  Do you know the way to Seoul Station?
2. Seoul Sicheng e kanin kil il asimnikka?  Do you know the way to Seoul City Hall?
3. Congkocang e kanin kil il asimnikka?  Do you know the way to the station?
4. Pekhwacem e kanin kil il asimnikka?  Do you know the way to the department store?
5. Sicang e kanin kil il asimnikka?  Do you know the way to the market place?
6. Kongwen e kanin kil il asimnikka?  Do you know the way to the park?
*7. Tapeng e kanin il asimnikka?  Do you know the way to the tearoom?
*8. Siktang e kanin kil il asimnikka?  Do you know the way to the restaurant?
*9. Kim Sensang cip e kanin kil il asimnikka?  Do you know the way to Mr. Kim's house?
C. Substitution Drill

1. Ttokpalo kasipsiyo. Go straight ahead.
2. Wen cook 1lo kasipsiyo. Go to the left.
3. Olin cook 1lo kasipsiyo. Go to the right.
*4. I cook 1lo kasipsiyo. Go this way (direction).
*5. Ge cook 1lo kasipsiyo. Go that way (direction).
7. Cengkecang 1lo kasipsiyo. Go to the railroad station.
8. Sicheng cook 1lo kasipsiyo. Go toward the City Hall.

D. Substitution Drill

1. Yeki ese momnikka? Is it far from here?
2. Hakyo ese momnikka? Is it far from school?
3. Cengkecang ese momnikka? Is it far from the station?
4. Mikuk Tseakwan ese momnikka? Is it far from the U.S. Embassy?
5. Seoul Yek ese momnikka? Is it far from Seoul Station?
6. Sicheng ese momnikka? Is it far from the City Hall?
*7. Sangseom ese momnikka? Is it far from the store?
8. Pakhwacem ese momnikka? Is it far from the department store?
*9. Tapang ese momnikka? Is it far from the tearoom?
*10. Congwen ese momnikka? Is it far from the park?
*11. Sicang ese momnikka? Is it far from the market place?
12. Mikuk ese momnikka? Is it far from America?
*13. Uphysunkuk ese momnikka? Is it far from the post office?
*14. Samuul ese momnikka? Is it far from the office?
*15. Kikcang ese momnikka? Is it far from the theatre?
E. Substitution Drill

1. Na mn cangkecang e kamnita.
   I'm going to the railroad station.
2. Na mn kongwen e kamnita.
   I'm going to the park.
3. Na mn kakcang e kamnita.
   I'm going to the theatre.
4. Na mn inhwang e kamnita.
   I'm going to the bank.
5. Na mn sangel e kamnita.
   I'm going to the store.
6. Na mn Cungkuk siktang e kamnita.
   I'm going to a Chinese restaurant.
7. Na mn Seoul Upkeuk e kamnita.
   I'm going to the Seoul Post Office.
8. Na mn Hankuk inhwang e kamnita.
   I'm going to the Bank of Korea.
   I'm going to the Seoul Department Store.
*10. Na r.in tewakwan siktang e kamnita.
    I'm going to the Embassy dinning hall.
*11. Na r.in na e samusil e kamnita.
    I'm going to my office.
*12. Na r.in Geissi Sansang cip e kamnita.
    I'm going to Mr. James' house.

F. Substitution Drill

1. Keki ese mues (il) hakessimnikka?
   What are you going to do there?
   ('What will you do there?')
2. Cangkecang ese mues (il)
   hakessimnikka?
   What are you going to do at the station?
3. Tapang ese mues (il) hakessimnikka?
   What are you going to do at the tea-room?
4. Kogwen ese mues (il) hakessimnikka?
   What are you going to do in the park?
5. Hakkyo ese mues (il) hakessimnikka?
   What are you going to do at school?
6. Hakkyo ese mues (il) chackessimnikka?
   What are you going to look for at school?
7. Hakkyo ese mues (il) peukessimnikka?
   What are you going to study at school?
8. Hakkyo ese mues (il)
   kalchikessimnikka?
   What are you going to teach at school?
9. Hakkyo ese mues (il) mal-hakessimnikka?
   What are you going to say at school?
10. Hakkyo ese mues (il) mule
    pokessimnikka?
    What are you going to inquire about at school?
11. Hakkyo ese mues (il) kongpu-
    hakessimnikka?
    What are you going to study at school?
12. Hakkyo ese mues (il) ilkessimnikka?
    What are you going to read at school?
G. Substitution Drill

1. Ka chinku nin nuku imnikka?
   Who is that friend [of yours]?
2. Ki salam in nuku imnikka?
   Who is that man?
3. Ce haksang in nuku imnikka?
   Who is that student over there?
4. Ce Mikuk salam in nuku imnikka?
   Who is that American over there?
5. Ce Ilpon salam in nuku imnikka?
   Who is that Japanese over there?
6. Ce pun in nuku imnikka?
   Who is that man (honored)?
7. Ce Mikuk wekyokwan in nuku imnikka?
   Who is that American diplomat?
8. Ki Hankuk haksang in nuku imnikka?
   Who is the Korean student?
9. Hankuk mal sensang in nuku imnikka?
   Who is the Korean (language) teacher?
10. Ce pun in nuku imnikka?
    Who is that lady?
11. Ce aI nin nuku imnikka?
    Who is that child?

H. Response Drill

Tutor: eti lil chacsimnikka? /Sœul Yœk/
   'What (place) are you looking for?'
   /Seoul Station/

Student: Sœul Yœk il chacsimnita.
   'I'm looking for Seoul Station.'

1. Muess il chacsimnikka? /Hankuk mal chak/  
   Hankuk mal chak il chacsimnita.

2. eti e kasimnikka? /uphyœnkuk/  
   Uphyœnkuk e kamnita.

3. Ki Mikuk salam in nuku imnikka?  
   /Ceimsi/  
   Ceimsi imnita.

4. Sensang in muess hakessimnikka?  
   /Hankuk mal kongpu/
   (Na nin) Hankuk mal kongpu (lil)
   hakessimnita.

5. Cangkeong eœ nuku lil  
   manakessimnikka? /chinku/  
   Chinku lil manakessimnita.

6. Pœchwaœen i eti e issimnikka?  
   /uphyœnkuk twi e/
   Uphyœnkuk twi e issimnita.

7. Kin Sensang in hakkyo eœ muess il  
   kalichimnikka? /Yœnge/  
   Yœnge lil kalichimnita.

8. ani kemmul i inhaœng imnikka? /wen  
   cook kemmul/  
   Wen cook kemmul i inhaœng imnita.

9. eti eœ chinku lil manakessimnikka?  
   /tapang/  
   Tapang eœ manakessimnita.

10. Sœul Yœk in eti lo kamnikka?  
    /olin cook/
    Olin cook ilo kamnita.
11. Nuka Hankuk mal il pæumnikka?
   /Mikuk salam/
12. Sensæng samusil i eti e issimnikka?
   /Tæaskwan kænmul/

Mikuk salam i pæumnita.
Tæaskwan kænmul e issimnita.

I. Response Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo sensæng imnikka?
Student: Aniyo, (hakkyo sensæng i)
         an imnita.

'Is [he] a school teacher?'
'No, [he] is not.'

1. I kes i chaeksang imnikka?
2. (Hakkyo ka) memnikka?
3. Cængkecæng e kæmmnka?
4. Ki pun il amnikka?
5. Hankuk mal il pæumnikka?
6. Chinku lii mannakessimnikka?
7. Yæng lii kalichiimnikka?
8. Hakkyo ka kakkapsimnikka?
9. Hakkyo e kakessimnikka?
10. Kil il mule pokessimnikka?
11. Yænphil il chackessimnikka?

Aniyo, (chaeksang i) an imnita.
Aniyo, an memnita.
Aniyo, an kæmmnita.
Aniyo, molimnita.
Aniyo, an pæumnita.
Aniyo, an mannakessimnita.
Aniyo, an kalichiimnita.
Aniyo, an kakkapsimnita.
Aniyo, an kakessimnita.
Aniyo, an mule pokessimnita.
Aniyo, an chackessimnita.

J. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: Yæng lii pæumnikka?
Student: Yæng lii pæukessimnikka?

'Are you learn[ing] English?'
'Will you learn English?'

1. Hakkyo e kæmmnka?
2. Mues il hanmnikka?
3. Nuku lii mannammnka?
4. Ilpon mal il pæumnikka?
5. Paekhwacæm il chackessimnikka?
6. (Sensæng in) cip e issimnikka?
7. Nuku lii pwepssimnikka?
8. Nuka Yæng e lii kalichiimnikka?

Hakkyo e kakessimnikka?
Mues il hakessimnikka?
Nuku lii mannakessimnikka?
Ilpon mal il pæukessimnikka?
Paekhwacæm il chackessimnikka?
(Sensæng in) cip e isskessimnikka?
Nuku lii pwepkesimnikka?
Nuka Yæng e lii kalichikessimnikka?
K. Response Drill

Tutor: Kongpu-hakessimnikka?
Student: Ne, (na nin) kongpu-hakessimnita.

1. Hankuk mal il pækessimnikka?
   Ne, (na nin) Hankuk mal il pækessimnita.

2. Cip e isskessimnikka?
   Ne (na nin) cip e isskessimnita.

3. Chinku lil mannakessimnikka?
   Ne, (na nin) chinku lil mannakessimnita.

4. Yønge lil kalichikessimnikka?
   Ne, (na nin) Yønge lil kalichikessimnita.

5. Inhaeng e kakessimnikka?
   Ne, (na nin) Inhaeng e kakessimnita.

6. Hakkyo e an kakessimnikka?
   Ne, (na nin) hakkyo e an kakessimnita.

7. Ki cheok il chackessimnikka?
   Ne, (na nin) ki cheok il chackessimnita.

8. Kil il mule pokessimnikka?
   Ne, (na nin) kil il mule pokessimnita.

9. Ki kes il hakessimnikka?
   Ne, (na nin) ki kes il hakessimnita.

10. Hankuk mal il mal-hakessimnikka?
    Ne, (na nin) Hankuk mal il mal-hakessimnita.

L. Response Drill

Tutor: Mues il kongpu-hakessimnikka?
   /Cungkuk mal/
Student: Cungkuk mal il kongpu-hakessimnita.

1. eti e kasikessimnikka? /cengkecang/
   Cengkecang e kakessimnita.

2. eti ese chinku lil mannakessimnikka?
   /tapang/
   Tapang ese mannakessimnita.

3. eni mal il pækessimnikka?
   /Hankuk mal/
   Hankuk mal il pækessimnita.

4. Nuku e samusil il chackessimnikka?
   /Kim Sansøng/
   Kim Sansøng e samusil il chackessimnita.

5. Sansøng in cip ese mues il hakessimnikka? /cheok/
   (Cip ese) cheok il ilkessimnita.

6. Tapang ese nuku lil mannakessimnikka?
   /chinku/
   Chinku lil mannakessimnita.

7. Nuka Yønge lil kalichikessimnikka?
   /Mikuk salam/
   Mikuk salam i kalichikessimnita.
M. Grammar Drill (as a level drill based on Grammar Note 3)

**Tutor:** Mues il kongpu-hamnikka?
**Student:** Mues il kongpu-hasimnikka?

1. eti e kamnikka?  
2. Mues il hamnikka?  
3. eni mal il pesumnikka?  
4. Nuku lil chacosimnikka?  
5. Nuka Yenge lil kalichimnikka?  
6. Seul Yek e kanin kil il amnikka?  
7. Ki chinku nin nuku isimnikka?  
8. Ce pun in hakkyo senseng isimnikka?  
9. (Senseng in) wekyokwan isimnikka?  
10. I salam il molimnikka?  
11. Hankuk mal il mal-hamnikka?  

'What are you studying?'
'sti e kamnikka?'
'Mues il hamnikka?'
'enil mal il pesumnikka?'
'Nuku il chacosimnikka?'
'Nuka Yenge lil kalichisimnikka?'
'Seul Yek e kanin kil il asimnikka?'
'Ki chinku nin nuku isimnikka?'
'Ce pun in hakkyo senseng isimnikka?'
'Senseng in wekyokwan isimnikka?'
'I salam il molisimnikka?'
'Hankuk mal il mal-hasimnikka?'

N. Response Drill (as a level drill)

**Tutor:** Ceimsi Sensang in eti e kamnikka? /hakkyo/  
**Student:** Hakkyo e kasimnita.

1. Ceimsi Sensang in mues il kongpu-hamnikka? /Hankuk mal/  
2. Ceimsi Sensang in nuku lil chacosimnikka? /Pak Sensang/  
3. Ceimsi Sensang in nuku lil mannamnikka? /chinku/  
5. Ceimsi Sensang in Yenge lil kalichimnikka? /aniyo/  
6. Ceimsi Sensang in wekyokwan isimnikka? /re/  
7. Ceimsi Sensang in Yenge lil pesumnikka? /aniyo/  
8. Ceimsi Sensang in Yenge lil ilksimnikka? /aniyo/  

'Where does Mr. James go?'
'school/
'He goes to school.'
'Hankuk mal il kongpu-hasimnita.'
'Pak Sensang il chacosimnita.'
'Chinku lil mannamisnita.'
'Aniyo, molisimnita.'
'Aniyo, an kalichisimnita.'
'Ne, wekyokwan isimnita.'
'Aniyo, an pesumnita.'
'Aniyo, an ilksimnita.'
UNIT 3

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

EXERCISES

1. Ask a passerby:
   a. if he knows the way to USIA.
   b. if it is near.
   c. if the building (over there) is the railroad station.
   d. if he is going in the direction of the City Hall.
   e. if the park is far.
   f. if the station is to the left of the market place.

2. Mr. Kim asks: You answer that:
   a. where you're going. you're going to the station.
   b. what you'll do there. you'll meet a friend.
   c. who your friend is. he is an American.
   d. what your friend does. he is in the foreign service.
   e. how you know him. he is with the U.S. Embassy.
   f. if your friend speaks Korean. he speaks a little.
   g. if you know Mr. Park. you know him well.
   h. if you are a Korean teacher. you are not.
   i. if you're going to learn Japanese. you're not.

3. Tell Pak Sensang the following:
   1. The department store is near the street.
   2. The classroom is in this building.
   3. The park is behind my house.
   4. The store is next to the theatre.
   5. The bank is on the left side of the City Hall.
   6. The market (place) is in front of the Chinese restaurant.
   7. The USIS is this way.
   8. The Ambassador's office is on your right.
   9. The school building is next to the inn.
   10. This is the map of that lady's child.

4. Find out the following information from Pak Sensang:
   1. Which building is the department store.
   2. Where he is going.
   3. What Mr. James does.
4. Whom he's going to meet.
5. Who teaches Korean.
6. Which classroom he is looking for.
7. Who his friend is.
8. How he knows him.
9. If he knows the way to the City Hall.
10. If he is going to be home.

5. Tell Pak Sŏnsang that:
   1. you're looking for Kim's house.
   2. you're in the foreign service.
   3. you're going to meet James at the restaurant.
   4. your office is not far from here.
   5. you will be home.
   6. you don't know that Korean's name.
   7. this Korean lady is not in the foreign service.
   8. the Bank of Korea is straight ahead.
   9. you're not going to come to school.
   10. the post office is not near.
제 4 과 물건 사기

(대화 A)

여제

거울니까

1. 이: 김 선생, 여제 어디에 갔습니까?

시내

상점

갔습니다.

2. 김: 시내 상점에 갔었습니다.

裳어요

3. 이: 무엇을 샀어요?

용품

일상 용품

4. 김: 일상 용품을 좀 샀습니다.

오늘

또

가게어요

한 가게어요

5. 이: 오늘은 시내에 또 한 가게예요?

금성

금성예요

취방
UNIT 4. Shopping
BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

Lee
ace
kassimnikka
Where did you go yesterday, Mr. Kim?
yesterday
did [you] go?

Kim
downtown
store
[I] went; [I] had gone
sino
sangcém
kassessimnita
[I] went to a store downtown.

Lee
did [you] buy?
sasse yo
3. Muas il sasse yo?
What did [you] buy?

Kim
necessary goods
daily necessities
yongphum
ilsang yongphum
[I] bought some daily necessities.

Lee
today
again
onil
will you go?
tto
('Will you not go?!')
kakesse yo
an kakesse yo
Are you going downtown again today?

Kim
well; maybe
bookstore
[I]'ll stop by
chakpang
a little; a little while
til'likessimnita
com
6. Kil'sse yo. Nan nin chakpang e com
Maybe. I'll stop by a bookstore
til'likessimnita.
(for a while).
6. 김: 글쎄요. 나는 챙방에 좀 들렀습니다.

그럼
같이
나와
나와 같이
같시다

7. 이: 그럼, 나와 같이 갑시다.

그럼시다
그럼합시다
사례어요

8. 김: 예, 그럼시다. 선생님 무엇을 사겠어요?

나도
보겠습니까
같
비싸니까?

9. 이: 나도 책 좀 보겠습니다. 책 값이 비싸니까?

그럼
비싸지 않습니까
사십시오

10. 김: 아니요, 그림 비싸지 않습니다. 삽니다.
7. Kilam, na wa kathi kapsita.
   Then, let's go together.

8. Ne, kilepsita. Sansang in mues il sakessa yo?
   Let's (do so). What are you going to buy?

9. Na to chexk il com pokessimnita.
   Chexk kaps i pissamnikka?
   I would like to see some books too, ('I'll also see books a little.') Are books expensive?

10. Aniyo, kili pissaci anhsimnita.
    Ssamnita.
    No, [they] are not so expensive. [They] are [fairly] cheap.

Dialogue B
(--at the store--)

11. ese osipsiyo. Muss il sasikessimninka?
    Please come in. May I help you? ('What would you like to buy?')
(대화 B)

어서
오십시요
어서 오십시요

11. 접착: 어서 오십시요. 무엇을 사시겠습니까?

여기에서
수건
받니가, 팔을 닦가

12. 이: 여기에서 수건을 팔니가?

채
무슨 채
손가락요

13. 접착: 예, 팔니다. 무슨 채를 손가락요.

노란 채
좋아합니다

14. 이: 노란 채를 좋아합니다. 노란 것이 있어요?

여러 가지
어떻습니까

15. 접착: 여러분 가지고 있습니다. 이것이 어떻습니까?

앞
좋습니다

16. 이: 예, 좋습니다. 그것 앞가집니까?
12. Yaksi ese suken il phannikka?

Lee

here; at this place
towel
do [you] sell?

Camwen

what sort of
color
do [you] want?

13. Ne, phannita. Musin sëk il wenhase yo?

Yes, we do. What color would you like? ('What sort of color do you want?')

Lee

yellow color
[I] like; [I] prefer

Camwen

several kinds; many kinds
how is [it]?

14. Nolan sëk il cohahamnita. Nolan kës i isse yo?

('I like yellow color.!' Yellow, please. ('Do you have yellow ones?')

Lee

how much
[that]'s good

Camwen

several kinds; many kinds
how is [it]?

15. Yëla kaci ka isamnita. I kës i etmixnintrikka?

We have several kinds. How do you like this one? ('How is this one?')

Lee

how much
[that]'s good

Camwen

several kinds; many kinds
how is [it]?

16. Ne, cohahamnita. Ki kës, elma innikka?

On, that's nice. How much is it?

Lee

how much
[that]'s good

Camwen

several kinds; many kinds
how is [it]?

17. Osip Wol e phannita.

fifty Won W50

W50. ('We sell it for W50!')

85
오십
오십 원

17. 점원: 오십 원에 팔니다.

하나
주십시오

18. 이: 그것 하나 주십시오.

19. 점원: 예, 여기(에) 있습니다.
18. Ki kes, hana cusipsiyo.

Lee

one
give [me]

Please give [me] one [of them].

Camwan

19. Ne, yaki (e) issimnita.

Here you are.

NUMERALS (1)

1 il  11 sip-il  21 isip-il  31 samsip-il
2 i  12 sip-i  22 isip-i  40 sa sip
3 sam 13 sip-sam 23 isip-sam 50 osip
4 sa  14 sip-sa 24 isip-sa 60 yuksip ~ nyuksip
5 o  15 sip-o  25 isip-o  70 chilsip
6 yuk 16 sip-yuk /simnyuk/ 26 isip-yuk /simnyuk/ 80 phalsip
7 chil 17 sip-chil 27 isip-chil 90 kusip
8 phal 18 sip-phal 28 isip-phal 91 kusip-il
9 ku  19 sip-ku 29 isip-ku 99 kusip-ku
10 sip 20 l-sip 30 samsip 100 (il)peak
101 peak-il 200 lpeak 1,001 chen-il
102 peak-i 300 sampseek 1,011 chen-sip-il
103 peak-sam 400 sapseek 1,111 chen-peak-sip-il
104 peak-sa 500 opeak 2,000 ichen
105 peak-o 600 yukspeek /nyukpeek/ 3,000 samchen
106 peak-yuk 700 chilpeek 4,000 sachen
107 peak-chil 800 phalpeek 5,000 ochen
108 peal-phal 900 kupseek 6,000 yukschen ~ nyukchen
109 peak-ku 999 kupseek-ku 7,000 chillchen
110 peal-sip 1,000 (il)chen 10,000 (il)man

100,000 sipman /simman/ 1,000,000 peckman /peangman/
수자 (1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>일</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>심일</th>
<th>21</th>
<th>이심 일</th>
<th>31</th>
<th>심심 일</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>이</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>심 이</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>이심 이</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>사심</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>삼</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>심 삼</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>이심 삼</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>오심</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>사</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>심 사</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>이심 사</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>육심</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>오</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>심 오</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>이심 오</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>칠심</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>육</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>심 육</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>이심 육</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>팔심</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>칠</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>심 칠</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>이심 칠</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>구심</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>팔</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>심 팔</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>이심 팔</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>구십 일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>구</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>심 구</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>이심 구</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>구십 구</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>심</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>이심</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>삼심</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>(십)백</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 101 | 백 일 | 200 | 이백 | 1,001 | 천 일 |
| 102 | 백 이 | 300 | 삼백 | 1,011 | 천 십 일 |
| 103 | 백 삼 | 400 | 사백 | 1,111 | 천 백십 일 |
| 104 | 백 사 | 500 | 오백 | 2,000 | 이천 |
| 105 | 백 오 | 600 | 육백 | 3,000 | 삼천 |
| 106 | 백 육 | 700 | 칠백 | 4,000 | 사천 |
| 107 | 백 칠 | 800 | 팔백 | 5,000 | 오천 |
| 108 | 백 팔 | 900 | 구백 | 6,000 | 육천 |
| 109 | 백 구 | 999 | 구백구십구 | 7,000 | 천천 |
| 110 | 백 십 | 1,000 | (십)천 | 10,000 | (십)만 |
|    |      |   |      | 100,000 | 십만 |
|    |      |   |      | 1,000,000 | 백만 |
NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. Sīne ('the inside of city') originally meant any part of a city which had
walls around it. Today, it refers to the downtown area in general.

3. Sasse yo? 'Did [you] buy?' is the informal polite equivalent of the formal
polite form Sassimnikka?

4. Tto 'again', 'also', 'too', is an adverb which occurs before a sentence, a
verbal, or other words of a modifier class.

5. Kisse yo. 'Well..' is a kind of hesitating response to or comment upon
someone's question, statement, suggestion or command.

6. Cheok kaps 'the price of the book' is a noun phrase which literally means
'book price'. Kaps 'price' occurs after certain nouns. For example, cip
kaps 'the rent' or 'the price of a house', ppea kaps 'bus fare', insik
kaps 'food price'.

7. Kii: before verbs or words of a modifier class in a negative statement
means '(not) so', '(not) very' or '(not) that'. In propositive, imperative
and question sentences, it means 'like that', 'such a' or 'in such a way'.

8. Ese osippsiyo. ('Come quickly.') is a general greeting expression for welcom-
ing; it is commonly used by business people to customers.

9. Yeki ese X 1 last pha(l)mnikka? ('Do you sell X here?') is one common way
of asking store clerks a certain item you want to buy. Yeki e X 1/ka
isamnikka? ('Do you have X here?' or 'Is there X here?') is another common
question in such a situation. The stem of pha(l)mnikka? 'Do [you] sell?' is
pha(l).

10. Musin 'what sort of', 'what', occurs before a noun, and asks about the type
or the characteristics of the noun: musin cheok 'what kind of book', musin
mal 'what language', musin salam 'what kind of person', musin cip 'what
type of house', musin cha 'what kind of car'.

11. Nolan 'yellow', hayan 'white', phalan 'blue', kkaman 'black', ppalkan 'red',
are all modifier class words formed from the verb stems nola- 'to be yellow',
haya- 'to be white', phala- 'to be blue', kkama(n)- 'to be black', ppalka-
'to be red', by the addition of the modifier ending -n/in/nin (See Unit 5).
The verb stem cohaha- 'to like' has an unpredictable negative form:
silnaha- 'to dislike'.

89
15. *Yale* 'several', 'many' ('more than a few but not too many in number') is a numeral which may occur before free or post nouns only as a determinative: *yale kaci* 'many kinds', *yale salam* 'several people', *yale pun* 'many people (M)*. *Kaci* 'kind' occurs only as a post-noun preceded by numerals of Korean origin, and never occurs after other modifiers. Examples:

- *yale kaci* 'several kinds'
- *han kaci* 'one kind'
- *tu kaci* 'two kinds'
- *se kaci* 'three kinds'

In the verbal *ettahsinkkaka*? 'How is [it]?', *ettah-* 'how is' is its verb stem, of which inflected forms are used only as question words. Most Korean question words are either nouns or adverbs.

16. The verb stem *coh-* 'to be good', 'to be nice', 'to be O.K.', has as its antonymous verb stem *nappi-* 'to be bad'. *elma imnikka*? 'How much is [it]?!' is a fixed expression when you ask about the price of something. *elma* 'how much' occurs always as a noun and is never used as a modifier.

**GRAMMAR NOTES**

1. Informal Polite Speech

We noticed in the Grammar Notes of Unit 2 that Formal Polite Speech is a level and/or style of speech. In standard Korean, there is another style and/or level of speech which is no less polite than the Formal Polite but is considered more casual and friendly. This style of speech is called Informal Polite Speech. Usually both styles are mixed in one's speech, but in general women tend to use more informal polite speech than men. Informal Polite Speech is often called *yo* speech style, because any sentence which ends in the particle *yo* is Informal Polite Speech. Regardless of the sentence type (i.e. statement, question, imperative, propositive), *yo* at the end of an utterance is the sign that is an Informal Polite sentence.

When the particle *yo* occurs immediately after a verb which does not have a verb-ending but is inflected from the stem in a certain form ending in a vowel, the inflected form which precedes *yo* is called an Infinitive. Note that an infinitive is a word, whereas a verb stem is not a word. An infinitive is formed from a verb stem by a certain phonetic change at the end of the stem.

Infinitives are formed not only from verb stems but also from verb stem plus suffix(es), that is, *verb stem + (I)s1 + (tense suffixes)* can be made into infinitives by adding *e* at the end of the suffixes. For example, the verb stem
ha- 'to do' + (suffixes) can have the following kinds of infinitive:

he (or haya), hase (or hase), hakesse, hase (or hayesse), hasikesse, hasisse, etc.

For the time being, however, our term **Infinitive** refers to the inflected form without any suffix. **Yo** may be added to the infinitive to make an informal polite speech present form. The verbs we have had so far are listed below.

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Formal Polite Present statement</th>
<th>Informal Polite Present</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'to do'</td>
<td>ha- hamnita</td>
<td>he yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to study'</td>
<td>kongpu-hamnita</td>
<td>kongpu-he yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to pass by'</td>
<td>cina-cinamnita</td>
<td>cina yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to exist'</td>
<td>iss-issimnita</td>
<td>iss se yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to learn'</td>
<td>pe- pewnita</td>
<td>pe se yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to teach'</td>
<td>kalichi-kalichimnita</td>
<td>kalichi yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to read'</td>
<td>ilk-ilk(s)imnita</td>
<td>ilk ye yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to ask'</td>
<td>mule po-mule pomnita</td>
<td>mule pwa yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to go'</td>
<td>ka- kamnita</td>
<td>ka yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to be so'</td>
<td>kileh-kilehsimnita</td>
<td>kileh se yo or kile yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to know'</td>
<td>a(l)- amnita</td>
<td>a le yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to look for'</td>
<td>chac-chac(s)imnita</td>
<td>chac yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to be far'</td>
<td>me(l)- mannimnita</td>
<td>me yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to meet'</td>
<td>manna- mannimnita</td>
<td>manna yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to come'</td>
<td>o- omnita</td>
<td>wa yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to buy'</td>
<td>sa- samnita</td>
<td>sa yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to stop by'</td>
<td>tilli-tillimnita</td>
<td>till yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to look at'</td>
<td>po-pomnita</td>
<td>poa yo or poa yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to be expensive'</td>
<td>pissa-pissamnita</td>
<td>pissa yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to be cheap'</td>
<td>ssa-ssamnita</td>
<td>ssa yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to sell'</td>
<td>pha(l)- pha(l)imnita</td>
<td>phale yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to like'</td>
<td>cohaha-cohahamnita</td>
<td>cohaha yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to want'</td>
<td>wenha-wenhamnita</td>
<td>wenhe yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to go good'</td>
<td>coh-cohsimnita</td>
<td>coha yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to give'</td>
<td>cu-cumnita</td>
<td>cu ye yo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the verbs which occur hereafter will be treated individually for the formation of **Infinitives**. Refer to the following rules and the glossary at the end of the book for the infinitive form of each verb.
Observe the following regularities in forming infinitives from verb stems. Do not try to memorize the rules at this point; rather it is simpler to memorize each inflected form as a separate word. It is not necessary to memorize the verbs listed below. Add yo to the infinitive to make informal polite speech:

a. Stems ending in a or e do not change:
   ka-  ka yo  'goes'
sa-  sa yo  'buys'
sa-  sa yo  'stands'
   Exception:
   ha-  hae yo or haye yo  'does'

b. Stems ending in a, e, or we have alternative forms:
   mae-  mae yo or mae yo  'ties'
twe-  twe yo or twee yo  'becomes'

c. Stems ending in o change o to wa:
   o-  wa yo  'comes'
   po-  pwa yo  'sees'

d. Stems ending in i change i to e:
   khi-  khø yo  'is big'
   ssi-  ssa yo  'writes'

e. Stems ending in u add a:
   cu-  cuæ yo  'gives'
tu-  tua yo  'places'

f. The copula stem i- changes to iye or iye.

g. Stems ending in a have three alternatives:
   swi-  swie yo or swiye yo or swye yo  'rests'
   masi-  masiæ yo or masiæ yo or masiæ yo  'drinks'
   kitali-  kitaliæ yo or kitaliye yo or kitaliæ yo  'waits (for)'
   kalichi-  kalichiæ yo or kalichiæ yo or kalichiæ yo  'teaches'

h. Stems ending in consonants: these are divided into several groups on the basis of the morphophonemic changes of the final sounds.
Most consonant stems belong to Group 1, and are called a-adding stems;
Group 2 stems are called a-adding stems; Group 3, we-replacing stems;
Group 4, l-dropping stems; Group 5, l-doubling stems. Note that
there is a small number of verbs which are not classed into one of the
5 groups. They will be treated separately as irregular verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group 1</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mēk-</td>
<td>mēke yō</td>
<td>'eats'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuk-</td>
<td>cukē yō</td>
<td>'dies'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cap-</td>
<td>capē yō</td>
<td>'holds'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip-</td>
<td>ipe yō</td>
<td>'wears'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nēlp-</td>
<td>nēlpē yō</td>
<td>'is wide'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pis-</td>
<td>pisē yō</td>
<td>'combs'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| iss-    | isse yō | 'exists'
| eps-    | epse yō | 'does not exist'
| pes-    | pesē yō | 'takes off (clothes, hats, shoes)'
| alh-    | alhe yō | 'aches', 'gets sick'|

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group 2</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| cop-    | copē yō | 'is narrow'
| noph-   | nopha yō| 'is high'
| pokk-   | pokka yō| 'roasts (beans)'
| noh-    | noha yō | 'places', 'puts'|

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group 3</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| swip-   | swiwe yō | 'is easy'
| alyep-  | alywe yō | 'is difficult'
| kakkap- | kakkaē yō| 'is near'
| alimtap-| alimtaē yō| 'is beautiful'|

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group 4</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| me(1)-  | mele yō | 'is far'
| ki(1)-  | kilē yō | 'is long (in length)'
| a(1)-   | aele yō | 'knows'
| sa(1)-  | salē yō | 'lives'
| mant(1)-| mantile yō| 'makes'|

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group 5</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moli-</td>
<td>mollē yō</td>
<td>'does not know'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. Past Tenses

A past tense form of a Korean verb denotes either 'something was in such state' or 'something which has been done', or 'someone took such and such action'.

There are two past tenses in Korean: Simple Past and Remote Past. The simple past designates any action or description which has been finished before the speech takes place. The remote past denotes an action which was done or happened a relatively long time ago, or a description of a condition which ended a relatively long time ago. The remote past also is used to indicate the more remote of two or more past actions or descriptions occurring in the same context.

Past tenses in Korean are formed by infixing the suffixes -(a, e, ye)ss- for the Simple Past and -(a, e, ye)sses- for the Remote Past between verb stems and endings. We shall call the suffixes the Past Tense Suffixes. Depending on the final sound of a verb stem, a certain vowel change takes place between verb stem and the past tense suffix. The verb element preceding -ss(es)- is identical with the infinitive form, so it may be simpler to consider that the past tense is formed by infixing -ss(es)- between infinitive and ending.

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'to do'</td>
<td>ha-</td>
<td>hamnita</td>
<td>ha yo</td>
<td>hassimnita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to go'</td>
<td>ka-</td>
<td>kamnita</td>
<td>ka yo</td>
<td>kassimnita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to come'</td>
<td>o-</td>
<td>omnita</td>
<td>wa yo</td>
<td>wassimnita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to see'</td>
<td>po-</td>
<td>pominita</td>
<td>pwa yo</td>
<td>pwassimnita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to buy'</td>
<td>sa-</td>
<td>samnita</td>
<td>sa yo</td>
<td>sassimnita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to be cheap'</td>
<td>ssa-</td>
<td>ssamnita</td>
<td>ssa yo</td>
<td>ssassimnita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to be expensive'</td>
<td>pissa-</td>
<td>pissamnita</td>
<td>pissa yo</td>
<td>pissassimnita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to pass by'</td>
<td>cina-</td>
<td>cinamnita</td>
<td>cina yo</td>
<td>cinassimnita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to want'</td>
<td>wenha-</td>
<td>wenhamnita</td>
<td>wenha yo</td>
<td>wenhasimnita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to give'</td>
<td>cu-</td>
<td>cumnita</td>
<td>cu yo</td>
<td>cuassimnita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to meet'</td>
<td>manna-</td>
<td>mannamnita</td>
<td>manna yo</td>
<td>mannassimnita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to exist'</td>
<td>iss-</td>
<td>issimnita</td>
<td>isse yo</td>
<td>issassimnita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to read'</td>
<td>ilk-</td>
<td>ilkamnita</td>
<td>ilk ye</td>
<td>ilkassimnita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to be far'</td>
<td>me(1)-</td>
<td>meamnita</td>
<td>me yo</td>
<td>meassimnita</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
'to know'  a(l) - amnita  ales yo  alesimnita  alesse yo
'to be near'  kakkap - kakkapsimnita  kakkawo  kakkawesimnita  kakkawesse yo
'to be different'  tal - talimnita  talla yo  tallasimnita  tallasse yo
'not to know'  moli - molimnita  molla yo  mollasimnita  mollasse yo

3. Particle to

To is a one-shape particle, which following a noun or another particle means 'also' or 'too' in an affirmative sentence; '(not) either' in a negative sentence. When to occurs after the object, topic, or emphasis subject of a sentence, the particles in/nin, il/ilil, i/ka respectively are dropped.

Examples:

Na to amnita.  'I know [it], too.'
I keo to cheok imnikka?  'Is this also a book?'
Ilpon mal to pawsimnita.  '[I] have studied Japanese also.'
Kim Sensuem to molimnita.  'Mr. Kim doesn't know [it], either.'

4. Particle wa/kwa 'with', 'and'

Wa occurs after a word ending in a vowel; kwa after a word ending in a consonant. It occurs in the following two constructions:

a. Personal noun + wa/kwa means 'with the P. N.'

Examples:
Na wa (kathi) kapsita.  'Let us go with me.'
Chinku wa manassimnita.  '[I] met with a friend.'
Kim Sensuem kwa okesse yo.  'I'll come with Mr. Kim.'

b. Noun 1 + wa/kwa + Noun 2 means 'N 1 and N 2'

Examples:
cheek kwa yenphil  'a book and a pencil'
hakkyo wa cip  'a school and a house'

5. -ci + anhsimnita

-ci is a verb ending which is added to a verb stem, or to a verb stem plus other suffix(es). Hereafter, we shall call such a verb form the ci form.

The ci form is an inflected word which occurs before a small class of words. The verb anh- 'not' occurs only after the ci form and is used to mean the verb in the ci form is in negative. The distinction of tenses, levels of speech may be made in the verb anh-.
Compare:

Kaci anh(s)imnita.  
'I don't go.'
Kaci anh(s)imnikka?  
'Don't [you] go?'
Kaci anhkessimnita.  
'I will not go.'
Kaci anhesimnita.  
'I did not go.'
Kaci anhe yo.  
'I didn't go.'
Kaci anhkses yo.  
'I'll not go.'
Kaci anhesse yo.  
'I didn't go.'

6. Numerals

In Korean, there are two series of numbers, both of which occur either as free nouns or before a special class of nouns called Counters. One of the two series of the Korean numbers was borrowed from Chinese characters; the other is of Korean origin. The counters are a class of words which occur only as post-nouns preceded by numbers. Some counters occur after the character numbers; some occur after the numbers of Korean origin; others occur after both sets of numbers. Therefore, it is important to know which series of numbers a certain counter goes with. For example, the counter  
'Korean monetary unit' occurs only after the character numbers as do all other monetary units, whereas the counter  
'year(s) old (age counter)' occurs only with the numbers of Korean origin. Some counters like  
'book counter' occur after both series. In Unit 4 we have the numbers of the Chinese character origin, and in Unit 5 the numbers of Korean origin are listed. When the numbers of Korean origin are used as modifiers, the final sounds of the first four are dropped, thus making

hana 'one' han, tul 'two' tu, ses 'three' se, nes 'four' ne. Others do not change (See Unit 5).
DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

1. ece ëti e kassimnikka?
2. Onil ëti e kassimnikka?
*3. Achim e ëti e kassimnikka?
*4. Ohu e ëti e kassimnikka?
*5. Ganyek e ëti e kassimnikka?
*6. Pam e ëti e kassimnikka?
*7. Kioskke ëti e kassimnikka?
*8. Onil achim e ëti e kassimnikka?
*9. ece pam e ëti e kassimnikka?
*10. Kioskke ouh ëti e kassimnikka?
11. Onil ouh ëti e kassimnikka?
12. Onil ouh ëti e kakessimnikka?
*13. Nwil ëti e kakessimnikka?
*14. Nole ëti e kakessimnikka?
*15. Nwil pam e ëti e kakessimnikka?

Where did [you] go yesterday?
Where did [you] go today?
Where did [you] go in the morning?
Where did [you] go in the afternoon?
Where did [you] go in the evening?
Where did [you] go at night?
Where did [you] go the day before yesterday?
Where did [you] go this morning?
Where did [you] go last night?
Where did [you] go in the afternoon, the day before yesterday?
Where did [you] go this afternoon?
Where will [you] go this afternoon?
Where will [you] go tomorrow?
Where will [you] go the day after tomorrow?
Where will [you] go tomorrow night?

B. Substitution Drill

1. Ilsang yongphum il sassimnita.
2. Cheek il sassimnita.
3. Sukon il sassimnita.
4. I ke ñ il sassimnita.
*5. Nolan sukon il sassimnita.
7. Yole kaci il sassimnita.
8. Nolan ke ñ il sassimnita.
*10. Hayan ke ñ il sassimnita.
*11. Fhalan ke ñ il sassimnita.
*12. Kkamun ke ñ il sassimnita.
13. Hansa li ñ sassimnita.
14. Hankuk mal cheek il sassimnita.

[I] bought some daily necessities.
[I] bought a book.
[I] bought a towel.
[I] bought this.
[I] bought a yellow towel.
[I] bought a yellow pencil.
[I] bought several kinds.
[I] bought a yellow one.
[I] bought a red one.
[I] bought a white one.
[I] bought a blue one.
[I] bought one.
UNIT 4

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

C. Substitution Drill

1. Chok kaps i pissannikka?
2. Chok kaps i ssannikka?
3. Chok kaps i ottahaminnikka?
4. Chok kaps i kwonchanhaminnikka?
5. Chok kaps i emma innikka?
6. Chok kaps i kica kilhasinnikka?
7. Chok kaps i pissannikka?
8. Gip kaps i pissannikka?
9. Ilsang younphum kaps i pissannikka?
*10. Kutu kaps i pissannikka?
*11. Yangpok kaps i pissannikka?

Are the books expensive?
Are the books cheap?
How expensive are books?
Is the price of books reasonable ('not bad')?
How much is the book? ('What is the price of the book?')
Is the (price of) book just so?
Are the books expensive?
Are the houses expensive?
Are the daily necessities expensive?
Are the shoes expensive?
Are the suits expensive?

D. Substitution Drill

1. I suken sæk in nolahamnita.
*2. I suken sæk in ppalkhamnita.
*3. I suken sæk in hayahamnita.
*4. I suken sæk in kkamahamnita.
*5. I suken sæk in phalahamnita.
*7. I suken sæk in pulkimnita.
*8. I suken sæk in himnita.
*10. I suken sæk in phulimnita.

The color of this towel is yellow.
The color of this towel is red.
The color of this towel is white.
The color of this towel is black.
The color of this towel is blue.
The color of this towel is yellowish.
The color of this towel is reddish.
The color of this towel is whitish.
The color of this towel is dark.
The color of this towel is bluish.

E. Substitution Drill

1. Musin sæk il wenhase yo?
2. Musin suken il wenhase yo?
3. Musin chok il wenhase yo?
4. Musin yemphil il wenhase yo?
5. Musin sikye ilil wenhase yo?
6. Musin moca ilil wenhase yo?
7. Musin phen il wenhase yo?
8. Musin phen il phamniktka?
9. Musin phen il sakesse yo?

What color would you like? ('What color do you want?')
What kind of towels would you like?
What books would you like?
What kind of pencils would you like?
What kind of watches would you like?
What kind of hats would you like?
What kind of pens would you like?
What kind of pens do you carry ('sell')?
What kind of pens will you buy?
10. Mūsin phen il cohahamnikka?
11. Mūsin phen il pokessimnikka?

What kind of pens do you prefer?
What kind of pens would you like to see?

F. Substitution Drill

1. Yēki ese suken il phammikka?
2. Yēki ese yangpok il phammikka?
3. Yēki ese son-suken il phammikka?
4. Yēki ese yangmal il phammikka?
5. Yēki ese kutu lil phammikka?
6. Yēki ese nekthal lil phammikka?
7. Yēki ese waisyassilil phammikka?
8. Yēki ese kongchek il phammikka?
9. Yēki ese sinmun il phammikka?
10. Yēki ese capci lil phammikka?
11. Yēki ese tampi lil phammikka?
12. Yēki ese cito lil phammikka?

Do you carry towels here? (‘Do you sell towels here?’)
Do you carry suits here?
Do you carry handkerchiefs here?
Do you carry socks here?
Do you carry shoes here?
Do you carry neckties here?
Do you carry dress shirts here?
Do you carry notebooks here?
Do you carry newspaper here?
Do you carry magazines here?
Do you carry cigarettes here?
Do you carry maps here?

G. Substitution Drill

1. I kes il ettehāsīmnikka?
2. I son-suken (1) ettehāsīmnikka?
3. I kutu (ka) ettehāsīmnikka?
4. I sikye (ka) ettehāsīmnikka?
5. I waisyassil (ka) ettehāsīmnikka?
6. I kongchek (1) ettehāsīmnikka?
7. I sinmun (1) ettehāsīmnikka?
8. I capci (ka) ettehāsīmnikka?
9. I yangpok (1) ettehāsīmnikka?
10. I yangmal (1) ettehāsīmnikka?
11. I mok (1) ettehāsīmnikka?
12. I sangsam (1) ettehāsīmnikka?
13. I pekhwacem (1) ettehāsīmnikka?
14. I on (1) ettehāsīmnikka?
15. I pang (1) ettehāsīmnikka?

How do you like this? (‘How is this?’)
How do you like this handkerchief (‘hand towel’)?
How do you like these shoes?
How do you like this watch?
How do you like this dress shirt?
How do you like this notebook?
How do you like this newspaper?
How do you like this magazine?
How do you like this suit?
How do you like these socks?
How do you like this color?
How do you like this store?
How do you like this department store?
How do you like this dress (these clothes)?
How do you like this room?
H. Substitution Drill

1. Ki kes, alma imnikka? How much is that?
   
2. Ce mocca, alma imnikka? How much is that hat?
   
3. Ce kkaman yangpok, alma imnikka? How much is that black suit?
   
4. Ce hayan kutu, alma imnikka? How much are these white shoes?
   
5. I Nolan son-suken, alma imnikka? How much is this yellow handkerchief?
   
6. I phalan yangmal, alma imnikka? How much are these blue socks?
   
7. Ki hayan waisyaasi, alma imnikka? How much is the dress shirt?
   
8. Ki ppalkan suken, alma imnikka? How much is the red towel?
   
9. Ki kkaman yangmal, alma imnikka? How much are the black socks?

I. Substitution Drill

1. I chmek, alma e phamnikka? How much do you sell this book for? (At what price do you sell this book?)
   
2. Ki mocca, alma e phamnikka? How much do you sell that hat for?
   
3. Ce kkaman yangpok, alma e phamnikka? How much do you sell that black suit for?
   
4. Ce hayan kutu, alma e phamnikka? How much do you sell these white shoes for?
   
5. I Nolan son-suken, alma e phamnikka? How much do you sell this yellow handkerchief for?
   
6. I phalan yangmal, alma e phamnikka? How much do you sell these blue socks for?
   
7. I hayan waisyaasi, alma e phamnikka? How much do you sell this dress shirts for?
   
8. I ppalkan suken, alma e phamnikka? How much do you sell this red towel for?
   
9. Ki kkaman yangmal, alma e phamnikka? How much do you sell those black socks for?

J. Substitution Drill

1. I mocca nin o-sip Wan imnita. This hat is W 50.
   
2. Ce sikye (nin) i Wan imnita. That watch is W 2.
   
   
4. I mnannyenphil (in) yuk Wan imnita. This fountain pen is W 6.
   
5. Ce kilim (in) phal Wan imnita. That picture is W 8.
   
   
7. I simmun (in) sip-il Wan imnita. This newspaper is W 11.
   
   
10. I son-sukan (in) sip-chil Wan innita. This handkerchief is \# 17.
11. Ce lyoa (nin) sip-ku Wan innita. That chair is \# 19.

K. Grammar Drill (as a response drill based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: ace hakkyo e kassimnikka?
Student: Ne, kassimnita.

1. Moca lil sassimnikka?
2. Chøk pang e tillassimnikka?
3. Kim Sensøng il manassimnikka?
4. Ki chøk il ikassimnikka?
5. Pak Sensøng il cip e issassimnikka?
6. Haksøng il chassimnikka?
7. Pak Sensøng il Hankuk mal il
calichyassimnikka?
8. Celmsi Sensøng il pwassimnikka?
9. Cungkuk mal il pwassimnikka?
10. I yenphil il wenhøssimnikka?
11. Kil il mule pwassimnikka?
12. Ki chøk il phalassimnikka?
13. Ki søk il cohaassimnikka?

'Did you go to school yesterday?'
'Yes, I did.'
Ne, sassimnita.
Ne, tillassimnita.
Ne, manassimnita.
Ne, ilkassimnita.
Ne, cip e issassimnita.
Ne, (haksøng il) chassimnita.
Ne, (Pak Sensøng il) kalichyassimnita.
Ne, pwassimnita.
Ne, (Cungkuk mal il) pwassimnita.
Ne, (ki yenphil il) wenhøssimnita.
Ne, (kil il) mule pwassimnita.
Ne, phalassimnita.
Ne, (ki søk il) cohaassimnita.

L. Response Drill

Tutor: ace sti e kassimnikka? /sin\ø/
Student: Sin\ø e kassimnita.

1. Moses il sassimnikka? /ilsang yongphum/
2. ace sti e tillassimnikka? /chøk pang/
3. Musin søk il wenhøssimnikka?
   /nolan søk/
4. Moses il issassimnikka? /yela kaci/
5. Nuku il cohaassimnikka? /Celmsi/
6. Ki kes, alma e phalassimnikka?
   /o-sip Wen/
7. Nuka cip e wassimnikka? /Mikuk salam/
8. Moses il chassimnikka? /haksøng/
9. Moses il kongpu-hassimnikka?
   /Hankuk mal/

'Where did you go yesterday?'/downtown/
'I went downtown.'
Ilsang yongphum il sassimnita.
Chøk pang e tillassimnita.
Nolan søk il wenhøssimnita.
Yela kaci ka issassimnita.
Celmsi il cohaassimnita.
O-sip Wen e phalassimnita.
Mikuk salam i wassimnita.
Haksøng il chassimnita.
Hankuk mal il kongpu-hassimnita.
10. Muex il pawassimnikka? /Ilpon mal/
Ilpon mal il pawassimnita.
11. Nuka Hankuk mal il kalichyessimnikka?
Pak Sensæng i kalichyessimnita.
/Pak Sensæng/
12. øti ese ki chekk il pawassimnikka? Sine chekpong ese pawassimnita.
/sine chekpong/

M. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 5)

Tutor: Hakkyo e kamnikka?
Student: Aniyo, kaci anhsimnita. 'Do you go to school?'
'No, I don't (go).'

2. Chekk kaps i pissamnikka? Aniyo, pissac anhsimnita.

N. Response Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo e kakessimnikka?
Student: Aniyo, kaci anhkessimnita. 'Are [you] going to school?'
'Will you go to school?'
'No, I'm not (going).'
(No, I'll not go.)

2. Onil chekkpang e tillkessimnikka? Aniyo, tilllic anhkessimnita.
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 4

0. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 5 with Past Tense)

Tutor:  ace sine e kassimnikka?
Student: Aniyo, kaci anhassimnita.

1. Hankuk mal il pəwassimnikka?
Aniyo, pəuci anhassimnita.
2. Ki chək il ikassimnikka?
Aniyo, ilkci anhassimnita.
3. Kim Sansəŋ il mannassimnikka?
Aniyo, mannaci anhassimnita.
4. Kutu lill sassimnikka?
Aniyo, saci anhassimnita.
5. Kil il mule pwasimnikka?
Aniyo, mule poci anhassimnita.
6. Kim Sansəŋ il chassimnikka?
Aniyo, (Kim Sansəŋ il) chacci anhassimnita.

7. Chəaksəŋ il phaləsəninkka?
Aniyo, phalci anhassimnita.
8. Samuill e tallesimnikka?
Aniyo, tillici anhassimnita.
9. Sansəŋ in Yənge lil kalichyassimnikka?
Aniyo, kalichici anhassimnita.
10. Hakkyo ka məlessimnikka?
Aniyo, mə(1)ci anhassimnita.
11. Chəək kaps i pissippiassimnikka?
Aniyo, pissaci anhassimnita.
12. Phalan səək il wənhəssimnikka?
Aniyo, (phalan səək il) wənhaci anhassimnita.
13. Ceimsi Sansəŋ il alessimnikka?
Aniyo, alici anhassimnita.

P. Response Drill (as a level drill based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor:  Hakkyo e ka yo?
Student: Ne, (hakkyo e) ka yo.

1. Hankuk mal il kongpu-hæ yo?
Ne, (Hankuk mal il) kongpu-hæ yo.
2. Cheək kaps i ssa yo?
Ne, (cheək kaps i) ssa yo.
3. Yangpok i pissa yo?
Ne, (yangpok i) pissa yo.
4. Hakkyo ka məə yo?
Ne, (hakkyo ka) məə yo.
5. Cəŋkəecəng i kakkawə yo?
Ne, (cəŋkəecəng i) kakkawə yo.
6. Sansəŋ in Mikuk salam iye yo?
Ne, Mikuk salam iye yo.
7. Sansəŋ in cal isse yo?
Ne, cal isse yo.
8. Ceimsi Sansəŋ in Yənge lil mal-hæ yo?
Ne, Yənge lil mal-hæ yo.
9. Sansəŋ in ce salam il alə yo?
Ne, (ce salam il) alə yo.
10. Pəxkhwaecəm i stichəng yəph e isse yo?
Ne, stichəng yəph e isse yo.
11. Yəki ese suken il phəle yo?
Ne, (suken il) phəle yo.
12. Nolan səək il wənəə yo?
Ne, (nolan səək il) wənəə yo.
13. Hankuk mal il cohəə yo?
Ne, (Hankuk mal il) cohəə yo.
14. Onil chaeopang e tille yo?
15. Ki chaeok i coha yo?
16. Sangeom il chaece yo?
17. Sensaeng in Hankuk mal il pawe yo?
18. Kim Sensaeng i kaliche yo?

Ne, (chaeopang e) tille yo.
Ne, (ki chaeok i) coha yo.
Ne, sangeom il chaece yo.
Ne, ce nin Hankuk mal il pawe yo.
Ne, Kim Sensaeng i kaliche yo.

Q. Response Drill (as a level drill based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Hakkyo e kammikka?
Student: Ne, (hakkyo e) ka yo.

1. Hankuk mal il kongpu-hammikka?
2. Cheok kapse i ssamnikka?
3. Yangpok i pissamnikka?
4. Hakkyo ka nammikka?
5. Ganglecang i kakkapalamnikka?
6. Sensaeng in Mikuk salam iimnikka?
7. Kim Sensaeng in cip e issamnikka?
8. Ce salam il amnikka?
9. Yake eee sukon il phamnikka?
10. Kkaman seek il wenhammikka?
11. I kyosil il cohahammikka?
12. Haksam il chacisimnikka?
13. Ce salam il molimnikka?

'Do you go to school?'
'Yes, I do (I go to school!).

Ne, kongpu-hae yo.
Ne, sa yo.
Ne, pissa yo.
Ne, mala yo.
Ne, kakkawa yo.
Ne, Mikuk salam iye yo.
Ne, (cip e) isse yo.
Ne, ase yo.
Ne, phale yo.
Ne, kkaman seek il wenhae yo.
Ne, cohahae yo.
Ne, haksam il chace yo.
Ne, molla yo.

R. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Hakkyo e kasimnikka?
Student: Hakkyo e kase yo?

1. Hankuk mal il kongpu-hasimnikka?
2. Cungkuk mal il puseimnikka?
3. Hankuk mal cheok il ilkisimnikka?
4. Kim Sensaeng in kutu lil sasimnikka?
5. Senaeng i haksam il chacisimnikka?
6. Anyeong-hasimnikka?
7. Yocim attahke cinasimnikka?
8. Ceimsi Sensaeng il asimnikka?
9. Onil Mikuk salam i Hankuk e osimnikka?

'Hankuk mal il kongpu-hase yo?'
'Cungkuk mal il puse yo?
'Hankuk mal cheok il ilkise yo?
'Kim Sensaeng in kutu lil sase yo?
'Sensaeng i haksam il chacise yo?
'Annyeong-hase yo?
'Yocim attahke cinase yo?
'Ceimsi Sensaeng il ase yo?
'Onil Mikuk salam i Hankuk e ose yo?'
10. Yange sensæng i Hankuk mal chëmk il ilkisanimnikka? Yange sensæng i Hankuk mal chëmk il ilkise yo?

11. Ceimsi Sensæng i na e samusil e tillisanimnikka? Ceimsi Sensæng i na e samusil e tillise yo?

12. Pak Sensæng in wekyokwan îsimnikka? Pak Sensæng in wekyokwan îse yo?

S. Response Drill (as a grammar drill based on Grammar Notes 2 and 5)
(Answer in Informal Polite Speech for the Formal Polite using the stimulus /ne/ or /aniyo/.)

Tutor: Hakkyo e kakessanimnikka? /aniyo/ 'Are you going to school?' /no/
Student: Aniyo, kaci anhksesë yo. 'No, I'm not (going to go).'

   /ne/

2. I chëmk il ilkessanimnikka? /aniyo/ Aniyo, ilkci anhksesë yo.

3. Mikuk salam chinku lil /nanna/ Aniyo, männakessë yo.
   /ne/


5. I chëmkasæng il phalkessanimnikka? /ne/ Ne, phalkksesë yo.

6. Ce e samusil e tillikessanimnikka? Aniyo, tillici anhksesë yo.
   /aniyo/

7. Yange lil kalîchikessanimnikka? /ne/ Ne, kalîchikksesë yo.

8. Cip e isskessanimnikka/ilkessanimnikka/? Aniyo, (cip e) issći anhksesë yo.
   /aniyo/

T. Response Drill (as a level drill based on Grammar Note 1)
(Answer in Informal Polite Speech using the stimulus.)

Tutor: Kim Sensæng in ati e kasiessanimnikka? /sicæng/ 'Where did Mr. Kim go?' /market place/
Student: Sicæng e kasse yo. 'He went to the market.'

   /chëkpæng/


UNIT 4

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

4. Nuka sensaeng cip e tillessimnikka? 
   /chinku/
   Chinku ka tillesse yo.

5. Sensaeng e yangpok elma e sassimnikka? 
   /o-sip Wan/
   0-sip Wan e sasse yo.

6. Ki Mikuk salam in nuku iyessimnikka? 
   /Ceimsi Sensaeng/
   Ceimsi Sensaeng iyesse yo.

7. Sensaeng in ece musin chok il 
   ilkessimnikka? /Ilpon mal chok/
   Ilpon mal chok il ilkesse yo.

8. I chok, elma e phalesimnikka? 
   /o-sip Wan/
   0-sip Wan e phalles yo.

9. Hankuk mal in nuka kalichyessimnikka? 
   /Pak Sensaeng/
   Pak Sensaeng i kalichyesse yo.

10. Nuka Yenge sensaeng iessimnikka? 
    /Mikuk yeca/
    Mikuk yeca ka Yenge sensaeng iesse yo.

U. Response Exercise (Answer the questions on the basis of the dialogues at the 
beginning of this Unit: Formal Polite question in Informal Polite and 
vice versa.)

    Tutor: aec eti e kassimnikka?  'Where did you go yesterday?'
    Student: Sinse sangcemin e kasse yo. 'I went to a store downtown.'

1. Pokhwacom esu mues il saesse yo?
2. Onil in sine e an kakessimnikka?
3. Chok kaps i pissa yo?
4. Chokpang esu sukan il phamnikka?
5. Musin sek il wenchase yo?
6. Sensaeng in nolan waisyassil cohahessimnikka?
7. Sensaeng e moca, elma ye yo?
8. Sensaeng e cutu, elma e sassimnikka?
9. Seul e os kaps i ssamnikka?
10. Sensaeng in onil achip e muess hakesse yo?
11. aec cenyek e muess hassimnikka?
12. Onil pam e cip e isskkeyo?
13. aec ohu e eti e kasse yo?
14. Neil nac e ce samusil e tillikessimnikka?
15. Sensaeng in yose musin chok il ilkise yo?
EXERCISES

Conduct the following conversations, once in Formal Polite Speech and once in Informal Polite Speech:

A. You ask Mr. Kim:
   a. where he's going to go this afternoon.
   b. what he'll buy.
   c. what kind of pictures he likes.
   d. what he's going to do at school.
   e. what books he's going to read.
   f. where he'll stop by.
   g. who is going to teach English.
   h. whom he's going to meet.
   i. where he's going to teach Korean.
   j. How much he is going to pay for shoes.
   k. where he'll be tonight.

   Mr. Kim answers:
   a. that he's going to the market place.
   b. that he's going to buy some pictures.
   c. that he likes Korean pictures.
   d. that he's going to study.
   e. that he's going to read English books.
   f. that he's going to stop by his friend's office.
   g. that he (i.e. Mr. Kim) will teach it.
   h. that he's going to meet a friend.
   i. that he will teach [it] at a school.
   j. that he's going to pay W 95.
   k. that he'll be in class.

B. Ask Mr. Kim:
   a. if the books are expensive.
   b. if he's going downtown.
   c. if downtown is near.
   d. if he has black shoes.
   e. if they sell many kinds.
   f. if they sell towels here.
   g. where Mr. Lee's office is.
   h. if he wants a pencil.
   i. if he wants several kinds.
   j. if he'll drop in the school.
   k. if he's looking for USIS.
   l. if he knows the way to Seoul Station.
   m. where he went yesterday.
   n. what he bought.
   o. how much he paid for the pen.
   p. how much the book was.
   q. what color he liked.

   Mr. Kim answers:
   a. that they are not (expensive).
   b. that he is (going downtown).
   c. that it is far.
   d. that he doesn't.
   e. that they don't.
   f. that they do.
   g. that he doesn't (know).
   h. that he wants paper.
   i. that he does.
   j. that he won't.
   k. that he's looking for the Embassy.
   l. that he doesn't know.
   m. that he went to a store.
   n. that he bought some daily necessities.
   o. that he paid W 35.
   p. that it was W 55.
   q. that he liked blue color.
r. what book he read yesterday.
s. where he stopped by this morning.
t. who taught Korean.
u. whom he met at school.
v. what the man's name was.
w. what the American asked [him].
x. how much the [man] sold this book for.
y. how much he paid for his shoes.
z. whom he looked for.

that he read a Korean book.
that he stopped by his friend's office.
that Mr. Park taught it.
that he met an American teacher.
that (it) was James.
that he asked him for directions.
that he sold it for W 65.
that he paid W 73.
that he looked for his teacher.

C. Say the following in Korean:

a. W 12
b. W 23
c. W 34
d. W 45
e. W 56
f. W 67
g. W 78
h. W 89

i. W 103
j. W 214
k. W 358
l. W 893
m. W 2,539
n. W 7,927
o. W 10,111
p. W 11,123

D. Mr. James asks the price of the following objects and you answer with the given price.

Mr. James                You

a. this yellow towel     W 28
b. that Seoul map        W 52
c. those red shoes       W 250
d. those black suits     W 3,210
e. these blue socks      W 8
f. that hat              W 79
g. that American watch   W 1,700
h. this dress shirt      W 95
i. your fountain pen     W 55
j. that chair            W 527
k. this woman's dress    W 250
E. Pak Sansang will respond with /Ne, kilapsita./ 'Yes, let's do so.' when you propose to:

a. go downtown with him.
b. see the picture.
c. buy some daily necessities.
d. stop by a bookstore.
e. sell the house.
f. ask the street directions.
g. find Mr. Kim.
h. meet friends.
i. read that book.
j. come again tomorrow.
k. learn Chinese.
l. stay at home.
m. find out that Korean's name.
제 5 과  물건 사기 (계속)

(대화 A)

(책방에서)

사전
좋은 사전

1. 김 : 실례합니다. 여기 좋은 사전이 있습니까?

영한 사전
사전 맴닙니까?

2. 접원 : 영한 사전 맴닙니까?

3. 김 : 에.

4. 접원 : 에, 있습니까.

보여 주십시오.

5. 김 : 좀 보여 주십시오.

자

6. 접원 : 자, 여기 있습니다.

어떤
어떤 사전

7. 김 : 이것은 어떤 사전입니까?
UNIT 5. Shopping (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A
(—Kim stopped by a bookstore—)

Kim
sacən
cohin sacən
dictionary
a good dictionary

1. Silliye-hamnita. Yəki cohin sacən
   i issimnikka?
   Excuse me. Do you have a good
dictionary here?

Camwan
Yəŋ-Han sacən
sacən mal issimnikka
English-Korean dictionary
do you mean [a] dictionary?

2. Yəŋ-Han sacən mal issimnikka?
   Do you mean an English-Korean diction-
   ary?

Kim
3. Ne.
   Yes.

Camwan
4. Ne, issimnita.
   Yes, we do.

Kim
poə cusipsiyo
please show [me]

5. Com poə cusipsiyo.
   May I see it? (!'Please show [it to
   me].!')

Camwan
ca
well; here

6. Ca, yəki issimnita.
   Here you are! (!'Here! [it] is.'!)

Kim
etən
what kind of

etən sacən
what kind of dictionary

7. I kəs in etən sacən issimnikka?
   Is this a good dictionary? (!'What
   kind of dictionary is this?!')

111
대단히 좋습니다.
그러나
다른 것

8. 접원 : 대단히 좋습니다. 그러나 다른 것도 있습니다.

어떻습니까?

9. 김 : 다른 것은 어떻게습니까?

비산 사전
그리고
큰 책

10. 접원 : 다른 것은 좀 비산 사전입니다. 그리고 큰 책입니다.

작은 것

11. 김 : 나는 작은 것이 좋습니다. 이 작은 것을 사겠습니다.

또
필요합니까?

12. 접원 : 또 다른 것이 필요합니까?

종이
벤과 종이

13. 김 : 아, 벤과 종이는 어디에서 팔니까?
totehminnita  [it]'s very good
   kilena  but; however
   talin kes  different one; other one
8. Totehminnita. Kilena, talin kes to issimmnita. [It] is very good. But we also have another one.

ettethsimnikka

9. Talin kes in ettethsimnikka? how is [it]?

   pissan sacen  Is the other one good? ('How is the
   kiliko  other one?!
   khoon chaw  The other one is [a] fairly expensive
   imnita.  (dictionary). And, [it]'s a big
   kiliko, khoon chaw  book.
   imnita.

   cakin kes  a small one
11. Na rin cakin kes i cohsimmnita.  A small one is fine for me. I'll
cakin kes il sakessimnita.  take this small one.

   tto  again; besides; also
   philo  necessity; need
   philo-hamnikka  do [you] need?; is [something] needed?
12. Tto takin kes il philo-hamnikka?  Do you need anything else? ('Is
   other thing also needed?!

   congi  paper
   phen kwa congi  pen and paper
13. A, phen kwa congi nin eti eso  Oh, where can I buy a pen and paper?
   pha(ll)mnikka?  ('As for pens and paper, where do
                  [they] sell?!)
다음
다음 집
문방구 점


(대화 B)

(문방구 점에서-)

드릴 가요

15. 점원 : 어서 오십시오. 무엇을 드릴 가요?

16. 김 : 종이와 펜이 있습니까?

먹겠습니다가

17. 점원 : 예, 있습니다. 종이는 무엇 종이를 원하십시오?

라이프 종이

18. 김 : 라이프 종이를 원합니다.

두 가지
두 가지 종이


20. 김 : 얼마나요?
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

Camwan

taigm

next; next time
taigm chip

the next door ('next house!')
munpangkucam

stationary shop

14. Taigm chip i munpangkucam inmita.

There's a stationary shop next door. ('Next door is a stationary shop.')

Dialogue B

(--Kim enters next door--)

Camwan

tilil kka yo

shall [I] give [you]?

15. ese osipsisyo. Muoo il tilil kka yo?

Come in. What would you like? ('What shall I give you?')

Kim

16. Congi wa phen i issimnikka?

Do you have paper and pens?

Camwan

wennhasimnikka

do [you] want?

17. Ne, issimnita. Congi nin musin congil lil wenhase yo?

Yes, we have. What kind of paper do you want?

Kim

thaiphi congii

typewriter paper

18. Thaiphi congii lil wenhannita.

I want typewriter paper.

Camwan

tu kaci

two kinds
tu kaci congii
two kinds of paper

19. A, kilase yo? Tu kaci congii ka issimnita.

Fine. ('Oh, is that so?') We have two kinds of typewriter paper.

Kim

20. alma (i)ye yo?

How much are [they]?
한 가지

 쉼

 쉼 장

 오십 원


 미

 미 삽니다.

 미 산 것

 좀 더 산 것

 없어요

22. 김: 좀 더 산 것은 없어요?

 지금

23. 접원: 예, 좀 더 산 것은 지금 없읍니다.

 그럼

 오십 원 짝짜리

24. 김: 그럼, 오십 원 짝짜리를 주십시오.

Camwen

han kaci
swin
swin cang
o-sip Wen

One (kind) is W70 for 50 sheets, and the other is W50. ('We sell it for W50.')

Kim

te
te ssamnita
te ssan käs
com te ssan käs
apsë yo

more
[it]'s cheaper
cheaper one; cheaper kind
a little cheaper one
don't [you] have?; isn't [there]?

Don't you have anything cheaper?

22. Com te ssan käs in apsë yo?

Camwen

ciksım

23. Ne, te ssan käs in ciksım apsımnita.

Kim

now
No, not right now. ('We don't have a cheaper kind now.')

24. Kilımyen, o-sip Wen ccalli lil cusipsiyo.

Kilımyen

o-sip Wen ccalli

then; if so
W50 worth; in the value of W50

Then I'll take the 50 Won kind. ('Then give me the W50.'
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>숫자</th>
<th>단어</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>21</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>40</th>
<th>50</th>
<th>60</th>
<th>70</th>
<th>80</th>
<th>90</th>
<th>99</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>하나</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>들</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>섯</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>넣</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>닦석</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>얇석</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>밑꿀</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>얇꿀</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>앉춤</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>열</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>(열)배</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>배 하나</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>배 들</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103</td>
<td>배 섯</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>배 넣</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>배 닦석</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106</td>
<td>배 얇석</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107</td>
<td>배 밑꿀</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>배 얇꿀</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109</td>
<td>배 앉춤</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119</td>
<td>배 열 앉춤</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>숫자</th>
<th>단어</th>
<th>300</th>
<th>1,000</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>119</td>
<td>삽배</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119</td>
<td>(일)찰</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119</td>
<td>(일)란</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(일)배, (일)찰, (일)란: 일제 침략 시의 한국어 표현.
# NUMERALS (2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>han(a)</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>yel-han(a)</th>
<th>21</th>
<th>simul-han(a)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>tu(l)</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>yel-tu(l)</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>simul-ahop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>se(s)</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>yel-se(s)</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>sehinhin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>ne(s)</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>yel-ne(s)</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>mahinhin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>tass</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>yel-tass</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>swin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>yass</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>yel-yass</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>yesun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>ilkop</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>yel-ilkop</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>il(h)in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>yetel</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>yel-yetel</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>yetin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(yetel)p</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>ahcpl</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>yel-ahcpl</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>ahinhin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>yel</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>simu(l)</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>ahinh-ahop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>(il)-paeck</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>ipaeck</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>sampaeck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>paeck-han(a)</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>ipaeck-yel</td>
<td>401</td>
<td>sapaeck-han(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>paeck-tu(l)</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>ipaeck-simul</td>
<td>502</td>
<td>opaeck-tu(l)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103</td>
<td>paeck-se(s)</td>
<td>230</td>
<td>ipaeck-sehin</td>
<td>603</td>
<td>ykpaeck-se(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>paeck-ne(s)</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>ipaeck-mahin</td>
<td>704</td>
<td>chilpaeck-ne(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>paeck-tass</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>ipaeck-swin</td>
<td>805</td>
<td>phalpaeck-tass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106</td>
<td>paeck-yass</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>ipaeck-yesun</td>
<td>906</td>
<td>kupaeck-yass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107</td>
<td>paeck-ilkop</td>
<td>270</td>
<td>ipaeck-il(h)in</td>
<td>911</td>
<td>kupaeck-yel-han(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>paeck-yetel(yetop)</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>ipaeck-yetin</td>
<td>922</td>
<td>kupaeck-simul-tu(l)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109</td>
<td>paeck-ahop</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>ipaeck-ahin</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>(il)chan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119</td>
<td>paeck-yel-ahop</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>sampaeck</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>(il)man</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. Yaki (e) X i/ka issimmikka? ('Is there X here?') is another expression commonly used in the situations similar to Yaki ese X il/lil phamnikka? ('Do [you] sell X at this place?'). It means something like 'Do you carry X here (where X is a certain thing you want to buy)?'. Cohin 'good, nice' is a noun-modifier word which is formed from the verb stem cooh- 'to be good' (See Grammar Note 1).

2. Mal imnikka? 'Do you mean...?' is always immediately preceded by something. The affirmative response to X mal imnikka? 'Do you mean X?' is Ne, X mal imnita. 'Yes, I mean X.' Yang-Han 'English-Korean' is the contracted form of either Yang H Hankuk mal 'English-Korean language' or Yangkuk Hankuk 'Britian-Korea'. This kind of contraction in one word made out of two or more words appears often in Korean. In each case, the first syllables of the words are brought together to make the contraction. Examples: Han-Ya, 'Korea(n)-English (Britian), Han-Il 'Korea(n)-Japan(ese)', Cung-Tok 'Sino-German', Han-Mi 'Korea-U.S.'.

6. Ca 'well', 'here' occurs always at the beginning of the sentence followed by a pause to signify that the speaker is going to suggest or produce something.

7. atten 'what sort of' is a question noun-modifier word which denotes the quality or characteristics of the following noun. Compare with musin 'what kind of' which denotes the type, essence or denomination of the following noun.

8. Talin 'different', 'other' is a noun-modifier word which is formed from the verb stem tal- 'to be different'.

10. Kiliko 'And' occurs at the beginning of the sentence and is followed by a pause.

11. The verb stem of the noun-modifier word cakin 'small' is cak- 'to be small in size'; cak- means 'to be little in quantity'.

12. The verb stem philyo-ha- 'to be needed!', 'to be necessary', is an intransitive verb which may be preceded by the emphasized subject but never by an object. Examples:

Talin kes i philyo-hamnita. '[I] need another one!' ('A different thing is needed!')
14. *Tae* 'the next time', 'next' occurs either as a free noun or as a determinative.

15. The verb stem *tali* - 'to give' is the politest equivalent of *suri*-. A sentence which ends in *(1)* kka yo? is always a question sentence (See Grammar Note 2).

22. *Te* 'more', *'er* occurs immediately before description verbs or other adverbs (See Grammar Note 3). The antonym of *ta* is the adverb *tal* 'less...'.

24. *Ccali* 'worth', 'value' is a post-noun which occurs only after a stated amount of money. If followed by another noun, the phrase ending in *ccali* describes the value of the noun. If not followed by another noun, the phrase ending in *ccali* indicates the denomination of money in the stated amount. Examples:

- pæk Wen ccali sikye: a watch which is W100 worth
- o-slip Wen ccali moca: a hat which is W50 worth
- slip Wen ccali: W10 bill
- o-slip Pul ccali: $50 bill

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. *-n/in/nin*

The verb ending *-n/in/nin* is added to a verb stem, or to a verb stem plus other suffix(es): *-n* is added to a description verb stem which ends in a vowel; *-in* to a description verb stem which ends in a consonant; *-nin*, to an action verb stem. The inflected form which ends in *-n/in/nin* occurs only before a noun as a modifier of the noun, and never alone nor before other classes of words. It shows only the present action or state of the modified noun. We shall call the words of this class Present Noun-Modifier Words and the *-n/in/nin* ending the Present Noun-Modifier Ending. Examples:

**Group 1**

- pissan sikye: *(an) expensive watch*
- men hakkyo: *(a) school which is far*
- nolan yanphil: *(a) yellow pencil*
- kcamhan moca: *(a) black hat*
UNIT 5

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

Group 2
cohin chok
' (a) good book'
copin kil
' (a) narrow street'
nelpin kyosil
' (a) large classroom'

Group 3
kanin salam
' a man who is going'
canin ai
' a sleeping child'
kallchinin yaca
' a woman who is teaching'
choek il ilkpin haksang
' a student who is reading a book'
nho ka pemunin mal
' the language that I'm learning'

2. -l/il kka yo? 'Shall I...?!, 'Shall we...?!', 'Will [it]... (do you think)?'

The construction -l/il kka yo? occurs only as a final form of a question sentence. If the subject or the topic in the sentence is the speaker, he asks the addressee's consent or permission for the action he is going to take. If the subject or the topic of the sentence includes both the speaker and addressee, the speaker asks the addressee whether he is interested in doing something. If the subject or the topic in the sentence is other than the speaker or the speaker plus addressee, the speaker asks the addressee for his opinion about the possibility of the action or description occurring in the future. Note: -l is added to a stem ending in a vowel; -il to a stem ending in a consonant (See Grammar Note 3, Unit 9). Examples:

Tapang e kal kka yo?
' Shall I go to the tearoom?'
'Shall we go to the tearoom?'

Sensang cip e tillil kka yo?
' Shall I stop by your house?'
'Shall we stop by the teacher's house?'

Kim Sensang i ol kka yo?
' Will Mr. Kim come?'

Hakkyo ka mel kka yo?
'(Do you think) the school will be far?'

3. Adverbs

Adverbs are a class of words which may or may not be inflected. They occur before and modify other inflected expressions (i.e. verbals, noun-modifiers, sentences, other adverbs). This class of words is distinguished from noun-modifiers (See Grammar Note 1) which occur only before nouns. There are some nouns which occur sometimes as adverbs also. For examples: are two kinds of adverbs: (1) one kind may be separated by a pause from the subsequent inflected expressions, and (2) the other kind occur without pause as
an integral part of an inflected expressions. The adverbs of group (1) are called Sentence Adverbs; those of the group (2), simply Adverbs. We have had so far the following kinds of adverbs.

kaliko 'and'; kilana 'but'; kalomyen 'then'; ne 'yes'; aniyo 'no'; attehke 'how'; tto 'again'; 'also'; kall '(not) so', 'in such a way'; oom 'a little'; ese 'please', 'quickly'; ttokpaio 'straight ahead'; cal 'well', etc.

Some of these adverbs occur at the beginning of sentences which succeed always other sentences: others occur before inflected expressions which do not need to be preceded by other sentences.

(a). te 'more', '-er' and tal 'less'

Te and tal occur without pause before noun-modifier words, verbals or other adverbs. They denote the comparative degree of the following descriptive expression. Compare:

1. Ki kes i cohismnita.  
   Ki kes i te cohismnita.  
   Ki kes i tal cohismnita.  
   '[It] is good.'  
   '[It] is better.'  
   '[It] is poorer.'

2. I chok i pissannita.  
   I chok i te pissannita.  
   I chok i tal pissannita.  
   'This book is expensive.'  
   'This book is more expensive.'  
   'This book is less expensive.'

3. alyun mal  
   te alyun mal  
   tal alyun mal  
   '[a] difficult language'  
   '[a] more difficult language'  
   '[a] less difficult language'

4. Kim Samseng i Yenge lìl cal hamnita.  
   Kim Samseng i Yenge lìl te cal hamnita.  
   Kim Samseng i (Ceimsi pota) Yenge lìl tal cal hamnita.  
   'Mr. Kim speaks English well.'  
   'Mr. Kim speaks English better.'  
   'Mr. Kim speaks English less well (than James).'

(b). tæanhi 'very'

Tæanhi 'very' occurs without pause before noun-modifiers, verbals or other adverbs. Compare:

1. Chok i pissannita.  
   Chok i tæanhi pissannita.  
   'The book is expensive.'  
   'The book is very expensive.'

2. Ssan kutu lìl sasse yo.  
   Tæanhi ssan kutu lìl sasse yo.  
   '[I] bought cheap shoes.'  
   '[I] bought very cheap shoes.'
UNIT 5

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

   'Mr. Kim speaks English well.'
   Kim Sansaeng i Yange lil twetanhi cal mal-hae yo.
   'Mr. Kim speaks English very well.'

4. Counters: cang, can, kwon, ke, pun, mali, pal, te

   In Unit 4, we noticed that certain counters such as kwon 'Korean monetary unit' occur only after numerals of character origin. The counters cang, can, kwon, ke, pun, etc. are some of the commonly used counters which occur only after Korean numerals.

   (a). Cang is used in counting such things as paper, letters, towels, sheets, flat glasses, etc.
   
      thai phi cong tasses cang
      '5 sheets of typing paper'
      phyencu tu cang
      'two letters'
      tamyo se cang
      'three blankets'

   (b). Can is used in counting cups or glasses of liquid.
   
      khaphi han can
      'a cup of coffee'
      sul tu can
      'two glasses of wine'

   (c). Kwon is used in counting books.
   
      yeka chok yale kwon
      'several volumes of history books'
      Yange chok tu kwon il sase yo.
      'I bought two English books.'

   (d). Ke is used in counting common object nouns such as pencils, desks, chairs, etc.
   
      Yenphil han ke cuse yo.
      'Give me a pencil.'
      Choksaeng i tases ke isse yo.
      'There are five desks.'
      Lyca ka myouch ke issinnikka?
      'How many chairs are there?'

   *myouch 'how many' is a determinative which occurs before counters as a question word.

   (e). Pun or salam is used in counting persons. Pun is the honorific equivalent of salam.
   
      sensaeng se pun
      'three teachers'
      haksang tu salam
      'two students'
      Mikuk salam yale pun
      'several Americans'

124
(f). 

Mal is used in counting animals.

mal han mali          'one horse'
so tu mali            'two cattle'
ke se mali            'three dogs'
kuyang1 ne mali       'four cats'

(g). Pel is used in counting suits.

yangpok tu pel         'two suits'

(h). Twe is used in counting vehicles, airplanes, machines, etc.

catongcha yele tae    'several automobiles'
plhaengki se tae      'three airplanes'

Note that all the counters occur typically after the determinative myoch 'how many?'. Also note that in Korean things are counted in the following manner: Nominal + Numeral + Counter.
UNIT 5

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drills

1. Yesi Hankuk mal sacen i issimnikka? Do you have a Korean dictionary here?
2. Yesi Yang-Han sacen (1) issimnikka? Do you have an English-Korean dictionary here?
3. Yesi thaiphicongi (ka) issimnikka? Do you have typewriter paper here?
4. Yesi munpengkucon (1) issimnikka? Is there a stationary shop here?
5. Yesi yale kaci congicongi (ka) issimnikka? Do you have several kinds of paper here?
6. Yesi cohincacen (1) issimnikka? Do you have a good dictionary here?
7. Yesi ettencacen (1) issimnikka? What kind of dictionary do you have here?
8. Yesi talincen (1) issimnikka? Do you have a different one here?
9. Yesi khin cheok (1) issimnikka? Do you have a big book here?
10. Yesi cakin sacen (1) issimnikka? Do you have a small dictionary here?
11. Yesi pissancacen (1) issimnikka? Do you have any expensive dictionary here?
12. Yesi seancongicongi (ka) issimnikka? Do you have cheap paper here?

B. Substitution Drill

1. Yang-Han sacen mal innikka? Do you mean an English-Korean dictionary?
2. I cip mal innikka? Do you mean this house?
3. Pissancongi mal innikka? Do you mean expensive paper?
4. Yele kacin mal innikka? Do you mean several kinds?
5. Khin suken mal innikka? Do you mean a big towel?
6. Mikuskalam mal innikka? Do you mean the Americans?
7. ene kecon mal innikka? Which do you mean?
8. Musinsacencalalinnikka? What dictionary do you mean?
9. ene mal innikka? When do you mean?
10. Nuku mal innikka? Whom do you mean?
11. Mues mal innikka? What do you mean?
12. eti mal innikka? Where do you mean?
13. atenke mal innikka? How do you mean?
14. Myschsalambalinnikka? How many people do you mean?
C. Substitution Drill

1. Ki kas, com poye cusipsiyo. Please show [me] that.
2. Ge kilm, com poye cusipsiyo. Please show [me] that picture.
3. Ki capci, com poye cusipsiyo. Please show me that magazine.
4. Ge sirnum, com poye cusipsiyo. Please show me that newspaper.
5. Nolan yangmal, com poye cusipsiyo. Please show me some yellow socks.
6. Phalan kas, com poye cusipsiyo. Please show me a blue one.
7. Kkanhan kutu, com poye cusipsiyo. Please show me some black shoes.
8. Havan waisyass, com poye cusipsiyo. Please show me some white shirts.
9. Ppalkan os, com poye cusipsiyo. Please show me a red dress.

D. Substitution Drill

1. Taln kas to issimnita. [We] also have a different one(s).
2. Cohin kas to issimnita. [We] also have a good one.
3. Fissan kas to issimnita. [We] also have an expensive one.
4. Ssan kas to issimnita. [We] also have a cheap one.
5. Khin kas to issimnita. [We] also have a big one.
6. Cakin kas to issimnita. [We] also have a small one.
7. Nolan kas to issimnita. [We] also have a yellow one.
8. Ppalkan kas to issimnita. [We] also have a red one.
9. Phalan kas to issimnita. [We] also have a blue one.
10. Kathan kas to issimnita. [We] also have the same thing.
11. Alintaun kas to issimnita. [We] also have a beautiful one.
12. Yeppin kas to issimnita. [We] also have a pretty one.
13. Nalpin kas to issimnita. [We] also have a wide one.
14. Copin kas to issimnita. [We] also have a narrow one.
E. Substitution Drill

1. Telin kəs in əttəhainnikka?
2. Telin kəs in əlma irlnikka?
3. Telin kəs in cohainnikka?
4. Telin kəs in nappinnikka?
5. Telin kəs in khinnikka?
6. Telin kəs in caksanlikka?
7. Telin kəs in apsimnikka?
8. Telin kəs in issimnikka?
9. Telin kəs in talimnikka?
10. Telin kəs in alimtapsimnikka?
11. Telin kəs in yeppinnikka?
12. Telin kəs in no(l)psimnikka?
13. Telin kəs in copsimnikka?
14. Telin kəs in katsimnikka?
15. Telin kəs in swipsimnikka?
16. Telin kəs in alyapsimnikka?

How is the other one?

How much is the other one?

Is the other one good?

Is the other one bad?

Is the other one big?

Is the other one small?

Don't you have a different one?

Do you have another one?

Is the other one different?

Is the other one beautiful?

Is the other one pretty?

Is the other one wide?

Is the other one narrow?

Is the other one the same?

Is the other one easy?

Is the other one difficult?

F. Substitution Drill

1. Telin kəs i phiyo-hamnikka?
2. Yang-Han sacən (1) phiyo-hamnikka?
3. Han-Yeng sacən (1) phiyo-hamnikka?
4. Phen kwa cong1 (ka) phiyo-hamnikka?
5. Cheoksang kwa lyca (ka) phiyo-hamnikka?
6. Moca wa kutu (ka) phiyo-hamnikka?
7. Yephil kwa kongchak (1) phiyo-hamnikka?
8. Sacən kwa cong1 (ka) phiyo-hamnikka?

Do [you] need anything else?

Do you need an E-K dictionary?

Do you need a K-E dictionary?

Do you need a pen and paper?

Do you need a desk and a chair?

Do you need a hat and shoes?

Do you need a pencil and a notebook?

Do you need a dictionary and paper?
G. Substitution Drill

1. Phen kwa congι nin etι ese phamnikka?
   Where can I buy pens and paper? ('Where do [they] sell pens and paper?')

2. Yangmal (kwa) yangpok in etι ese phamnikka?
   Where can I buy socks and suits?

3. Sinmun (kwa) oapci nin etι ese phamnikka?
   Where can I buy newspapers and magazines?

4. Sikye (wa) son-suken in etι ese phamnikka?
   Where can I buy watches and handkerchiefs?

5. Congι (wa) phen in etι ese phamnikka?
   Where can I buy paper and pens?

6. Yangmal (kwa) kutu nin etι ese phamnikka?
   Where can I buy socks and shoes?

7. Cheuraang (kwa) lyca nin etι ese phamnikka?
   Where can I buy tables and chairs?

8. Moca (wa) kutu nin etι ese phamnikka?
   Where can I buy hats and shoes?

9. Yenphil (kwa) kongchak in etι ese phamnikka?
   Where can I buy pencils and notebooks?

H. Substitution Drill

1. Mues il tilil kka yo?
   What would you like? ('What shall I give you?')

2. eni chek (11) tilil kka yo?
   Which book would you like?

3. Musin sem (11) tilil kka yo?
   What color would you like?

4. Talin kes (11) tilil kka yo?
   Would you like a different one?

5. Te ssan congι (111) tilil kka yo?
   Would you like cheaper paper?

6. Te pissan sikyo (111) tilil kka yo?
   Would you like a more expensive watch?

7. Te cohin kes (11) tilil kka yo?
   Would you like a better one?

8. Te cakin kes (11) tilil kka yo?
   Would you like a smaller one?

9. Te khin kes (11) tilil kka yo?
   Would you like a bigger one?

10. Te hayan kes (11) tilil kka yo?
    Would you like a whiter one?
I. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Chok i pissamnita.
Student: Pissan chok i issimnita.

1. Sacen i cohsimnita.
2. Cip i khannita.
3. Mannyenphil i caksimnita.
4. Yangpok i khamhamnita.
5. Waisyassi ka hayamnita.
6. Yenphil i nolahsimnita.
7. Os i ppalkahsimnita.
8. Sicang i kakcapsimnita.
11. Samusil i copsimnita.
12. Sok i talimnita.
13. Sacen i pissamnita.
15. Chok i swipsimnita.
16. Mal i elyepsimnita.

'The book is expensive.'
'There's an expensive book.'
Cohin sacen i issimnita.
Khin cip i issimnita.
Cakin mannyenphil i issimnita.
Kkamhan yangpok i issimnita.
Hayan waisyassi ka issimnita.
Nolan yenphil i issimnita.
Ppalkan os i issimnita.
Kakkaun sicang i issimnita.
Alimtaun kilim i issimnita.
Nelpin kyosil i issimnita.
Copin samusil i issimnita.
Talin sok i issimnita.
Pissan sacen i issimnita.
Kathin kilim i issimnita.
Swiun chok i issimnita.
Elyeun mal i issimnita.

J. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Hakseng i kongpu-hannita.
Student: Kongpu-hanin hakseng i issimnita.

'A student (is) study(ing).'
'There is a student who is studying.'
Onin salam i issimnita.
Hankuk mal il (mal-)hanin Mikuk salam i issimnita.
Mikuk e kanin Hankuk hakseng i issimnita.
Yengi lil kalichinin senseng i issimnita.
Kutu lil sanin puin i issimnita.
Chok il ilknin al ka issimnita.
Kil il mule ponin Mikuk yeca ka issimnita.
8. Hankuk yeça ka Cungkuk mal il kalichinni
    Cungkuk mal il kalichinnin Hankuk yeça ka issimnita.
9. Haksəŋ 1 ki pun il amnita.
    Ki pun il anin haksəŋ il issimnita.
10. Yeça ka kılım il ponnita.
    Kılım il ponnin yeça ka issimnita.

K. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 4)

Tutor: Congi ka myəch cang issimnikka?
    'How many sheets of paper are there?
        /tu(1)/
Student: Tu cang issimnita.
    'There are two sheets [of paper].'
1. Sənsəng 1 myəch pun issimnikka?
    Se pun issimnita.
    /se(s)/
2. Yənpkil 11 myəch kə səssimnikka?
    Təsəs kə səssimnita.
    /təsəs/
3. Haksəŋ 1 myəch salam issimnikka?
    Ne salam issimnita.
    /re(s)/
4. Mikuk haksəŋ 1 myəch salam kongpu-
    Ilkəp salam (1) kongpu-hamnita.
    hannikka? /ilkəp/
5. Kyosil e yəça ka myəch kə issimnikka?
    Ahop kə issimnita.
    /əhop/
6. Yəki e che̞k 1 myəch kwən issimnikka?
    Yəl-se kwən issimnita.
    /yəl-se(s)/
7. Khopli lil myəch can məsimnikka?
    Yəle can məsimnita.
    /yəle/
8. Hakkyəo e kyosil 1 myəch kə
    Simu kə issimnita.
    issimnikka? /suμ(1)/
9. Kə lil myəch məli pəwəssimnikka?
    Təsəs məli pəwəssimnita.
    /təsəs/
10. Yangpok 11 myəch pəl səssimnikka?
    Tu pəl səssimnita.
    /tu(1)/
UNIT 5  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

L. Expansion Drill (Supply the proper counter /pun, salam, kæ, cang, kwæ/ and expand the sentence as in the example.)

Tutor: Sænsæng i issimnita. /dana/
Student: Sænsæng i han pun issimnita.

1. Yenphil i issimnita. /tul/
2. Haksæng i issimnita. /nes/
3. Congi ka issimnita. /yæses/
4. Chaeksang il sasimnita. /tasæs/
5. Sinmun il sasimnita. /dana/
6. Kyosil e lyca ka issimnita. /ilkop/
7. Yenge chaek il sakessimnita. /yætel/
8. Na nin achim e khephi lil masimnita. /se(s)/
9. Congi lil cusipsiyo. /tul/
10. Mikuk salam il pwassimnita. /ses/

'There is (a) teacher.' /one/
'There is one teacher.'

Yenphil i tu kæ issimnita.
Haksæng i ne salam issimnita.
Congi ka yæses cang issimnita.
Chaeksang il tasæs kæ sasimnita.
Sinmun il han cang sasimnita.
Kyosil e lyca ka ilkop kæ issimnita.
Yengetchaek il yætel kwen sakessimnita.
Na nin achim e khephi lil se can masimnita.
Congi lil tu cang cusipsiyo.
Mikuk salam il se salam pwassimnita.

M. Response Drill (Use tætanhi in the proper place.)

Tutor: Ki sacen icohsimnkka?
Student: Ne, tætanhi cohsimnita.

1. Ki chaek i pissamnikka?
2. Cengkæcang i kakkapísimnikka?
3. Hankuk yæsa ka yepsimnikka?
4. Samusil i oopsimnikka?
5. I chaek i talinnikka?
6. Ce cuta kukkamahsimnikka?
7. Han-Yenget sacen i philyo-hammikka?
8. Pak Sænsæng i cal kalichsimnikka?
9. Cëmsi Sænsæng i Yenget lil cal (mal-)hammikka?
10. Os i ppalkahsimnikka?

'Is that dictionary good?'
'Yes, [it] is very good.'

Ne, tætanhi pissamnita.
Ne, tætanhi kakkapísimnita.
Ne, tætanhi yeppimnita.
Ne, tætanhi ocppsimnita.
Ne, tætanhi talinnita.
Ne, tætanhi kkomahsimnita.
Ne, tætanhi philyo-hamnita.
Ne, tætanhi cal kalichsimnita.
Ne, tætanhi cal (mal-)hamnita.
Ne, tætanhi ppalkahsimnita.
N. Response Drill

Tutor: Mues il tilil kka yo? /khal/

Student: Khal il cusipsiyo.

1. eni chak il tilil kka yo? /Hankuk ma'i sacen/
2. Musin sek il tilil kka yo? /phalan sek/
3. Taln kos il tilil kka yo? /ki kos/
4. Pissan yenphil il tilil kka yo? /com ssaan kos/
5. Yang-Han sacen il tilil kka yo? /Han-Yang sacen/
6. Cakn sukon il tilil kka yo? /kun son-suken/
7. Nolan sek yangmal il tilil kka yo? /kkanan yangmal/
8. Mikuk mocaa lil tilil kka yo? /Ilpon mocaa/

What would you like? ('What shall I give you?') /knife/
'Please give [me] a knife.'
Hankuk ma'i sacen il cusipsiyo.
Phalan sek il cusipsiyo.
Ki kos il cusipsiyo.
Com ssan kos il cusipsiyo.
Han-Yang sacen il cusipsiyo.
Khun son-suken il cusipsiyo.
Kkaman yangmal il cusipsiyo.
Ilpon mocaa lil cusipsiyo.

0. Response Drill

Tutor: Cip e kal kka yo?

Student: Ne, kasipsiyo.

1. I chak il sal kka yo?
2. Kim Samsan il mannal kka yo?
3. Kil il mule pol kka yo?
4. Yeki e issil kka yo?
5. I chak il phal(11) kka yo?
6. Yang-Han sacen il tilil kka yo?
7. Kilin il kilil kka yo?
8. Samsan cip e tillil kka yo?
9. Ki al lil chacil kka yo?
10. I chak il ilkil kka yo?

'Should I go home?'
'Do you want me to go home?'
'Yes, you should ('please go').'
Ne, kasipsiyo.
Ne, mannasipsiyo.
Ne, mule posipsiyo.
Ne, kssisipsiyo.
Ne, kyesipsiyo.
Ne, phalisipsiyo.
Ne, cusipsiyo.
Ne, kilisipsiyo.
Ne, tillisipsiyo.
Ne, chacisipsiyo.
Ne, ilkisipsiyo.
P. Response Drill.

Tutor: Hakkyo lo kal kka yo? /cip/
Student: Cip ilo kapsita.

1. Hankuk mal il pœul kka yo? /Yango/
2. Pakhwacem esse sal kka yo? /sangcem/
3. Kim Sensaeng il mannal kka yo?
   /Ceimsi Sensaeng/
4. Onil pakhwacem e tillil kka yo?
   /namil/
5. Onil in Cunguk mal il (mal-)hal
   kka yo? /Yenge/
6. Sinwun il ilkil kka yo? /capci/
7. Kyosil esse kongpu-hal kka yo?
   /samusil/
8. Conyeok e samusil e issil kka yo?
   /cip/

'Shall we go to school?' /house/
'Let's go to the house, [instead].'
Yængæ lîl paupsita.
Sangcem esse sapsita.
Cemisæ Sensaeng il mannapsita.
Nœil tillïpsita.
Yængæ lîl (mal-)hapsita.
Capci lîl ilkïpsita.
Samusil esse kongpu-hapsita.
Cip e issïpsita.

Q. Response Drill (Answer the question in Informal Polite Speech beginning with Aniyo.)

Tutor: Hakkyo e kasimnikka?
Student: Aniyo, kaci anhæsse yo.

1. Ki sacen i cohsimnikka?
2. Ookin kes il sakessimnikka?
3. Tto talin kes il phïyos-hannikka?
4. Phen kwa congï lîl phaïssimnikka?
5. Congï lîl wenhasimnikka?
6. Sinæe e munpangkucem i issessimnikka?
7. Kil il mule pwassimnikka?
8. Tœ ssan kes in epsamnikka?
9. Yëki ese phen il pha(i)lnimnikka?
10. Chëk kaps i ssamnikka?
11. Yæng-Han sacen i issimnikka?
12. Nolan søëk il cohahamnikka?

'Did you go to school?'
'No, I didn't (go).'
Aniyo, cohci anhe yo.
Aniyo, saci anhkessæ yo.
Aniyo, phïyos-haci anhe yo.
Aniyo, phaïci anhæsse yo.
Aniyo, wenhaci anhe yo.
Aniyo, epessæ yo.
Aniyo, mule poci anhæsse yo.
Aniyo, issæ yo.
Aniyo, phaïci anhe yo.
Aniyo, ssaci anhe yo.
Aniyo, epæ yo.
Aniyo, cohahaci anhe yo.
R. Grammar Drill

Tutor: I kēs i issimnitā. /talīn kēs/
Student: Talīn kēs to issimnikka?

1. Cakin chōk i cohissimnita. /khīn chōk/
2. Congī ka philyo-hammnita. /yēnpīl/
3. I kēs in pissamnitā. /cē kēs/
4. Na nīn Hankuk mal il pōmmmaitā.
   /Cēimī/
5. Sukēn il saisimnitā. /yāŋpōk/
6. Sacēn il wēnhammnita. /capčī/
7. Yēki ese kutū il phahmmnitā. /mōca/
8. Pak Sōnseàng i kalichimnītā.
   /I Sōnseàng/
9. Cēimī Sōnseàng il mānnamnitā.
   /chīnkū/
    /Ilpon mal/
11. Hankūk mal il mal-hacī anhsimnitā.
    /Cungkūk mal/

I[We] have this! /a different one/
"Do you have any others?"
"Do you have a different one, too?"
Khīn chōk to cohissimnikka?
Yēnpīl to philyo-hammnikka?
Cē kēs pīssamnikka?
Cēimī to Hankuk mal il pōmmnikka?
Yāŋpōk to saisimnikka?
Capčī to wēnhammnikka?
Yēki ese mōca to phahmmnikka?
I Sōnseàng to kalichimnikka?
Chīnkū to mānnamnikka?
Ilpon mal to swipci anhsimnikka?
Cungkūk mal to mal-hacī anhsimnikka?

S. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hakkyō ka mēnnitā. /sīme/
Student: Sīme to mēnnitā.

1. Chōk i philyo-hammnita. /yēnpīl/
2. I kēs i issimnitā. /talīn kēs/
   /Cēimī/
4. Na nīn Hankuk mal il kalichimnītā.
   /Yēngē/
5. Khīn sacēn i cohissimnītā. /cakin sacēn/
6. Mōca lil sal kka hamnītā. /kutū/
7. Yēki ese kapčī lil pha(11)mntā.
   /sīnmūn/
8. Kyōsīl i nēlpšsimnītā. /samūsīl/

'Ve school is far.' /downtown/
'Downtown is far, too.'
Yēnpīl to philyo-hammnītā.
Talīn kēs to issimnītā.
Cēimī to Yēngē lil mal-hammnītā.
Na nīn Yēngē to kalichimnītā.
Cakin sacēn to cohissimnītā.
Kutū to sal kka hamnītā.
Yēki ese sīnmūn to pha(11)mntā.
Samūsīl to nēlpśsimnītā.
    /Hankuk yeça/
    /I Sensæng/

T. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Mikuk pæsakwan i kakkapsimnita.  'The U.S. Embassy is near.' /USIA/
    /Mikuk Kongpowen/
Student: Mikuk Kongpowen i te kakkapsimnita.  'USIA is nearer.'

1. Yeœphil i pissamnita. /mannyœphil/
   Mannyœphil i te pissamnita.
2. I kilim i alimmapsimnita. /œ kilim/
   Cœ kilim i te alimmapsimnita.
3. Hankuk mal kyosil i nelpsimnita.  Congkuk mal kyosil i te nelpsimnita.
    /Cungkuk mal kyosil/
4. Nœ moça ka cohsimnita. /Kim Sensæng moça/
   Kim Sensæng moça ka te cohsimnita.
5. Ilpon mal i swipsimnita. /Cungkuk mal/
   Cungkuk mal i te swipsimnita.
6. Cungkuk mal i œlyêpsimnita. /Hankuk mal/
   Hankuk mal i te œlyêpsimnita.
7. Khin sacen i ssamnita. /cakin sacen/
   Cakin sacen i te ssamnita.
8. Ilpon in caksimnita. /Hankuk/
   Hankuk in te caksimnita.
    /capci/
10. Pak Sensæng in Yeœge lil cal hamnita. /Kim Sensæng/
   Kim Sensæng in (Yeœge lil) te cal hamnita.
U. Response Exercise (Answer the question based on reality.)

**Tutor:** Yenphil kwa chok i eni kes i te pissamnikka?
**Student:** Chok i te pissamnita.

1. Yenge wa Hankuk mal in eni mal i te swipsamnikka?
2. Hankuk mal kyosil kwa Cungkuk mal kyosil in eni kes i te nelsamnikka?
3. Yenge wa Hankuk mal in eni mal i te alyepsamnikka?
4. Hankuk kwa Ilpen in eti ka te caksinmnikka?
5. Kim Sensaeng kwa Pak Sensaeng in nuka Yenge lil te cal hanmnikka?
6. Sensaeng e yangpok kwa moca nin eni kes i te ssamnikka?
7. Nyuyok kwa Wesington in eti lil te cohahamnikka?

**Tutor:** Which one is more expensive, a pencil or a book?
**Student:** A book is more expensive.

1. Yenge ka te swipsamnita.
2. Cungkuk mal kyosil i te nelsamnita.
3. Hankuk mal i te alyepsamnita.
4. Hankuk i te caksinmniita.
5. Kim Sensaeng i te cal hanmniita.
6. Moca ka te ssamnita.
7. Wesington il te cohahamnita.

V. Transformation Drill

**Tutor:** I chok i ssamnita.
**Student:** Te ssan chok i issamnita.

1. I kilim i alimtapsamnitna.
2. I kyosil i nelspsamnitna.
3. I samusil i copamnitna.
4. I sacen i cohamsnitna.
5. I mal i swipsamnitna.
6. I kyosil i caksamnitna.
7. I chok i alyepsamnitna.
8. I manyenphil i ssamnita.
9. I kes il cohahamnita.
10. I pun i (Yenge lil) cal hanmniita.

**Tutor:** This book is cheap.
**Student:** There's a cheaper one (book).

1. Te alimtawn kilim i issamnitna.
2. Te nelpin kyosil i issamnitna.
3. Te copin samusil i issamnitna.
4. Te cahn sacen i issamnita.
5. Te swiwn mal i issamnita.
6. Te caksin kyosil i issamnita.
7. Te alyewn chok i issamnita.
8. Te ssan manyenphil i issamnita.
9. Te cohahan kes i issamnita. (Yenge lil) te cal hanin pun i issamnita.
EXERCISES

1. Mr. Kim asks you:
   a. to show him the dictionary.
   b. to give him that.
   c. to go downtown together.
   d. to study Korean together.
   e. if you know him.
   f. if Korean is difficult.
   g. if you have read a book.
   h. if she teaches Korean.
   i. to buy this suit.

   You respond:
   'Which one do you mean?'
   'What do you mean?'
   'When do you mean?'
   'Where do you mean?'
   'Who(m) to you mean?'
   'Yes, it is.'
   'What kind of book do you mean?'
   'Who do you mean?'
   'How much do you want?'

2. You ask the store-clerk:
   a. if he carries any good K-E dictionary.
   b. to show you one.
   c. how it is.
   d. how the other one is.
   e. which one is better.
   f. if the bigger one is more expensive.
   g. where they sell fountain-pens and notebooks.
   h. how much they charge for a cup of coffee.
   i. if the department stores also carry magazines and newspapers.

   He replies:
   'Yes, we do.'
   'Here you are.'
   'It's very good, but we have another kind.'
   'It's a little larger one.'
   'They are the same.'
   'The price is also the same.'
   '(They sell) at the stationary-store.'
   'W20.'
   'Yes, they do.'

3. Ask Mr. Kim:
   a. How many cups of coffee he drinks in the morning.
   b. How many students there are.
   c. How many books he has read.
   d. How many chairs there are in the room.
   e. How many sheets of paper he needs.
   f. How many colors he wants.
   g. How many hats he'll buy.
   h. How many teachers he has.
1. How many suits he has.
2. How many horses there are on the street.

4. Tell Pak Seung-sang that:
   a. You like a bigger one.
   b. You want a little more expensive watch.
   c. You need a pencil and paper.
   d. A beautiful woman came to your house.
   e. There is no English-Korean dictionary here.
   f. French is easy, but Korean is very difficult.
   g. The store on the left is a stationary shop, and the building on the right is a department store.
   h. The dictionary is small, but it is a very good one.
   i. The small one is fine for you, but you need the other one, too.
   j. You are studying Korean, and your friend is teaching German.
   k. You met a pretty Korean girl.
   l. There is a child who is reading a newspaper.
   m. You know an American who speaks Korean.
   n. You don't know the lady who is buying shoes.
   o. You have learned Korean, but you don't speak well.
   p. Korean is not easy, but you like it.
   q. Mr. Park doesn't speak Chinese, but he reads it well.
제 6 과 시간

(대화 A)

지금

-> 뭐, 뭐

-> 뭐 시간

1. A: 지금 몇 시 이에요?

여덟 시

오 분

오 분 전

2. B: 여덟 시 오 분 전입니다.

일

시작

시작합니다가

3. A: 몇 시에 일이 시작합니다가?

아침

여덟 시 삽십 분

4. B: (어침) 여덟 시 삽십 분에 시작합니다.

하루

시간

-> 몇 시간

5. A: 그럼, 하루에 몇 시간 일을 하세요?
UNIT 6. Time

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

A

Cikim
myŏch
mech/met/
myŏch-si/myŏssi/

1. Cikim myŏch-si (i)ye yo?
What time is it (now)?

B

yetel(p)-si/yetelssi/
o pun
o pun cen

2. Yetel(p)-si o pun cen imnita.
It's five minutes before 8.

A

il
sicak
sicak-hamnikka

3. Myŏch-si e il i sicak-hamnikka?
What time do you start work? ('What
times does work begin?')

B

achim
yetel(p)-si samsip pun

4. (Achim) yetel(p)-si samsip pun
   e sicak-hamnita.
I start at 8:30. ('It begins at
8:30 a.m.')

A

halu
sikan
myŏch sikan/myŏssikan/

5. Kilŏm, halu e myŏch sikan il il
   hase yo?
How many hours do you work a day
(then)?
여덟 시 간(동안)
일합니다

대개
집에

7. A: 대개 며 시에 집에 가세요?
다섯 시 좀
사부실
떠납니다
사부실을 떠납니다

8. B: 대개 다섯 시 좀 사부실을 떠납니다.

(대화 B)

먹침

9. A: 오늘 이 먹침이지요?

삼월
일일


달
이 달
발셋서

11. A: 이 달이 벌써 삼월입니까?
yətəl(p) sikan (tongan)
il-hamnita
6. Yətəl(p) sikan (tongan) il-hamnita.
I work (for) eight hours.

A
cip e
7. Təkə mysch-si e cip e kase yo?
What time to you usually go home?

B
təsəs-si ccim
samusil
tənamnita
samusil il tənamnita
8. Təkə təsəs-si ccim samusil il tənamnita.
I usually leave my office around 5 o'clock.

Dialogue B

myočili
9. Onil i myočil ici yo?
What's today's date?

B
Sam-wəl
il il
10. Sam-wəł il il imnita.
(It's) March 1st.

A
tal
i tal
pelssə
11. I tal i pelssə Sam-wəl imnikka?
Is it March already? ('Is this month already March?')

143
이제
이제 왔어?


무슨 요일

13. A: 그럼면, 오늘이 무슨 요일이에요?

목요일


일하러
일하러 갑니다

15. A: 어제 일하러 갔 NoSuch가?

16. B: 아니요, 일하러 가지 않았습니다.

주일
이주일

사용
지난 사용
지난 사용 동안
썼습니다

17. 이주일에는 지난 사용 동안 썼습니다.

왜요

물

아陪你가

(물이) 아陪你가

18. A: 왜요? 물이 아陪你가?
I-wal
isip-phal il

12. Ne, kilhesimnita. ece ka I-wal
isip-phal il iessesimnita.

musiin yoil

13. Kilmyen, onil i musiin yoil iye yo?

Mokyoil


il-hale
il-hale kamnita

15. ece il-hale kassimnikka?

Aniyo, il-hale kaci anhesimnita.
cuill
i cuill
sahil
cinan sahil
cinan sahil tongan
swiessimnita

16. Cuill e ninn cinan sahil tongan
swiessimnita.

we yo
mom
aphessimnikka

17. (mom i) ap Hessimnikka

18. we yo? Mom i aphessimnikka?

February
28th (of the month)
Yes, it is. Yesterday was February
28th.

what day of the week?
What day of the week is it (today),
then?

Thursday
[It's] Thursday.

in order to work; to work
[I] go to work
Did [you] go to work yesterday?

No, I didn't (go to work).
week
this week
three days
last three days
for the last three days
[I] rested; [I] took a rest
This week I took three days off.
('As for in this week I took a rest
for the last three days.')

how come?; why?
body
are [you] sick?; are [you]
hurt?
were [you] sick?

Why? Were you sick?
B

hyuka

pat_sshessimnita

[I] received, [I] had received

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. *Myach* and its variant *mech* 'how many', *what*, *some*, occurs either as a free noun or as a determinative. Before counters or certain nouns in question sentences, it means 'how many' or 'what'; in a statement sentence it means 'some'. As a free noun *myach* means 'how many' in a question sentence, and 'some' or 'several' in a statement sentence. *Myach* plus certain counters make up (question) noun phrases. For example, *myach-si* 'what time' is a noun phrase which is used only in asking *time*. Each phrase of this type should be memorized as a phrase. *Myach* is pronounced as /myas/ before 꼬, /myan/ before 꼬; /myat/ before 꼬, etc. When a vowel follows, the final sound *ch* is released and forms a syllable with the following vowel: *myoach-si/myoach 'what time', myoach salam/myoachsal 'how many people', myoach nai/myeannal 'how many days', myoach tali/myoattal 'how many months', myoach i/myeachi 'how many (as a subject)' in *Myach i issa yo?* 'How many are there?'.

2. *Pun* 'minute' is a time counter which occurs only after numerals of Chinese character origin. *Numeral + pun* designates either a point in time or a duration of time. Example:

   han-si o pun  o pun
   15 minutes after 1 o'clock  'five minutes'

3. The verb stem *sicak-ha- 'to begin'* is formed from the noun *sicak* 'the beginning' by adding *ha-. Sicak-ha-* is used either as a transitive verb or as an intransitive verb. Compare:

   Il i sicak-hamnita.  'The work begins.'
   Il il sicak-hamnita.  '[I] begin the work.'

The antonym of *sicak-ha-* is either *kkith-na- 'to end', 'to be over'* (intransitive verb), or *kkith-na- 'to finish'* (transitive verb).

4. *Kim* 'then' is the contracted form of *kimyoon* 'if so' which is a sentence adverbial. Both forms occur at the beginning of a sentence and are followed by a pause. *Sikan* 'hour', *time*, occurs either as a time counter or as a free noun. As a counter after Korean numerals *sikan* means 'hour'; *han sikan* 'one hour', *tu sikan* 'two hours', *se sikan* 'three hours', *myach sikan* 'how
many hours', yole sikan 'many hours', etc. As a free noun, it means 'time':
Sikan i issimnikka? 'Do you have time?'.
Il-ha- 'to work' is a verb stem formed from the noun il 'work', 'job'. The
antonym of il-ha- is no(i)- 'not to work', 'to play', 'to loaf'.

6. Tongan 'for', 'during' is a post-noun. The nominal that precedes usually
is a time expression, and 'time expression + tongan' is an adverbial
expression. Example: han sikan tongan 'for an hour', halu tongan 'for one
day', il pun tongan 'for one minute', Il-wel tongan 'during January', ki
tongan 'in the meantime'.

8. Cim 'about', 'around' is a post-noun which occurs after other nominal
expressions (e.g. time, place names, quality or quantity expressions) and
denotes approximation of the preceding expressions. Examples:
    han tal cim
    han tal tongan cim
    Il-wel cim
    han sikan cim
'about one month'
'for about one month'
'around January'
'about an hour'
The antonym of the verb stem ttena- 'to leave' is tah- 'to arrive'.

9. Myeolal 'what date', 'some days' is one word; not a two-word compound of
myeol + il.

11. The opposite word for palse 'already' is acik '(not) yet' which also means
'still'. Compare:
    Hakkyo ka acik sicak-haci
    anhessimnitai.
    Ce nin acik Hankuk mal il
    pemunniita.
'School has not begun yet.'
'I'm still studying Korean.'

13. Yoil 'day of the week' occurs as a post-noun after certain nouns or
determinatives. Examples: oni yoil 'which day of the week', musu yoil
'what day of the week'.
14. *Mokyoil* 'Thursday' is one word. So is *Ilyoil* 'Sunday', *Welyoil* 'Monday', *Hwayoil* 'Tuesday', *Suyoil* 'Wednesday', *Kimyoil* 'Friday', *Thoyoil* 'Saturday'.

17. *Hal* 'one day', *sahil* 'three days' belong to a small class of one-word time expressions which enumerate days: *hal* 'one day', *ithil* 'two days', *sahil* 'three days', *nahil* 'four days', *tasae* 'five days', *yesae* 'six days', *ile* 'seven days', *yejile* 'eight days', *ahile* 'nine days', *yehil* 'ten days'. This class of time expressions also is used infrequently to designate days of the month.

19. *Hyuka* 'vacation', 'leave' is distinguished from *panghak* 'school vacation'.

**GRAMMAR NOTES**

1. Time counters: *nyon* 'year', *he* 'year', *-wae* 'month', *tal* 'month', *cuil* 'week', *il* 'day', *nal* 'day', *-si* 'o'clock', *sikan* 'hour', *pun* 'minute'. Korean time counters are classified in two groups: (a) those which occur after the numerals of Korean origin, and (b) those which occur after numerals of Chinese character origin. It is imperative to know the series of numerals with which each time counter is used.

The counters *he* 'year', *tal* 'month', *cuil* 'week', *nal* 'day', *-si* 'o'clock', *sikan* 'hour' occur after numerals of Korean origin.

The counters *nyon* 'year', *-wae* 'month', *cuil* 'week', *il* 'day', *pun* 'minute' occur after numerals of Chinese character origin.

The above time counters are divided into three sub-classes without regard to the series of numerals with which they occur:

(a) Those which name:

1. the calendar months. ........................................... *-wae*
2. hours. .............................................................. *-si*

(b) Those which count:

1. the number of months. .......................................... *tal*
2. the number of weeks. ........................................... *cuil*
3. the number of hours. ........................................... *sikan*
4. the number of days (for only 20 days, 30 days, 40 days, 50 days, 60 days). ................................. *nal*
(c) Those which either:
1. name calendar years or enumerate years ............... nyan
2. name dates or enumerate days ....................... il
3. specify the minutes or enumerate the minutes ...... pun

Note that expressions of time in Korean are listed from the largest unit to the smallest unit: that is, in the order of year, month, day, hours, minute and second.

Note 1: Call 'week' is preceded by either set of numerals.
Note 2: For the words expressing the number of days from 1 day to 10 days, see number 17 of Notes on Dialogues in this Unit.
Note 3: The two time counters -wal and -si are added to the numbers with a hyphen to signify that they occur only as parts of words which are expressions of time, i.e., -wal for the names of months and -si for the hours of a day, respectively.

2. -ci yo?

We noticed in Unit 4 that the ci form occurs before the verb anh- 'not'. The ci form immediately followed by yo? (i.e. -ci yo?) occurs as an informal polite question sentence final form. If -ci yo? occurs without a preceding question word, the speaker expects the addressee to answer yes; if -ci yo? follows after a question word in the same sentence it simply substitutes for -(i)mnikka? or (infinitive) + yo?. Compare: Give attention to the final intonations.

Group 1

Kim Sensong i Yengi lil mal-haci yo?  'Mr. Kim speaks English, doesn't he?'
Hakkyo ka malci yo?  'The school is far, isn't it?'
Hankuk mal i əlyəpci yo?  'Korean is difficult, isn't it?'
Sensong in Mikuk salam ıci yo?  'You are an American, aren't you?'

Group 2

I kes i mues ici yo?  'What's this?'
Hakkyo ka əti e issci yo?  'Where is the school?'
Naku lil mannassci yo?  'Whom did [you] meet?'
Myach-si el il sicak-haci yo?  '(At) What time do [you] begin the work?'

Note that -ci yo may also occur as an informal polite final form of a statement, propositive or imperative sentence. We will learn more about it later.
3. *-(i)le* 'in order to-

The verb ending *-(i)le* is added to an action verb stem, or to an action verb stem plus honorific suffix *-(i)si: -le* is added to a stem ending in a vowel and *-le* to a stem ending in a consonant. Tense suffixes do not occur in the inflected form ending in *-(i)le*. The *-(i)le* form denotes that the following inflected expression in the same sentence occurs for the purpose of the action inflected by the *-(i)le* form. The verbs which follow the *-(i)le* form are usually *ka-* 'to go', *o-* 'to come', or *tani-* 'to attend'. Examples:

Na nin chŏk (i) ilk ile hakkyo e tillikessyo.
Chinku lil mannale wassinnita.
Hankuk mal il pœule hakkyo e taninnita.
Chŏk (i) sale sinæ e an kakesyo yo?

'I will stop by school to read books.
'I came to meet a friend.'
'I am attending school to learn Korean.'
'Wouldn't you go downtown to buy books?'

4. Adverb phrases

In Unit 1 we learned that two or more nouns make up *Noun Phrases*, and that they occur as though they were one noun. Note that a noun phrase is used as a nominal. In Unit 5, we defined Adverbs. (See Grammar Notes 3, Unit 5.) If two or more words occur together and are used as if they were one adverb we shall call them *Adverb Phrases*. Hereafter, we shall use the term *Adverbial* for any word or phrase which occurs in a position where an adverb may be substituted. Note that some adverbials also occur as nominals but most adverbials are used only as adverbials. *Nouns + particles* are often used as adverb phrases. Example:

(a) *Question Adverb Phrases:*

*eti ese*
*eti e*
*eti lo*
*eti kkaci*
*nuku wa*
*nuku eke*
*alma e*
*alma tongan*
*alma na*
*once kkaci*
*once putho*
*myŏch-si e*

'from where ('from what place!) or where ('at what place!)'
'to (or toward) where ('to what place!')
'as far as) where'
'with whom'
'(to) whom'
'(for) how much ('at what price!)
'(for) how long'
'how (much)'
'until when'
'from (or since) when'
'(at) what time'
myeongil e
musin} relational
  eui } tal e
musin}
  eui } hae e
musin yool e
myeong sikan tongan
myeong pun tongan
myeong il tongan
myeong tal tongan
myeong nyen} tongan
myeong hae } tongan

(on) what date
(in) what month
(in) what year
(on) what day of the week
(for) how many hours
(for) how many minutes
(for) how many days
(for) how many months
(for) how many years

(b) Time Adverb Phrases
achim e
nae e
chu e
cenyeok e
pam e
onil achim e
naeil nae e
molee chu e
kilphi cenyeok e
sepum e
i tal e
i cuil e
cinan cuil e
cinan tal e	
taim hae e
		
taim tal e
taim cuil e

'in the morning'
'at noon'
'in the afternoon'
'in the evening'
'at night'
'this morning'
'tomorrow noon'
'in the afternoon of the day after tomorrow'
'in the evening of two days after tomorrow'
'last night'
'this month'
'this week'
'last week'
'last month'
'next year'
'next month'
'next week'
A. Substitution Drill

1. Myeok-si imnikka?
2. Myeok-il imnikka?
3. Musin hae imnikka?
4. Musin yoil imnikka?
5. Musin tal imnikka?
6. eon eul imnikka?
7. Musin nal imnikka?
8. eonce imnikka?

   What time is [it]?
   What date is [it]?
   What year is [this]?
   What day (of the week) is [it]?
   What month is [it]?
   Which week (of the month) is [it]?
   What date is [it]?
   When will it be?

B. Substitution Drill

1. Onil i myeok-il ici yo?
2. Nael (i) myeok-il ici yo?
3. Mole (ka) myeok-il ici yo?
4. Kiphi (ka) myeok-il ici yo?
5. ece (ka) myeok-il ici yo?
6. Kicokke (ka) myeok-il ici yo?
7. Ki can nal (i) myeok-il ici yo?
8. Nael (i) myeok-il ici yo?
9. Nael (i) musin yoil ici yo?
10. Nael (i) musin nal ici yo?

   What's the date today?
   What's the date tomorrow?
   What's the date the day after tomorrow?
   What's the date two days after tomorrow?
   What was the date yesterday?
   What was the date the day before yesterday?
   What was the date the day before that?
   What is the date tomorrow?
   What day (of the week) is it tomorrow?
   What day is it tomorrow?
C. Substitution Drill

1. Onil in Suyoil imnit.
2. Onil in Welyoil imnit.
3. Onil in Hwayoil imnit.
4. Onil in Mokyoil imnit.
5. Onil in Kimyoil imnit.
6. Onil in Thoyoil imnit.
7. Onil in Llyoil imnit.
8. Onil in Suyoil imnit.

Today is Wednesday.
Today is Monday.
Today is Tuesday.
Today is Thursday.
Today is Friday.
Today is Saturday.
Today is Sunday.
Today is Wednesday.

D. Substitution Drill

1. Cikim i myach-si imnikka?
2. Onil (1) myachil imnikka?
3. Kimnyen (1) musin hee imnikka?
4. I hee (ka) musin hee imnikka?
5. I see (ka) musin yool imnikka?
6. I tal (1) musin tal imnikka?
7. Cinan tal (1) musin tal imnikka?
8. Nwil (1) musin nal imnikka?
9. Once (ka) Suyoil imnikka?
10. Cangyven (1) musin hee imnikka?
11. I cuil (1) eni cuil imnikka?
12. Nemyen (1) musin hee imnikka?
13. Taim hee (ka) musin hee imnikka?
14. Taim tal (1) eni tal imnikka?
15. Taim cuil (1) eni cuil imnikka?

What time is it now?
What date is it today?
What year is it this year?
What year is it this year?
What day of the week was yesterday?
What month is this month?
What month was last month?
What day is tomorrow?
When is Wednesday?
What year was last year?
Which week (of the month) is this week?
What year is next year?
What year is next year?
What month is next month?
Which week of the month is next week?
E. Substitution Drill

1. Onil in Il-wel il il imnita. Today is January first.
2. Onil in I-wel il il imnita. Today is February second.
3. Onil in Sam-wel sam il imnita. Today is March third.
4. Onil in Sa-wel sa il imnita. Today is April fourth.
5. Onil in O-wel o il imnita. Today is May fifth.
6. Onil in Yu-wel yuuk il imnita. Today is June sixth.
7. Onil in Chil-wel chil il imnita. Today is July seventh.
8. Onil in Phal-wel phal il imnita. Today is August eighth.
10. Onil in Sip-wel sip-il il imnita. Today is October tenth.
11. Onil in Sipil-wel sip-il il imnita. Today is November eleventh.
12. Onil in Sipi-wel sip-il il imnita. Today is December twelveth.

F. Substitution Drill

1. Cicik in yetelp-si imnita. It is 8 o'clock now.
4. Mole (nin) Suyoll imnita. The day after tomorrow is Wednesday.
6. ace (nin) Ilyoll imnita. Yesterday was Sunday.
7. Kickeke (nin) Isip il il imnita. The day before yesterday was the 20th.
8. Kilphi (nin) I-wel il il imnita. Two days after tomorrow is February first.

G. Substitution Drill

1. Myeol-si e il il sicak-hamnikka? What time do you start work? (What time does your work begin!?)
2. Myeoll e il il sicak-hamnikka? What date will you start work?
3. Musin yoll e il il sicak-hamnikka? What day (of the week) will you start work?
4. enl cuil e il il sicak-hamnikka? Which week (of the month) will you start work?
5. Musin tal e il il sicak-hamnikka? What month will you start work?
6. Musin nol e il il sicak-hamnikka? What day will you start work?
7. 
7. Once il i sicak-hamnikka?
When will you start work?

8. 
8. Once hakkyo (ka) sicak-hamnikka?
When does school start?

9. 
9. Once kongpu (ka) sicak-hamnikka?
When will your studies begin?

10. 
10. Once hyuka (ka) sicak-hamnikka?
When does your vacation begin?

*11. 
*11. Once suwun (ka) sicak-hamnikka?
When is your office going to open?

*12. 
*12. Once panghak (i) sicak-hamnikka?
When does (school) vacation begin?

*13. 
*13. Once suw (i) sicak-hamnikka?
When does the class begin?

*14. 
*14. Once suw (i) kkith-hamnikka?
When does the class end?

*15. 
*15. Once suw (i) kkith-nassimnikka?
When was the class over?

H. Substitution Drill

1. Yatal-si e sicak-hammita.
[It] begins at 8 o'clock.

2. Phal pun e sicak-hammita.
[It] begins in 8 minutes.

3. Phal il e sicak-hammita.
[It] begins on the 8th.

4. Phal-wal e sicak-hammita.
[It] begins in August.

5. Yatal(p)-si pan e sicak-hammita.
[It] begins at 8:30.

6. Achin ilkop-si e sicak-hammita.
[It] begins at 7 in the morning.

7. Canyak yesses-si e sicak-hammita.
[It] begins at 6 in the evening.

8. Ohu tases-si pan e sicak-hammita.
[It] begins at 5:30 in the afternoon.

9. Suyoil pam ahop-si e sicak-hammita.
[It] begins at 9 o'clock in Wednesday night.

10. Tases-si sip pun can e sicak-hammita.
[It] begins at 10 minutes to 5 o'clock.

I. Substitution Drill

1. Ki salam in il-hale kassimmita.
He went to work.

2. Ki salam in Kongpu-hale kassimmita.
He went to study.

3. Ki salam in cheok (il) sala kassimmita.
He went to buy a book.

4. Ki salam in Hankuk mal (il) pawlo kassimmita.
He went to learn Korean.

5. Ki salam in chinku (il) manrale kassimmita.
He went to meet a friend.

6. Ki salam in il (il) chaoile kassimmita.
He went to find a job.
7. Ki salam in kil (il) mule pole kassimnita.
   He went to ask directions.
8. Ki salam in chëk (il) ilkile kassimnita.
   He went to read books.
9. Ki salam in hyuka (ilil) patile kassimnita.
   He's gone to ask for a vacation.
10. Ki salam in Yëngë (ilil) kalichile kassimnita.
    He went to teach English.
11. Ki salam in Yëngë (ilil) kalichile wassimnita.
    He came to teach English.
    He comes to teach English.

J. Substitution Drill

1. I cuil e il-haessimnita.  [We] worked this week.
2. I tal e il-haessimnita.  [We] worked this month.
3. Cinan tal e il-haessimnita.  [We] worked last month.
4. Cinan cuil e il-haessimnita.  [We] worked last week.
5. Cinan he e il-haessimnita.  [We] worked last year.
6. Cinan Suyoil e il-haessimnita.  [We] worked last Wednesday.
7. Onil aohim e il-haessimnita.  [We] worked this morning.
8. Onil canyok e il-haessimnita.  [We] worked this evening.
10. Onil ohu e il-haessimnita.  [We] worked this afternoon.
11. ace pam e il-haessimnita.  [We] worked last night.
12. ace nac e il-haessimnita.  [We] worked yesterday at noontime.

K. Substitution Drill

1. ence Hankuk mal il poëwëssimmikika?
   When did [you] study Korean?
*2. Nuka Hankuk mal il poëwëssimmikika?
   Who studied Korean?
3. eti ese Hankuk mal il poëwëssimmikika?
   Where did [you] study Korean?
*4. We Hankuk mal il poëwëssimmikika?
   Why did [you] study Korean?
5. Myech salam i Hankuk mal il poëwëssimmikika?
   How many people studied Korean?
6. alma e Hankuk mal il powessimnikka? How much did you pay for studying Korean?
7. attahkhe Hankuk mal il powessimnikka? How did you study Korean?
*8. Nuku wa Hankuk mal il powessimnikka? With whom did you study Korean?
*9. alma tongan Hankuk mal il powessimnikka? How long did you study Korean?
*10. Myechil tongan Hankuk mal il powessimnikka? How many days have you studied Korean?
*11. Myech sikan tongan Hankuk mal il powessimnikka? How many hours have you studied Korean?
*12. Myech cuil tongan Hankuk mal il powessimnikka? How many weeks have you studied Korean?
*13. Myech tal tongan Hankuk mal il powessimnikka? How many months have you studied Korean?

L. Substitution Drill

1. Sahil tongan cip ese swiessimnit'a. I stayed (rested) at home for three days.
2. Se sikan tongan cip ese swiessimnit'a. I stayed at home for three hours.
3. Sam pun tongan cip ese swiessimnit'a. I stayed at home for three minutes.
4. Se cuil tongan cip ese swiessimnit'a. I stayed at home for three weeks.
5. Sam cuil tongan cip ese swiessimnit'a. I stayed at home for three weeks.
*6. Sok cuil tongan cip ese swiessimnit'a. I stayed at home for three weeks.
*7. Sok tal tongan cip ese swiessimnit'a. I stayed at home for three months.
8. Sam rye'n tongan cip ese swiessimnit'a. I stayed at home for three years.
9. Yae mal tongan cip ese swiessimnit'a. I stayed at home for several days.
10. Se sikan pan tongan cip ese swiessimnit'a. I stayed at home for three hours and a half.
11. Se cuil pan tongan cip ese swiessimnit'a. I stayed at home for three weeks and a half.
12. Sok tal pan tongan cip ese swiessimnit'a. I stayed at home for three months and a half.
UNIT 6 KOREAN BASIC COURSE

13. **Ne cuil pan tongan cip ese swiesssimnita.**
    I stayed at home for four weeks and a half.

14. **Sa cuil pan tongan cip ese swiesssimnita.**
    I stayed at home for four weeks and a half.

*15. **Nak cuil pan tongan cip ese swiesssimnita.**
    I stayed at home for four weeks and a half.

M. Substitution Drill

*1. (Ce nin) Seoul e halu tongan issessimnita.
   I was (or stayed) in Seoul for one day.

*2. (Ce nin) Seoul e ithil tongan issessimnita.
   I was in Seoul for two days.

3. (Ce nin) Seoul e sahil tongan issessimnita.
   I was in Seoul for three days.

*4. (Ce nin) Seoul e nahil tongan issessimnita.
   I was in Seoul for four days.

*5. (Ce nin) Seoul e tasse tongan issessimnita.
   I was in Seoul for five days.

*6. (Ce nin) Seoul e yeasae tongan issessimnita.
   I was in Seoul for six days.

*7. (Ce nin) Seoul e ile tongan issessimnita.
   I was in Seoul for seven days.

*8. (Ce nin) Seoul e yatile tongan issessimnita.
   I was in Seoul for eight days.

*9. (Ce nin) Seoul e ahile tongan issessimnita.
   I was in Seoul for nine days.

*10. (Ce nin) Seoul e yahlil tongan issessimnita.
    I was in Seoul for ten days.

*11. (Ce nin) Seoul e yal-halu tongan issessimnita.
    I was in Seoul for eleven days.

*12. (Ce nin) Seoul e yal-halu tongan memulessimnita.
    I stayed in Seoul for eleven days.
N. Substitution Drill

1. Saul e halu tongan issassimnita.
   [I] stayed in Seoul for one day.
2. Washington e ithil tongan
   issassimnita.
   [I] stayed in Washington for two days.
3. Ilpon e sahil tongan issassimnita.
   [I] stayed in Japan for three days.
4. Pusan e nahl tongan issassimnita.
   [I] stayed in Pusan for four days.
5. Inchen e tasse tongan issassimnita.
   [I] stayed in Incheon for five days.
6. Mikuk e yesse tongan issassimnita.
   [I] stayed in America for six days.
7. Cungkuk e ile tongan issassimnita.
   [I] stayed in China for seven days.
8. Yongkuk e yevelle tongan issassimnita.
   [I] stayed in England for eight days.
9. Nam-Han e ahle tongan issassimnita.
   [I] stayed in South-Korea for nine days.
10. Puk-Han e yelhil tongan
    issassimnita.
    [I] stayed in North-Korean for ten days.
11. Nyuvok e yel-halu tongan
    issassimnita.
    [I] stayed in New York for eleven days.
12. Tokil e yel-sahil tongan
    issassimnita.
    [I] stayed in Germany for thirteen days.
13. Pullanse e yel-tasse tongan
    issassimnita.
    [I] stayed in France for fifteen days.
14. Saolyan e yel-ile tongan
    issassimnita.
    [I] stayed in the Soviet Union for seventeen days.
*15. Kulapha e yel-ahile tongan
    issassimnita.
    [I] stayed in Europe for nineteen days.
    [I] stayed in South America for twenty days.
*17. Ithoili e simu-halu tongan
    issassimnita.
    [I] stayed in Italy for twenty-one days.
*18. Wallam e simu-ithil tongan
    issassimnita.
    [I] stayed in Vietnam for twenty-two days.
*19. Thakuk e simu-sahil tongan
    issassimnita.
    [I] stayed in Thailand for twenty-three days.
*20. Hwapan e simu-nahil tongan
    issassimnita.
    [I] stayed in Holland for twenty-four days.
*21. Hubu e simu-tasse tongan
    issassimnita.
    [I] stayed in Australia for twenty-five days.
*22. Itoo e simu-yesse tongan
    issassimnita.
    [I] stayed in India for twenty-six days.
*23. Tuanan e simu-ile tongan issassimnita.
    [I] stayed in Taiwan for twenty-seven days.
0. Response Drill

Tutor: Cikim myeok-si imnikka? /yel-si pan/
Student: Yel-si pan imnita.

'What time is it now?' /10:30/
'[It]'s 10:30.'

1. Onil 1 myeok-il imnikka? /0 1l/
2. Myeok-si e il 1 sicak-hamnikka? /shop-si/
3. ece ka musin yoil ieosimnikka? /Mokyoil/
4. ence hakkyo ka kkith-namnikka? /ohu tase-si/
5. Myeok sikan tongan il (il) hamnikka? /yetel(p) sikan/
6. Sensang in musin yoil e sicang e kamnikka? /Thoyoil/
7. alma tongan Hankuk mal il pawesimnikka? /tu tal/
8. Myeok salam i Hankuk mal il mal-hamnikka? /yelo salam/
9. Onil in myeok-si e cip e kamnikka? /ohu ne-si/
10. eni tal e Hankuk mal kongpu ka sicak-haeosimnikka? /Chil-wel/
11. ence hyuka lil patkessimnikka? /talm tal/
12. Onil enyak e nuku lil mannakessimnikka? /chinuku/

O il imnita.
Ahop si e sicak-hamnita.
Mokyoil ieosimnita.
Ohu tase-si e kkith-namnita.
Yetel(p) sikan tongan il hamnita.
Thoyoil e sicang e kamnita.
Tu tal tongan (Hankuk mal il)
pawesimnita.
Yelo salam i mal-hamnita.
Ohu ne-si e (cip e) kamnita.
Chil-wel e sicak-haeosimnita.
Talm tal e (hyuka lil) patkessimnita.
Chinku lil mannakessimnita.
F. Response Exercise (Answer the question in Informal Polite Speech based on reality.)

Tutor: Yocim mues hase yo?  
Student: Twaakwan ese il-hae yo.  
  'What are you doing these days?'  
  'I'm working at the Embassy.'

1. Onil i myechil iye yo?
2. ace ka musin yoil iese se yo?
3. ence Hankuk mal kongpu sicak-haesse yo?
4. Halu e myech sikan Hankuk mal il pœuse yo?
5. Sansaeng in alma topan twaakwan ese il-haesse yo?
6. Musin yoil e takœ sicang e kase yo?
7. Nuka Hankuk mal il kalichya yo?
8. Haksang 1 myech salam issse yo?
9. Sansaeng e yangpok alma e sasse yo?
10. alma tongan Hankuk e issasse yo?
11. Myech-si e samusil e tillikesse yo?

Q. Grammar Drill (Change the sentence ending -(1)mnikka? to -ci yo?)

Tutor: Onil i myechil imnikka?  
Student: Onil i myechil ici yo?  
  'What's the date today?'  
  'What's the date today?'

1. Mues il cohahammikka?  
2. Nuka Hankuk mal il kalichinnikka?  
3. ence hakkyo ka sicak-haammikka?  
4. Myech-si e il i kkith-nammikka?  
5. eni sangoem ese sikye lil phammikka?  
6. Ki kutu, alma e sasimmikka?  
7. alma tongan Hankuk mal il pwaasimmikka?  
8. ace ka musin yoil iessimikka?  
9. Sansaeng in eni nala ese wassimikka?  
10. Tangsan in musin nala e kamnikka?
UNIT 6

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

R. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: Yŏtel(p)-si e il i sīcak-hamnita. ([I] start work at 8 o'clock.)

Student: Yŏtel(p)-si e il i sīcak-haci yo?

1. Tases-si e cip e kamanita.
2. Teseakwan i mmnita.
3. Mom i aphmxnita.
4. Yŏtel(p) sikan il il hamnita.
5. Oni l Sam-wel il il immnita.
7. Cēsmā Senṣāng il asimnita.
8. Pek Senṣāng il molisimnita.
10. Yeki ese son-suken il phamnita.
11. Chēk kaps i pissamnita.

Tases-si e cip kaci yo?
Teseakwan i melci yo?
Mom i aphici yo?
Yŏtel(p) sikan il il hacı yo?
Oni l Sam-wel il il ici yo?
Kilehci yo?
Cēsmā Senṣāng il asici yo?
Pek Senṣāng il molisici yo?
Taim tal e hyuka lil patci yo?
Yeki ese son-suken il phalci yo?
Chēk kaps i pissaci yo?
Ki ica ka kwŏmchanhci yo?
Kim Senṣāng e samsil e tillici yo?
Kkaman sēk il cohahaci yo?

S. Combination Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor. Na nin hakkyo e kaumnita. Kongpu-

hamnita.

Student. Na nin hakkyo e kongpu-
hale kaumnita.

1. Na nin samsil e kaumnita. Il-hamnita.
2. Na nin pākhwečem e kaumnita. Chēk il
   samnita.
3. Na nin kyosil e kaumnita. Chēk il
   ilkisimnita.
4. Na nin cŏngkēcang e kaumnita. Chinku
   Chinku līl mānmannitnita.
5. Na nin hakkyo e kaumnita. Hankuk mal
   il pēumnita.

'I[m] go[ing] to school.' 'I[m] study[ing],'

'I[m] go[ing] (to school) to study.'

Na nin (samsil e) il-hale kaumnita.

Na nin (pākhwečem e) chēk il sale
kaumnita.

Na nin (kyosil e) chēk il ilkile
kaumnita.

Na nin (cŏngkēcang e) chinku līl
mannale kaumnita.

Na nin (hakkyo e) Hankuk mal il
pēule kaumnita.

T. Response Exercise (Answer the questions based on reality.)

1. Cikim myeç-si imnikka?
2. Onil i myechil imnikka?
3. Cikim in musin tal imnikka?
4. Onil i musin yoil imnikka?
5. Myeç-si e il i sicak-hamnikka?
6. Myeç-si e hakkyo ka kkith-namnikka?
7. ence Hankuk e kasimnikka?
8. alma tongan Hankuk mal il pawašsimnikka?
9. Musin yoil e sicang e kamnikka?
10. Halu e myeç slikan tongan il-hannikka?
11. alma tongan Hankuk e kyesyessimnikka?
12. Myeç tal tongan Sœul e isskessimnikka?
13. Myeç nyœn tongan Sœul e isskessimnikka?
U. Response Drill (Use ccim in the proper place in your answer.)

Tutor: ence il il sicak-hammikka?
       /o il/
Student: O il ccim sicak-hamnita.

1. alma tongan Saul e isskessimnikka?  
   /han tal/
When will you start work? /the 5th/
'I begin work around the fifth.'
Han tal ccim isskessimnita.

2. Musin yo1 1 e pekhwacem e kakese yo?  
   /Kinyoil/

3. Myoch tal tongan Hankuk mal il  
   peoesse yo? /yese tal/
Yese tal ccim peoesse yo.

4. Myoch-si e cip il ttanannikka?  
   /ahop-si/
Ahop-si ccim ttanamnita.

5. ani tal e Hankuk mal kongpu ka  
   kkith-nammikka? /tair tal/
Tair tal ccim kkith-nammnita.

6. Myoch sikan tongan il il hamnikka?  
   /takse ahop sikan/
Takse ahop sikan ccim il il hamnita.

7. Myochil tongan hyuka lil  
   patessimnikka? /yshil/
Yelhil ccim (hyuka lill) patessimnita.

8. Myoch-si e tapang e tillikesse yo?  
   /cesek ilkop-si/
Cesek ilkop-si ccim tillikesse yo.

V. Response Drill

Tutor: I tal i Sam-wel iye yo.  
Student: Pelsse Sam-wel immikka?  
Tutor: Ne, kilhessimnita.

1. Hakkyo ka sicak-hesse yo.  
   Ne, kilhessimnita.  
'This (month) is March.'
'Is [it] already March?'
'Yes, it is.'
Pelsse sicak-hesseimmnikka?

2. Il i kkith-hesse yo.  
   Ne, kilhessimnita.  
Pelsse kkith-hesseimmnikka?

3. Ge nin ki il il kkith-hesse yo.  
   Ne, kilhessimnita.  
Pelsse kkith-hesseimmnikka?

4. Pihoengki ka ttenasse yo.  
   Ne, kilhessimnita.  
Pelsse ttenassimmnikka?

5. Kicha ka han-si e tahasse yo.  
   Ne, kilhessimnita.  
Pelsse tahassimnikka?
6. 군 민 셀써 맹써 요.
   네, 기례실니다.
7. 온일 김요일 이예 요.
   네, 기례실니다.
8. 해키요 카 콴히-나서 요.
   네, 기례실니다.

W. Response Drill

Tutor: 해키요 카 셀써 싱카-焕세임니끼라?
Student: 안이요, 아익 싱카-학이
   안써실니라.

1. 폰신 카 셀써 전써임니끼라?
2. 이 탄 카 셀써 사-월 임니끼라?
3. 피황기 카 셀써 탕써임니끼라?
4. 폰써 맹써임니끼라?
5. 어킴 신みんな 할 셀써 빅써임니끼라?
6. 허카 림 셀써 패써임니끼라?
7. 한쿡 말 센냥 할 셀써
   만써임니끼라?
8. 게통까 림 셀써 삼써임니끼라?
9. 카 척이 긴이 업 콴써임니끼라?
10. 카 척필이 긴이
     업써임니끼라?
EXERCISES

1. **Pak Sensang** has asked what time it is. Give the following answers.
   
a. It's 8 o'clock.
   
c. It's 5 after 9.
   
e. It's 20 before 10.
   
g. It's about 2:30.
   
i. It's 4 in the afternoon.
   
k. It's 2 minutes after 10 at night.
   
b. It's 8:25.
   
d. It's 7:35.
   
f. It's a quarter to three.
   
h. It's 6:28 in the morning.
   
j. It's 7:43 in the evening.

2. Using a paper clock, practice asking and answering questions on time.

3. Using a calendar, practice asking and answering questions pertaining to dates, months and days of the week.

4. Ask **Kim Sensang** the following questions:
   
1. What time it is now.
   
2. What date it is today.
   
3. What day of the week it is today.
   
4. What year this is.
   
5. What year last year was.
   
6. What month last month was.
   
7. What month next month will be.
   
8. What year next year will be.
   
9. What month this month is.
   
10. What day tomorrow will be.
   
11. What time he starts working in the morning.
   
12. How many hours he works a day.
   
13. How long he has been in America.
   
14. How long he has taught Korean.
   
15. How many days a week he comes to school.
   
16. How many weeks the students have studied Korean.
   
17. How many months the students will be in Washington.
   
18. How many years he has lived in Washington.
5. Instructor says that he bought things at the following prices; the student repeats after the instructor with the book closed.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>W 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>W 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>W 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>W 91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>W 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>W 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>W 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>W126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>W254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>W348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>W473</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>W627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>W565</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>W758</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>W893</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>W 813</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>W1,390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>W2,917</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>W3,027</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>W4,014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>W7,878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>W3,427</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>W4,592</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>W4,760</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>W8,352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>W7,265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>W6,327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>W5,279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>W9,822</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>W6,789</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
제 7 과  시간(계속)

오셨음니까

1. 박: 제임스 선생, 언제 한국에 오셨음니까?
   이년, 두 해
   전에
   이년 전에, 두 해 전에
2. 제임스: 이년 전에 왔습니다.
   그 전
   그 전에는
   무슨 일이
3. 박: 아, 그러세요? 그 전에는 무슨 일을 했음니까?
   그 전에도
   외교관으로
4. 제임스: 그 전에도 외교관으로 있었습니다.
   이번
   처음
5. 박: 이번에 한국에 처음인가요?
   두번
   두 번째
   왔었던거야
UNIT 7. Time (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

Park

osiassimnikka
did [you] come?

1. Ceimsi Sansæng, once Hankuk e
When did you come to Korea, Mr.
osiassimnikka?
James?

tu hæ }  
i nyen} 
cen e 
i nyen}  cen e 
tu hæ }

James
two years
before; previously; ago
two years ago

(I came) two years ago.

2. I nyen cen e wassimnita.

Park

ki cen
before that; the previous time
ki cen e nin
before then
musaín il
what kind of job

(Oh, is that so?) What did you do
3. A kilæse yo? Ki cen e nin musaín
before that? ('What kind of work
il il hassimnikka?
did you do before then?')

James

before that time also
wekyokwan ilo
as a diplomat

I was in the foreign service before,
4. Ki cen e to wekyokwan ilo
too. ('I exited as a diplomat
tillsassimnita.
before that time, too.')

Park

i pen
this time
cheim
first; the first time

5. I pen i Hankuk e cheim in ka yo?
Is the [your] first time in Korea?
6. 제임스: 아니요. 이번이 두 번 째입니까. 전에도 왔었습니다.

그때
그때에
무엇하던

7. 박: 그때에는 무엇하던 왔었어요?

전 구배 오십 일 년
군대

8. 제임스: 그때는 전 구배 오십 일 넘이었습니다. 나는 그때에 군대에 있었습니다.

언제 걸
돌아 가세요

9. 박: 언제 걸 미국에 돌아 가세요?

후에
한 달 후에
떠나려고 합니다

10. 제임스: 한 달 후에 떠나려고 합니다.

무엇으로

11. 박: 무엇으로 가시겠어요?

배
배로
갈가 합니다
tu pae
 tu pae cee
 wasse ssimnitita

6. An i ci yo. I pae i tu pae cee
 imnitita. Cen e to wasse ssimnitita.

James
 twice
 the second time; for the second
time
 [I came; [I] had come

Park
 No, this is my second time. I've
been here before. ('I came before,
too.')

ki ttae
 ki ttae e
 muess hale

7. Ki ttae e nin muess hale wasse ss
yo?

Park
 that time
 at that time
 to do what?; what for?

What were you doing here then?
('What for did you come at that
time?')

James
 chenn-kupesk-osip-il nyen
 kunte

8. Ki ttae nin chenn-kupesk-osip-il
 nyen iyessimnitita. Na nin ki
 ttae e kunte e i ssimnitita.

Park
 the year 1951
 military

That was 1951. I was in the service.
('I was in the military at that
time.')

once cecim
 tola kase yo

9. once cecim Mikuk e tola kase yo?

Park
 about when
 do [you] go back?

When are [you] going back to America?

James
 hu e
 han tal hu e
 ttenalysko hamnita

10. Han tal hu e ttenalysko hamnita.

Park
 later; afterward
 one month later
 [I]’m going to leave

I'm going to leave in a month (from
now.)

muess ilo

11. Muess ilo kasikese yo?

Park
 by what means
 How are you going? ('By what means
will you go?')
12. 제임스: 이번에는 비행기 가 합니까.

하지 않
비행기

13. 박: 지난 번에 비행기로 왔어요?

합쳤습니다

14. 제임스: 예, 비행기를 탔습니다.

한국에서
미국까지
날마다
걸립니다.

15. 박: 한국에서 미국까지 (시간이) 얼마나 걸립니까?

스로 낮
설운 시간 점

16. 제임스: 배트는 대개 스로 낮 걸립니다. 그리고, 비행기는 설운 시간 점 걸립니다.
12. I pen e nin, pae lo kal kka hamnita.

13. Cinan pen e pihangki lo wasse yo?

14. Ne, pihangki lil thassimnita.

15. Hankuk esse Mikuk kkaol (sikan i) ema na kellimnikka?

### NUMERAL PHRASES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(a)</th>
<th>(b)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>한 번</td>
<td>첫 번째</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두 번</td>
<td>두 번째</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세 번</td>
<td>세 번째</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>네 번</td>
<td>네 번째</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다섯 번</td>
<td>다섯 번째</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여섯 번</td>
<td>여섯 번째</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일곱 번</td>
<td>일곱 번째</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여덟 번</td>
<td>여덟 번째</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아홉 번</td>
<td>아홉 번째</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열 번</td>
<td>열 번째</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(c)</th>
<th>(d)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>첫 번째 - 첫 번째</td>
<td>이 배 - 두 배</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두 번째</td>
<td>삼 배 - 세 배</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세 번째</td>
<td>사 배 - 네 배</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>네 번째</td>
<td>오 배 - 다섯 번</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다섯 번째</td>
<td>여섯 번 배</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여섯 번째</td>
<td>일곱 번 배</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일곱 번째</td>
<td>여덟 번 배</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아홉 번째</td>
<td>아홉 번 배</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열 번째</td>
<td>열 번 배</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NUMERAL PHRASES

(a)
han pan 'once'
tu pan 'twice'
se pan 'three times'
ne pan 'four times'
tasses pan 'five times'
yasses pan 'six times'
ilkop pan 'seven times'
yestalp pan 'eight times'
shop pan 'nine times'
yel pan 'ten times'

(b)
che(s) cœ 'first'
tu(l) cœ 'the first'
stu(l) cœ 'second'
se(s) cœ 'the second'
ne(s) cœ 'third'
tasses cœ 'the third'
yasses cœ 'fourth'
tasses cœ 'the fourth'
yasses cœ 'fifth'
tasses cœ 'the fifth'
yasses cœ 'sixth'
tasses cœ 'the sixth'
ilkop cœ 'seventh'
yestal(p) cœ 'the seventh'
yestal(p) cœ 'eighth'
yestal(p) cœ 'the eighth'
shop cœ 'ninth'
shop cœ 'the ninth'
yel cœ 'tenth'
yel cœ 'the tenth'

(c)
chælm cœ
'the first time'
chæs pan cœ
'first

tu pan
'the second'
sam pan cœ
'the second'
se pan
'the second'

se pan cœ
'the third time'

tasses cœ
'the third'
ne pan cœ
'the fourth'

ne pan cœ
'the fourth'
o pan cœ
'the fourth'
tasses pan cœ
'the fifth'
yuk pan cœ
'the fifth'
yasses pan cœ
'the sixth'

yasses pan cœ
'the sixth'
chil pan cœ
'the seventh'
ilkop pan cœ
'the seventh'

ilkop pan cœ
'the seventh'
phal pan cœ
'the eighth'
yestalp pan cœ
'the eighth'

yestalp pan cœ
'the eighth'
ku pan cœ
'the ninth'

ahop pan cœ
'the ninth'
sip pan cœ
'the ninth'

yel pan cœ
'the tenth'
yel pan cœ
'the tenth'

(d)
i pan cœ
'two times'
tu pan cœ
'twice'
mun pan cœ
'three times'

se pan
'the third'
ne pan
'the fourth'
o pan
'the fourth'
tyuk pan
'the fifth'
yasses pan
'the sixth'

chil pan
'the seventh'
ilkop pan
'the seventh'

phal pan
'the eighth'
yestalp pan
'the eighth'

ku pan
'the ninth'

ahop pan
'the ninth'
sip pan
'the ninth'
yel pan
'the tenth'

177
NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. **Can e** without preceding any time expression means 'previously' or 'before'; point in time + can e means 'before the point in time'; period of time + can e means 'period of time ago'. Compare:
   a. Kim Sensæng in can e tænnassimnita. 'Mr. Kim has left previously.'
   b. Il-wel can e tænnassimnita. 'He left before January.'
   c. Han tal can e tænnassimnita. 'He left one month ago.'

3. **Ki can e (nin)** 'before then', 'before that time', is an adverbial phrase which denotes 'the time previous to the mentioned one'.

10. **Hu e** not preceded by any time expression means 'later'; point in time + hu e means 'after + the point in time'; period of time + hu e means 'period of time later'. Compare:
   a. Hu e mammapsita. 'Let's meet later.'
   b. Han-si hu e mammapsita. 'Let's meet after 1 o'clock.'
   c. Han sikan hu e mammapsita. 'Let's meet one hour from now.'

11. **Mułlo** (by what?) refers to a means of transportation.

14. The verb stem **thæ-** is a transitive verb which means 'to ride', 'to mount', 'to get on', 'to take (vehicle)'. Compare it with **thæm-** 'to give a ride (to someone)'. The antonym of **thæ-** is **nełi-** 'to get off', 'to descend'.

15. The adverbial question phrase **olma ne** 'how long?', 'how much?', 'how?', occurs before description verbs, noun modifiers or other adverbs. The intransitive verb stem **kælî-**, preceded by a time expression means 'to take' or 'to require'. Example:

   Han sikan kælîmnnita. 'It takes an hour.'
1. Numeral Phrases

In Unit 7 we have 4 series of numeral phrases: (a) han p'an 'once, tu p'an 'twice', se p'an 'three times'...; (b) ch'ae s.e 'first' or 'the first', tu(l) s.e 'second' or 'the second', se(s) s.e 'third' or 'the third'...; (c) ch'ae or ch'e s.e s.e 'the first time' or 'first', tu p'an s.e 'the second time' or 'second'...; (d) i p'e or tu p'e 'two times' or 'twice', sam p'e or se p'e 'three times', sa p'e or ne p'e 'four times'... etc.

The numerals of series (a) occur as adverbial phrases and are used to denote the frequency of action of the subsequent inflected expressions; the numerals of series (b) occur before other nominals or by themselves and denote order within a sequence; the numerals of series (c) occur as noun or adverbial phrases and denote order within a sequence of occurrences or points of time; the numerals of series (d) occur as noun or adverbial phrases and denote multiplication in quantity, quality, size or degree of the subsequent inflected expressions. Examples are provided in drills.

2. Particle lo/ilo 'as', 'in the capacity', 'by means of'

In Unit 2 we noticed that the particle lo/ilo after a place name indicates the direction of the following inflected expression. Lo/ilo occurring after other types of nominals denotes that the nominal is a capacity or means of subject or topic of the sentence. Examples:

a. Title names + lo/ilo 'as', 'in the capacity of'
   sensang lo 'as a teacher'
   tasa lo 'as an ambassador'
   kongpokwan lo 'as an information officer'

b. Transportation names + lo/ilo 'by means of'
   ppesi lo 'by bus'
   kicha lo 'by train'
   catongcha lo 'by automobile'
   pinhengki lo 'by airplane'
   hapsing lo 'by jitney'
   concha lo 'by streetcar'
Other nominal + lo/ilo 'in', 'by', 'with'

Yange lo 'in English'
inkhi lo 'in ink'
yėmpil lo 'with pencil'
ton ilo 'with money'
hyengkim ilo 'in cash'

3. -n/in/nin ka yo?
The construction -n/in/nin ka yo? occurs only as the final form of a question sentence. This construction is a kind of informal polite speech which can be substituted for previously learned Formal or Informal Polite Speech question forms. -n/in/nin is added to a verb stem or to a verb stem plus other suffixes; -n is added to a description verb stem ending in a vowel; -in to a description verb stem ending in a consonant; -nin to an action verb stem. (For the selection of -n, -in or -nin, see the rules for the formation of present noun-modifier ending, Unit 5.) Compare:

Ce yaca ka yeppan ka yo?
Ce yaca ka yeppannikka? 'Is that woman pretty?'
Ce yaca ka yeppə yo?

4. -(i)lyəko
The verb ending -(i)lyəko is added to a verb stem or to a verb stem plus the honorific suffix -(i)sir-. Tense suffixes do not occur before the -(i)lyəko ending. The inflected form ending in -(i)lyəko (or simply the -(i)lyəko form) occurs in two constructions:

(a) -(i)lyəko + ha- 'be going to-', 'intend to-

The construction -(i)lyəko immediately followed by the verb ha- indicates that the subject or topic of the sentence intends a future action. Examples:

Hankuk e kalyəko hamnita. 'I intend to go to Korea.'
Hankuk e kalyəko hamnita. 'I'm going to go to Korea.'

Yenge lil kalichilyəko hasanmta. 'I was going to teach English.'
Yenge lil kalichilyəko hasanmta. 'I intended to teach English.'

Kim Sensæng in mel li ttaalyəko hamnikka?

Kim Sensæng in mel li ttaalyəko 'Is Mr. Kim going to leave tomorrow?'
(b) -(1)lyako + other than ha-

In the above construction, the -(1)lyako form which may be followed by a pause denotes that the following inflected expression in the same sentence occurs for the purpose of the action inflected by the -(1)lyako form. Compare this construction with the -(1)e form (Unit 6, G.N. 3). Examples:

Hankuk e kalyako, Hankuk mal il poe we yo. 'In order to go to Korea, [I] am studying Korean.'

Chak il salyako, sine chak pang e tillessimnita. '[I] stopped by a bookstore downtown to buy books.'

5. -(1)l kka ha-

In Unit 3, we had the construction -(1)l kka yo? as a sentence final question form. The construction -(1)l kka immediately followed by ha- without a pause occurs in a statement sentence and denotes the speaker's intention for future action of the verb in the -(1)l form. The English equivalent for -(1)l kka ha- is either 'be thinking of doing something' or 'intend to do something'. The tenses and/or levels of speech for the whole construction are generated in ha-. Examples:

I pan e nin po lo kal kka hamnita. 'This time, I'm thinking of going by boat.'

Nail kkaci Sool e issil kka ha yo. 'I intend to stay in Seoul until tomorrow.'

Na to ki tte et tanal kka hamnita. 'I was thinking of leaving at that time, too, but....'

Kilena....

6. Particle kkaci 'to', 'as far as', 'until', 'till', 'by'.

Kkaci occurs either after a place name or a time name:

(a) Place name + kkaci denotes the destination or goal for the following inflected expression. Examples:

Pusan kkaci kakesse yo. 'I will go as far as Pusan.'

Sool e sew Inchon kkaci olma na mele yo? 'How far is it from Seoul to Pusan?'

(b) Time name + kkaci denotes the final limit of action for the following inflected expressions.

naeil kkaci 'until tomorrow' or 'by tomorrow'
onil kkaci 'till now' or 'by now'
han-si kkaci 'by one o'clock'
7. Inflected forms and Verb Phrases

We have noticed that each inflected form of a verb is used in certain ways. For example, the verb stem ka- 'to go' is inflected in many ways by adding endings to it. So far we have had the following types of inflections built on the stem ka- 'to go'. Note that a hyphen is inserted between the stem and the ending to distinguish them:

ka-nita  ka-nin
ka-mmikka  ka-l
ka-paite  ka-lyeko
ka-sipsiyo  ka-la
ka-ci  ka-ko

Each Korean verb is inflected in numerous forms. Many of these inflected forms are followed by other inflected forms. Some may be followed by other classes of words, namely nouns or particles. Therefore, it is important to know how each inflected form is used, e.g., whether as a verbal or as a modifier of another class of words. In Unit 4, we were introduced to the inflected form to which the particle yo can be added to make Informal Polite Speech. Remember that this form is called the Infinitive. An Infinitive is, then, distinguished from other inflected forms because it is not a verb stem + a certain ending, but instead is formed by a certain morphophonemic change in the final sound of the verb stem.

There are some verbs which occur without pause one after another. For example, mula po-ta 'inquires', a-le po-ta 'finds out', tola ka-ta 'goes back', tola o-ta 'comes back', etc. In such cases, the first verb occurs always in an infinitive form while the second verb may occur in any inflected form.

Such second verb is called the Auxiliary Verb and the first verb the Principal Verb. Any compound of principal verb + auxiliary verb is a Verb Phrase. Many of the principal verbs and auxiliary verbs that occur in verb phrases also occur independently or together with other principal or auxiliary verbs in other verb phrases, but some do not. Each verb phrase is not a simple combination of the separate meanings of its two parts: it is a compound deriving its unique indivisible meaning from both its parts. For instance, a(l)- means 'know', and po- means 'see', but a-le po- means 'to find out'. Therefore, each verb phrase must be learned separately for its own unique meaning. Study the following examples:

mula po-ta  'inquires'
a-le po-ta  'finds out'
amo po-ta  'tries (eating food)'
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ipo po-ta</td>
<td>'tries on (clothes)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>na ka-ta</td>
<td>'goes out'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tile ka-ta</td>
<td>'goes in'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>olla ka-ta</td>
<td>'goes up'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tola ka-ta</td>
<td>'goes back'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>male ka-ta</td>
<td>'goes down'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>na o-ta</td>
<td>'comes out'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tile o-ta</td>
<td>'comes in'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tola o-ta</td>
<td>'comes back'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>olla o-ta</td>
<td>'comes up'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>male o-ta</td>
<td>'comes down'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>towa cu-ta</td>
<td>'gives help'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ale cu-ta</td>
<td>'recognizes (one's ability)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pillie cu-ta</td>
<td>'loans, lends'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A. Substitution Drill

1. Once Hānkuk e osiessi millka? When did you come to Korea?
2. Once Mikuk e osiessi millka? When did you come to the United States?
3. Once Seoul e osiessi millka? When did you come to Seoul?
4. Once ee samuill e osiessi millka? When did you come to my office?
5. Once yaki e osiessi millka? When did you come here?
6. Myach-si e yaki e osiessi millka? What time did you come here?
7. Muess illo yaki e osiessi millka? How (by what means) did you come here?
8. Musin il lo yaki e osiessi millka? On what business did you come here?
9. Musess hale yaki e osiessi millka? Why (to do what!) did you come here?
10. Nuku wa yaki e osiessi millka? With whom did you come here?
11. Myach-si coim yaki e osiessi millka? Around what time did you come here?

B. Substitution Drill

1. Il nyen cen e wassimminta. [I] came [here] one year ago.
2. Halu cen e wassimminta. [I] came [here] yesterday ("a day ago").
3. Han sikan cen e wassimminta. [I] came [here] one hour ago.
* 7. elma cen e wassimminta. [I] came [here] some time ago.
C. Substitution Drill

1. I nyun cen e yaki e wasse yo. I came here two years ago.
2. Ihadi cen e cip e wasse yo. I came home two days ago.
3. Tu sikan cen e samusil e wasse yo. I came to my office two hours ago.
4. I cuil cen e Seoul e wasse yo. I came to Seoul two weeks ago.
5. Tu tal cen e Mikuk e wasse yo. I came to America two months ago.
6. Yealal cen e yaki e wasse yo. I came here several days ago.
7. I-sip il cen e Pusan e wasse yo. I came to Pusan twenty days ago.
8. Tu he cen e Washington e wasse yo. I came to Washington two years ago.
9. Myeolil cen e sin e wasse yo. I came to town some days ago.

D. Substitution Drill

1. Ce nin wekyokwan ilo issimnita. I am in the foreign service. ("I exist as a diplomat.")
2. Ce nin samewong ilo issimnita. I am a teacher.
3. Ce nin hakewong ilo issimnita. I am a student.
4. Ce nin teosa lo issimnita. I am an ambassador.
5. Ce nin yangsa lo issimnita. I am a consul.
* 6. Ce nin kongpokwan ilo issimnita. I am an information officer.
* 7. Ce nin kunin ilo issimnita. I am in the military service.
* 8. Ce nin kongmuwen ilo issimnita. I am a government employee.

9. Ce nin cemwen ilo issimnita. I am a store clerk.
*10. Ce nin samuwen ilo issimnita. I am a clerk.
*11. Ce nin pisa lo issimnita. I am a secretary.
*12. Ce nin pisa lo il-hamnita. I work as a secretary.
*13. Ce yeca nin pisa lo il-hamnita. She ("that woman") works as a secretary.
E. Substitution Drill

1. I nyen cen kkacii wekyokwan ilo issessinmita.
   [I] was in the foreign service until two years ago.

2. Sahil cen kkacii sensang (ilo) issessinmita.
   [I] was a teacher until three days ago.

3. Se sikan cen kkacii haksang (ilo) issessinmita.
   [I] was a student until three hours ago.

4. Ne cuil cen kkacii kunin (ilo) issessinmita.
   [I] was in the military service until 4 weeks ago.

5. Tases tal cen kkacii tesa (lo) issessinmita.
   [I] was an ambassador until 5 months ago.

6. Sipo li cen kkacii yengeta (ilo) issessinmita.
   [I] was a consul until 15 days ago.

7. Yote km cen kkacii pisu (lo) issessinmita.
   [I] was a secretary until several years ago.

8. ome cen kkacii kongmuwen (ilo) issessinmita.
   [I] was a civil servant until some time ago.

9. Han tal cen kkacii omwun (ilo) issessinmita.
   [I] was a store clerk until one month ago.

10. Yolhil cen kkacii wekyokwan (ilo) issessinmita.
    [I] was in the foreign service until 10 days ago.

F. Substitution Drill

1. I pen i Hankuk e chalm in ka yo?
   Is this your first time in Korea?

2. I pen i Hankuk e tu pen cee in ka yo?
   Is this your second time in Korea?

3. I pen i Hankuk e se pen cee in ka yo?
   Is this your third time in Korea?

4. I pen i Hankuk e ne pen cee in ka yo?
   Is this your fourth time in Korea?

5. I pen i Hankuk e tases pen cee in ka yo?
   Is this your fifth time in Korea?

6. I pen i Hankuk e yoses pen cee in ka yo?
   Is this your sixth time in Korea?

7. I pen i Hankuk e ilkop pen cee in ka yo?
   Is this your seventh time in Korea?
8. I pen i Hankuk e yest dél pen coe
   ir. ka yo?  
   Is this your eighth time in Korea?

9. I pen i Hankuk e myoč pen coe
   ir. ka yo?  
   How many times have you been in Korea?

G. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sensæng il han pen mannassimnita.  
   [I] met Mr. Kim once.

2. Pak Sensæng il tu pen mannassimnita.  
   [I] met Mr. Pak twice.

3. I Sensæng il se pen mannassimnita.  
   [I] met Mr. Lee three times.

4. Geimæi Sensæng il tasæ pen
   manassimnita.  
   [I] met Mr. James five times.

5. Chwe Sensæng il yæle pen
   mannassimnita.  
   [I] met Mr. Choe many times.

6. Ki salam il yæle pen pwassimnita.  
   [I] saw him many times.

7. Hankuk mal il yæle pen
   kalichiasmimnita.  
   [I] taught Korean on many occasions.

8. Kil il yæle pen mule pwassimnita.  
   [I] inquired about street directions many times.

9. Ki il il yæle pen kwasimnita.  
   [I] did the work many times.

10. Han-Yeng sacen il yæle pen
    wahnwasimnita.  
    [I] wanted a K-E dictionary many times.

11. Mikuk il yæle pen tkanassimnita.  
    [I] left America many times.

*12. Cha lil yæle pen phalassimnita.  
    [I] sold cars many times.

    [I] bought many automobiles.

*14. Cunguk imilk il yæle pen
    makassimnita.  
    [I] have eaten Chinese food many times.
H. Substitution Drill

1. Ki tøø e (na nin) kunte e issësimmnita.
   At that time I was in the military.

2. Han sikan cen e (na nin) samusil e issësimmnita.
   An hour ago I was in the office.

3. Sip pun cen e (na nin) cip e issësimmnita.
   Ten minutes ago I was at home.

4. Han cuil cen e (na nin) Søul e issësimmnita.
   One week ago I was in Seoul.

5. Tu(l) tal cen e (na nin) Wasingthon e issësimmnita.
   Two months ago I was in Washington.

6. Onil achim e (na nin) Mìkuk Kongpowen e issësimmnita.
   This morning I was at USIS.

*7. ace cønyek e (na nin) yangsañ òan e issësimmnita.
   Last evening I was at the Consulate.

8. Ki nal pam e (na nin) kongwan e issësimmnita.
   That night I was in the park.

9. Ilyoil ouh e (na nin) kikcang e issësimmnita.
   Sunday afternoon I was at the theatre.

10. Ki tøø e (na nin) siktang e issësimmnita.
    At that time I was at a restaurant.

I. Substitution Drill

1. Han tal hu e ttenalyëko hamnita.
   I'm going to leave one month from now.

2. Han cuil hu e ttenalyëko hamnita.
   I'm going to leave one week from now.

3. Il nyøn hu e ttenalyëko hamnita.
   I'm going to leave one year from now.

4. Han sikan hu e ttenalyëko hamnita.
   I'm going to leave in an hour.

5. Il pun hu e ttenalyëko hamnita.
   I'm going to leave in a minute.

6. I pun hu e ttenalyëko hamnita.
   I'm going to leave in two minutes.

*7. I sam pun hu e ttenalyëko hamnita.
   I'm going to leave in two or three minutes.

*8. I sam il hu e ttenalyëko hamnita.
   I'm going to leave in two or three days.

*9. Sam sa il hu e ttenalyëko hamnita.
   I'm going to leave in three or four days.

188
*10. Sa o il hu e tt³nalyoko hamnita. I'm going to leave in four or five days.

*11. I san cuil hu e tt³nalyoko hamnita. I'm going to leave in two or three weeks.

J. Substitution Drill

1. Pih³mγki lo kal kka hamnita. I'm thinking of going by airplane.
2. Poe lo kal kka hamnita. I'm thinking of going by ship.
3. Poe: lo kal kka hamnita. I'm thinking of going by bus.
4. Cha :lo kal kka hamnita. I'm thinking of going by car.
5. Theksai lo kal kka hamnita. I'm thinking of going by taxi.
6. Kica lo kal kka hamnita. I'm thinking of going by train.
7. Catongcha lo kal kka hamnita. I'm thinking of going by automobile.
8. Cancha lo kal kka hamnita. I'm thinking of going by streetcar.
9. Hapsing ilo kal kka hamnita. I'm thinking of going by jitney.

K. Substitution Drill

1. Pih³mγki lo Seoul e kakessimnikka? Will you go to Seoul by airplane?
2. Poe: lo Inchon e kakessimnikka? Will you go to Inchon by bus?
3. Cha lo Pusan e kakessimnikka? Will you go to Pusan by car?
4. Poe lo Ilpon e kakessimnikka? Will you go to Japan by ship?
5. Pih³mγki lo Mikuk e kakessimnikka? Will you go to America by airplane?
6. Kica lo Nyuyok e kakessimnikka? Will you go to New York by train?
7. Catongcha lo sinwe e kakessimnikka? Will you go to downtown by automobile?
8. Cancha lo sicang e kakessimnikka? Will you go to the market place by streetcar?

L. Substitution Drill

1. Hankuk ese Mikuk kkaci ølma na køllimnikka? How long does it take to go to America from Korea?
2. Seoul ese Inchon kkaci ølma na køllimnikka? How long does it take to go to Inchon from Seoul?
3. Hakkyo ese cip kkaci ølma na køllimnikka? How long does it take from school to your house?
4. Sine ese cangkeang kkaci alma na kellmnikka?

5. Tesakwan ese Mikuk Kongpowen kkaci alma na kellmnikka?

6. Cip ese sichang kkaci alma na kellmnikka?

7. Samusal ese siktang kkaci alma na kellmnikka?

8. Yeki ese kikcang kkaci alma na kellmnikka?

9. Uphyenkuk ese tapang kkaci alma na kellmnikka?

10. Yeki ese Mikuk kkaci alma na kellmnikka?

How long does it take from downtown to the station?

How long does it take from the Embassy to USIS?

How long does it take from your house to the City Hall?

How long does it take from your office to the restaurant?

How long does it take from here to the theatre?

How long does it take from the post office to the tearoom?

How long does it take from here to America.

M. Substitution Drill

1. Yeki ese Mikuk kkaci alma (na) kellmnikka?

How long does it take to go from here to America?

2. Yeki ese Mikuk kkaci myschil (ina) kellmnikka?

How many days does it take to go from here to America?

3. Yeki ese Mikuk kkaci mysch tal (ina) kellmnikka?

How many months does it take to go from here to America.

4. Yeki ese Mikuk kkaci mysch cuil (ina) kellmnikka?

How many weeks does it take to go from here to America?

5. Yeki ese Mikuk kkaci mysch sikan (ina) kellmnikka?

How many hours does it take to go from here to America?

6. Yeki ese Mikuk kkaci mysch pun (ina) kellmnikka?

How many minutes does it take to go from here to America?

7. Yeki ese Mikuk kkaci alma (na) kellmnikka?

How long does it take to go from here to America?
N. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 4)

Tutor: Na nin pihaengki lo kakessimnita.
Student: Na to pihaengki lo kalysëko hë yo.

I'll go by airplane.
'I'm also planning to go by airplane.'

1. Na nin naëll tola kakessimnita.
   Na to naëll tola kalysëko hë yo.
2. Na nin pëe lil thakessimnita.
   Na to pëe lil thalyëko hë yo.
3. Na nin i sam il hu e ttënakessimnita.
   Na to i sam il hu e ttenalyëko hë yo.
4. Na nin Mikuk yangpok il sakessimnita.
   Na to Mikuk yangpok il salyëko hë yo.
5. Na nin han cuil tongan Sœul e isskessimnita.
   Na to han cuil tongan Sœul e issilyëko hë yo.
6. Na nin taim tal e tto okessimnita.
   Na to taim tal e tto olyëko hë yo.
7. Na nin chinku lil mannakessimnita.
   Na to chinku lil mannalyëko hë yo.
8. Na nin hyuka lil patkessimnita.
   Na to hyuka lil patilyëko hë yo.
   Na to cha lil phallyëko hë yo.
10. Na nin tapang e tillikessimnita.
    Na to tapang e tillilyëko hë yo.
11. Na nin Ilyoil e swikessimnita.
    Na to Ilyoil e swilyëko hë yo.

0. Response Drill

Tutor: Pihaengki lo kakesse yo?
Student: Ne, pihaengki lo kalysëko hamnita.

Will you go by airplane?
'Yes, I'm planning (to go) by airplane.'

1. Naëll tola kakesse yo?
   Ne, naëll tola kalysëko hamnita.
2. Pëe lil thakesse yo?
   Ne, pëe lil thalyëko hamnita.
3. I sam il hu e ttënakesse yo?
   Ne, i sam il hu e ttenalyëko hamnita.
4. Han tal tongan Sœul e isskesse yo?
   Ne, han tal tongan (Sœul e) issilyëko hamnita.
5. Taim tal e tto okesse yo?
   Ne, taim tal e tto olyëko hamnita.
6. Hyuka lil patkesse yo?
   Ne, hyuka lil patilyëko hamnita.
7. Cha lil phalkesse yo?
   Ne, phallyëko hamnita.
8. Tapang e tillikesse yo?
   Ne, tillilyëko hamnita.
9. Ilyoil e swikesse yo?
   Ne, swilyëko hamnita.
10. Cungkuk mal kongpu lil sicakhakesse yo?
    Ne, sicakhalyëko hamnita.
UNIT 7

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

P. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 5)

Tutor: Han tal hu e ttənalyəko hase yo?

Student: Ne, han tal hu e ttənal kka hamnita.

1. I pən e nın pihəŋki lil thalyəko hase yo?

2. Ce kənmul apə e nəliləyəko hase yo?

3. Nənyən e Wəsəngən e tola əlyəko hase yo?

4. Onil ceŋək e sinə e na kaləyo hase yo?

5. Han tal hu e tola kaləyo hase yo?

6. Sichəŋ ešə aļə poləko hase yo?

7. Təm cuil e huuka ələ pati lýəko hase yo?

8. Sənsəŋ iŋ catəngcha ələ phələko hase yo?

'Are you going to leave in a month?'

'Yes, I'm thinking of leaving in a month.'

Ne, (i pən e nın) pihəŋki lil thal kka hamnita.

Ne, ce kənmul apə e nəlil kka hamnita.

Ne, nənyən e (Wəsəngən e) tola ol kka hamnita.

Ne, (onil ceŋək e sinə e) na kal kka hamnita.

Ne, han tal hu e tola kal kka hamnita.

Ne, sichəŋ ešə aļə pol kka hamnita.

Ne, təm cuil e huuka ələ pati kka hamnita.

Ne, (ce nın catəngcha ələ) phəl kka hamnita.

Q. Response Drill

Tutor: Muəs əl sakesə yo? /kutə/

Student: Kutə əl salyəko hamnita.

1. ānə səcə-hakesə yo? /han cuil hu e/

2. Nuku əl mənəkəssə yo? /Hankuk salam chinku/

3. ānə kəkəc ki əl əl kəkə-thəkəssə yo? /təm cuil/

4. əlnə e sənsəŋ cha ələ phəkəssə yo? /sam-mən Wən/

5. Muəs 1əo Hankuk e kakesə yo? /pihəŋki/

'What are you going to buy?'/shoes/

'I'm planning to buy shoes.'

Han cuil hu e səcə-halyəko hamnita.

Hankuk salam chinku əl mənəkəssə hamnita.

Təm cuil kəkəc kəkə-thəkəssə hamnita.

Sam-mən Wən e phələko hamnita.

Pihəŋki əl kalyəko hamnita.
6. eni tal e hyuka lil patkesse yo?  /phal-wel/

7. elma tongan Mikuk ese cinokkesse yo?  /i nyen ccim/

8. Taim pen e eni mal il pœnikkesse yo? /swiwn mal/

Phal-wel e patlyeoko hamnita.

I nyen ccim Mikuk ese cinalyeoko hamnita.

('I'm going to spend about two years in America.')

Swiwn mal il pœnalyeoko hamnita.

R. Grammar Drill (Change -(1)mnikka? to -(n/in/nin) ka yo? based on Grammar Note 3.)

Tutor: Hankuk e chœam imnikka?
Student: Hankuk e chœam in ka yo?

1. Kim Sœnsœng il asimnikka?
2. Ceœmsi Sœnsœng i Hankuk mal il
   ilkœinikka?
3. sonce Mikuk e tola kœinikka?
4. Han tal hu e ttœanmnikka?
5. Pœ lil thœinmnikka?
6. Mikuk kkœi alma na kœillœinikka?
7. Hakkyo ka memnikka?
8. ce yœca nin Mikuk salam imnikka?
9. Hankuk mal i philyo-hamnikka?
10. Sœnsœng in mom i apœinnikka?
11. Cungkuk mal i swipsimnikka?
12. Ka kilim i alimtapimnikka?
13. Mikuk yœca ka yeppimnikka?

'Is [this your] first time in Korea?'
'Is [this your] first time in Korea?'

Kim Sœnsœng il asinœn ka yo?
Ceœmsi Sœnsœng i Hankuk mal il
ilkœin ka yo?
sonce Mikuk e tola kaœinœn ka yo?
Han tal hu e ttœanœn ka yo?
Pœ lil thœasœn ka yo?
Mikuk kkœi alma na kœilœinœn ka yo?
Hakkyo ka œen ka yo?
Ce yœca nin Mikuk salœn in ka yo?
Hankuk mal i philyœo–han ka yo?
Sœnsœng in mom i apœin ka yo?
Cungkuk mal i swiœn ka yo?
Ki kilim i alimœœn ka yo?
Mikuk yœca ka yeppœn ka yo?
UNIT 7

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

S. Response Drill

Tutor: Hankuk e chaim in ka yo?
/ne/
Student: Ne, chaim iye yo.

1. Kim Sŏnsaeng il asinin ka yo? /aniyo/
2. Ceimsi Sŏnsaeng i Hankuk mal il ilknin ka yo? /ne/
3. eonce Mikuk e tola kasinin ka yo? /talm hae/
4. Han tal hu e Seul il ttənɛnɛn ka yo? /aniyo/
5. P̄e lîl thanin ka yo? /ne/
6. Mikuk kkaci sahîl kəllinin ka yo? /ne/
7. Hakkyo ka kakkaun ka yo? /aniyo/
8. C̄e yeqa nin Hankuk salam in ka yo? /ne/
9. Ilpon mal to əlyequn ka yo? /aniyo/
10. Tangsin ɨn mom i aphɛn ka yo? /ne/
11. Cungkuk mal i swiun ka yo? /aniyo/
12. I kilim ɨ aлимtaun ka yo? /ne/

'Is [this your] first time in Korea? /yes/

'Yes, [this] is [my] first time [in Korea].'

Aniyo, mollə ya.

Ne, ilkə yo.

Talim hæ e tola ka yo.

Aniyo, (han tal hu e) ttənɛnɛn anh yo.

Ne, p̄e lîl tha yo.

Ne, sahîl kəlliyə yo.

Aniyo, kakkapçi anhə yo.

Ne, Hankuk salam iye yo.

Aniyo, əlyeqçi anhə yo.

Ne, (mom i) apʰə yo.

Aniyo, swipçi anhə yo.

Ne, (ki kilim ɨ) aлимtawe yo.

T. Response Drill

Tutor: Mues ilo hakkyo e wassimmikka? /catongcha/

Student: Catongcha lo wassimmnita.

1. eonce Hankuk e wassimmikka? /-chan-ku-pək-yuk-sip nyən/
2. Sŏnsaeng in əti ese il-hasimmikka? /Mikuk Kongpown/
3. Mikuk Tasaikwaen e mues ilo issimmikka? /yəngsa/

'How did you come to school?' /car/

'I came by car.'

Chon-ku-pək-yu-sip nyən e wassimmnita.

Mikuk Kongpown ese il-hamnita.

Yəngsa lo issimmnita.
4. Cip ese samusil kkaci ìlama na kellimnikka? /1-sip-o pun/
   I-sip-o pun kellimnita.
5. Han cuil e myêchil tongan il-haci yo? /tasse/
   Tasse tongan il-hamnita.
6. Halu e myêch sikan kongpu-haci yo? /yess sikan/
   Yess sikan kongpu-hamnita.
7. ìlama tongan Hankuk mal il pêwessci yo? /tu tal/
   Tu tal tongan pêwessimnita.
8. Muês ilo yêki e wassimnikka? /pihængki/
   Pihængki lo wassimnita.

U. Response Exercise (Answer the questions in Informal Polite speech based on the fact.)
1. Ænce Hankuk e wassë yo?
2. Muês ilo wassë yo?
3. Cikim ëti ese il-hase yo?
4. Keki ese muês ilo issise yo?
5. ìlama tongan këki ese il-hassë yo?
6. Musir il il hase yo?
7. Achna e muês ilo il-hale ose yo?
8. Catongcha lo sikan i ìlama na këllë yo?
9. Myêch-si e cip e kase yo?
10. Hankuk mal myêch tal tongan pêwessë yo?
11. Halu e myêch sikan kongpu-haci yo?
12. Hakkyo ese sensæng cip kkaci pësa lo ìlama na kellici yo?
EXERCISES

1. Tell the following story to Mr. Park once in Formal Polite and once in Informal Polite Speech.

You came to Korea two years ago. This is not your first time but second time in Korea. The first time was in 1951. At that time, you were in the military service. This time you have been here as a foreign service officer. Now, you’re going to go back to America in one month. Last time you flew to Korea but you intend to go by boat this time. It usually takes 10 to 18 days (to go) to America by boat, and about 23 hours by plane.

2. Find out the following information from Mr. James (or Mr. Park)

   a. When he came to Korea (or to America.)
   b. How ('by what means of transportation') he came.
   c. Where he is working.
   d. In what capacity he works there.
   e. How long he has been there.
   f. What kind of work he does.
   g. By what means he goes to work in the morning.
   h. How long it takes.
   i. How far it is from his house to the office.
   j. What time he usually goes home.
   k. How many hours a day he works.
   l. How many days it takes to go to America (or Korea) by boat.
   m. How many years he’s going to live in Seoul (or Washington.)
   n. How many weeks he has studied Korean.
   o. What time he usually leaves home in the morning.

3. Using maps and/or a geometrical globe, practice asking and answering questions on how long it takes from one given geographical point to another by a given mode of transportation. The geographical points may include two place names within a city or building as well as countries.
4. Tell Mr. Park that:
   a. You have been to Korea several times.
   b. This is your third time in Seoul.
   c. Today is the fourth day of the week.
   d. Korean is your second foreign language.
   e. This week is your fifth week in Korean studies.
   f. Seoul is three times larger than Pusan.
   g. You were in the military service 8 years ago.
   h. Mr. Brown was an ambassador until three months ago.
   i. You are going to leave for America three weeks from now.
   j. You stayed in South Korea for five days.
   k. You came to work by streetcar this morning.
제 8 과

일에 관해서

(대화 A)

1. 이: 선생은 오세요 부柬埔寨 (을 ) 하세요?
   네.
   난마타.
   왕고에 다닙니다.

2. 제임스: 난마타 왕고에 다닙니다.
   부柬埔寨 (을 ) 배우러.

3. 이: 부柬埔寨 (을 ) 배우러 (왕고에) 다닙시요?
   배우리고.

4. 제임스: 한국 말씀 배우리고 다닙니다.
   배우 기.
   삐습니까.

5. 이: 한국 말씀 배우 기 삐습니까?
   그리.
   재미.
   재미 있습니까.

6. 제임스: 아니요, 그리 삐지 않습니다. 그러나.
   재미 있습니까.
UNIT 8. Talking About One's Work
BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

Lee
1. Sannong in yose mue (il) hase yo? What are you doing these days?

nal
day
nal mata
everyday
hakkyo e tanimnita [I'm attending school
2. Nal mata hakkyo e tanimnita. I go to school everyday.

Lee
mues (il) paeule ('to learn what!); ('what to
3. Mues (il) paeule (hakkyo) tanise learn?')
yo? What are you studying? ('What to

Lee
paeulyako
4. Hankuk mal il paeulyako tanimnita. I'm studying Korean. ('I'm attending

James
paeuki
in order to learn
swipsimnikka I'm studying Korean. ('I'm attending
5. Hankuk mal (il) paeuki swipsimnikka? in order to learn Korean.

Lee
learning; to learn
is it easy?

Kilni
Is Korean easy? ('Is it easy to

James
so; in such a way; not so

kemi fun
[It]'s interesting ('there's

kemi issimnita
fun')
6. Aniyo, kilni swipci ahnsimnita. No, it's not very easy. But it's
Kilena, kemi issimnita.

interesting.
7. 이: 선생은 독일말을 학세요?

조금
(말) 할 수 있습니까
읽지 못 합니다

8. 제임스: 예, 조금 (말) 할 수 있습니다. 그러나, 읽지 못 합니다.

더
어렵습니까?

9. 이: 독일말과 한국말은 어느 많이 배우기 (가)
더 어렵습니까?

독일말보다

10. 제임스: 한국 많이 독일말보다 더 어렵습니다.

(대화 B)

오랫간입니까

이즘

제미가 어렵습니까?

11. 김: 오랫간입니까. 이즘 일이 제미가
어렵습니까?

더분에

12. 제임스: 더분에 제미 있습니까. 선생은 어디세요?

분주 합니다

13. 김: 저는 요즘 좀 분주 합니다.
Lee
7.センス tong in Tokil mal il hase yo?
Do you speak German?

James
 kokim
 (mal-)hal su issimnita
 I(1)kci mot hamnita
a little
[I] can speak
[I] cannot read
Yes, I can speak [it] a little. I can't read [it], though.

Lee
 te
 elyepsimnikka
more
is [it] difficult?
Which (language) is more difficult to learn, German or Korean?

Tokil mal pota
9. Tokil mal kwa Hankuk mal in eni
mal i peshi (ka) te elyepsimnikka?
than German
Korean is more difficult than German.

10. Hankuk mal in Tokil mal pota
    te elyepsimnita.

Dialogue B

Kim
 ole\ø\ø kan man imnita
 long time no see
 icim
 these days
 cæmikæ ettehsimnikka
 (I'm how fun?!) 

I haven't seen you for some time.
How is your job coming along (these days)? ('How is fun at work these days?)

James
 
 tekpun e
11. Ole\ø\ø kan man imnita. Icim il e
('at your favor')
cæmikæ ettehsimnikka?
I'm doing fine, thank you. And how about you?
그런데
근무
근무 하십니까

14. 실제로  그린데, 요새는 어떤 근무 하십니까?

전에
말하지 않았습니다
회사

15. 김 : 아, 제가 전에 말씀하지 않았습니까? 지금 반도 회사에 근무 합니다.

주로

16. 실제로  무슨 일을 주로 하세요?

보통
사무
사무를 봅니다

17. 김 : 보통 사무를 봅니다.

오래
오래 동안

18. 실제로  아, 그러세요? 그 회사에서 오래 동안 일했습니까?

한 삽 년
되셨습니다

19. 김 : 한 삽 년 되셨습니다.
punchuhamnita

Kim

[I]’m busy; [I]’m hectic
I’m a little busy these days.

James

by the way
(‘working!’)
do [you] work?

Where do you work (these days), by the way?

Kilên te
kinmu
kinmu-hasimmikka

14. Kilên te, yose nín ète kinmu-hasimmikka?

Kím

previously
didn’t [I] say?

company; business firm

Oh, didn’t I tell you before? I
work at the Bando Company (now).

cen e
mal-haci anhessimmikka
hwesa

15. A, cen e mal-haci
annessimmikka? Cíkim Panto
hwesa e kinmu-hamnita.

Kím

mainly; mostly

What kind of work do you do mainly?

culo

16. Musin il il culo hase yo?

James

What kind of work do you do mainly?

pothong
samu
samu lil pomnita

17. Pothong samu lil pomnita.

Kím

ordinary; ordinarily
office work
[I] do office work

I do ordinary office work.

ole
ole tongan

18. A, kilose yo? Ki hwesa ese ole
tongan il-hessimmikka?

James

a long time
for a long time

Is that so? Have you worked there
(‘at that company’) for a long
time?

Kím

about 3 years; approximately
3 years

[It] has been; [it] became
I’ve been there for about three years.
NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. The verb tani- denotes the action of 'going and coming regularly'. Examples:
   Na min hakkyo e taninnita.  (I am attending school.)
   Ppeol ka taninnita.  ('Buses are running.')

4. Poelyako and pëule mean the same. Their use is determined by environment:
   poelyako occurs before ha- and most other verbs, while pëule occurs before
   only a few verbs (usually ka-, or-, and tani-). (See Grammar Note 3 of Unit
   6 and Grammar Note 4 of Unit 7.)

6. Coem iss-ta 'is interesting' is a usage which literally means 'fun exists'
   or 'there is fun'. Coem (ka) issinnita which may precede a subject or a
   topic occurs as an intransitive expression with or without the particle ka
   after coem. Examples:
   Hakkyo ka coem (ka) issinnita.  ('I enjoy school.' ('School is
   interesting.'))
   I cheok i coem (ka) issinnnitka?  ('Is this book interesting?')

8. The negative equivalent of Hal su issinnita. 'is able to do' is Hal su
   eissinnita. 'is unable to do'. Haci mot hamnita '[I] cannot do' is a substitute
   for Hal su eissinnita. (See Grammar Note 3.)

11. Olaen man imnita. ('It's only a long time.') is a standard expression used
    under the same circumstances as its English equivalent, 'I haven't seen you
    for some time.' or 'Long time no see.'

14. Place name + e + kinmu-ha-ta and place name + esse + il-ha-ta both mean
    'works at + place name'. Note that the verb kinmu-ha- takes the particle e
    when preceded by a place name while the verb il-ha- takes the particle esse
    when preceded by a place name.

17. Pothong is used either as a sentence adverb or as a noun, or as a deter-
    minative. When pothong is a free noun it means 'usual thing'; as deter-
    minative it means 'usual', 'average', 'ordinary'; as an adverb, is means
    'usually', 'ordinarily', 'generally'. Compare:
Korean Basic Course

Ki kəs i pothong imnita. 'That's common. ('That is the usual thing.)'
Ki pun in pothong salam imnita. 'He is an average person.'
Pothong, achi məkəi anhsɨmɨnita. 'He is an ordinary man.'
'Generally, [I] don't eat breakfast.'

18. Ole 'a long time' and ole tongan 'for a long time' both occur either as a nominal or as an adverbial.

19. Han 'about' occurs before numerals and is a determinative which denotes approximation of the following numeral expressions. Compare han with colm which occurs always after numeral expressions (Unit 6). The verb stem twɛ- is an intransitive verb which after a title name means 'to become' and after a period of time deontes elapsing.

Samu is a noun which means 'office work'; pothong samu 'general clerical office work'. Smau (l11) po-ta which literally means 'looks at office work' is an fixed usage, meaning 'does office work'.

Grammar Notes

1. -ki

The verb ending -ki is added to a verb stem, or to a verb stem plus other suffixes. An inflected form ending in -ki occurs only in the positions where nominals occur (e.g., in the positions of emphasized subject, topic or object). Since this form occupies only in nominal positions, we shall call it Nominalized Verb or simply the ki form, and the -ki ending Nominalizing Verb-Ending. Note that the ki form occurs mostly before description verbs and rarely before action verbs. Examples:

Hankuk mal (l1) pəwuki (ka) cəmɨ issɨmɨnita. 'Learning Korean is interesting.'
Yæŋge (l11) kəlihtik (ka) əlyəpsɨmɨnɨkka? 'Is teaching English difficult?'
Nal i coxki (l11) palamɨnita. 'I hope that the weather is nice.'
Hankuk mal (l1) kəngpu-haki (l11) wənhamɨnita. 'I want to study Korean.'
2. Particle mata

Mata 'every', 'each' occurs after a period of time or the name of an object, and means either 'each' or 'every'. A nominal + mata is used as an adverbial phrase. Examples:

Ully nin sikan mata suep i issé yo. 'We have class every hour.'
Welyoil mata pi ka omni ta. 'It rains every Monday.'
Hae mata Nyuyok e kaci yo? 'You go to New York every year, don't you?'
Salam mata ilim i talimnita. 'Each man has a different name.'
Hakkyo mata Yenge lir kalichimi nita. 'All the schools teach English.'
('Each school teaches English.')

3. -(1)i su iss- 'can' vs. -(1)i su espa- 'cannot'

The construction -(1)i su iss- ('[There] is a way to do.') is the Korean equivalent of English 'can' or 'is able to'. The verb stem to which -(1)i is added is the equivalent of the English verb which occurs after either can or be able to. Tenses, levels and/or styles of speech are generated in the verb iss-.

Compare:

Kal su issimnita. 'I can go.'
Kal su issessimnita. 'I could go.'
Kal su issessessim nita. 'I could go.'
Kal su issesë yo. 'I will be able to go.'
Kal su issë yo. 'I can go.'
Kal su issesë yo. 'I could go.'

The negative equivalent of -(1)i su iss- is either -(1)i su espa- or -ci mot ha-. Compare:

Kal su espa lm nita. 'I cannot go.'
Kaci mot hamnita. 'I cannot go.'

Note that mot 'cannot' is an adverb which occurs in the following two constructions (a) and (b) which are the same in meaning:

(a) mot + an inflected expression:
Mot without pause before an inflected expression is used to denote either 'inability' or 'impossibility' of an action or description of the subject or topic in the sentence for the following expression.

(b) -(1)i + mot + ha-

The ci form of an action verb plus mot followed by ha- is used to denote either 'inability' or 'impossibility' of an action of the subject or
topic in the sentence for the verb preceding mot. Compare:

1. Ce nín mot kamnita.  
   Ce nín kaci mot hamnita.  
   'I cannot go.'

2. Ce nín Hankil il mot ilkci yo.  
   Ce nín Hankil il ilkci mot  
   hæ yo.  
   'I cannot read Hankil.'

   Kim Sensæng i ocì mot  
   hæssimnita.  
   'Mr. Kim couldn't come.'

In either of the above two constructions, tenses and levels of speech are generated in the verb which occurs immediately after mot. Compare mot with the adverb an which is used before an inflected expression to denote simple negation of the following expression (See Unit 3). Note that the construction, the -ci form of a description verb + mot ha-, is synonymous with either -ci anh- or an + a description verb. We will learn more about this in further units.

4. Particle pota 'than', 'more than'

Pota follows a nominal $X$ with which another nominal, $Y$, is being compared. Nominal $Y$ may be followed by a description verb which may be preceded by te 'more'. Examples:

Tokile pota Hankuke ka te alypsimnita.  
Hankuke ka Tokile pota te alypsimnita.  
‘Korean is more difficult than German.’

I chæk pota te ssan chæk in epsimnita.  
‘We don’t have a cheaper book than this (book).’

æce pota onil il te cohahamnita.  
Onil il æce pota te cohahamnita.  
‘[I] like today better than yesterday.’
A. Substitution Drill

1. Cẹ nin nal mata hakkyo e kamnita.  I go to school every day.
2. Cẹ nin Wallyoil mata hakkyo e kamnita.  I go to school every Monday.
3. Cẹ nin achim mata hakkyo e kamnita.  I go to school every morning.
4. Cẹ nin cenyok mata hakkyo e kamnita.  I go to school every evening.
5. Cẹ nin tal mata hakkyo e kamnita.  I go to school every month.
6. Cẹ nin cuil mata hakkyo e kamnita.  I go to school every week.
7. Cẹ nin ba mata hakkyo e kamnita.  I go to school every year.
8. Cẹ nin sikan mata hakkyo e kamnita.  I go to school every hour.
9. Cẹ nin pan mata hakkyo e kamnita.  I go to school every night.

B. Substitution Drill

1. Na nin nal mata hakkyo e kamnita.  I go to school everyday.
2. Na nin cuil mata Seoul e kamnita.  I go to Seoul every week.
3. Na nin Ilyoil mata tapang e kamnita.  I go to a tearoom every Sunday.
4. Na nin pan mata siktang e kamnita.  I go to a restaurant every night.
5. Na nin cenyok mata kikcang e kamnita.  I go to the theatre every evening.
6. Na nin achim mata samusil e kamnita.  I go to the office every morning.
7. Na nin Thoyoil mata sicang e kamnita.  I go to the market place every Saturday.
8. Na nin sikan mata kyosil e kamnita.  I go to the classroom every hour.
9. Na nin tal mata inhwang e kamnita.  I go to the bank every month.
C. Substitution Drill

1. Salam mata Yenge lil pæulyëko hannita.
   Everybody intends to learn English.

2. Salam mata Yenge lil kalichilyëko hannita.
   Everybody intends to teach English.

3. Salam mata Yenge lil alyëko hannita.
   Everybody intends to know English.

4. Salam mata Yenge lil mal-halyëko hannita.
   Everybody intends to speak English.

5. Salam mata Yenge lil ilkilyëko hannita.
   Everybody intends to read English.

6. Salam mata Yenge lil asilyëko hannita.
   Everybody intends to write English.

7. Salam mata Yenge lil kongpu-halyëko hannita.
   Everybody intends to study English.

8. Salam mata Yenge lil mal-hal su issimnita.
   Everybody can speak English.

   Not everybody speaks English.

10. Salam mata Yenge lil kalichil su episimnita.
    Not everybody can teach English.

11. Salam mata Yenge lil kalichic1 mot hannita.
    Not everybody can teach English.

D. Substitution Drill

1. Salam mata Yenge lil pæumnita.
   Everybody learns English.

2. Hakkyo mata Yenge il kalichimnita.
   All the schools teach English.

3. Sængæng mata Yenge lil amnita.
   All the teachers know English.

4. Haksæng mata Yenge lil kongpu-hannita.
   Each student studies English.

5. Tæwa mata Yenge lil cal hamnita.
   Every ambassador speaks good English.

6. Wækyokwan mata Yenge lil ilksimnita.
   Everyone in the foreign service reads English.

7. Aï mata Yenge lil pæulyëko hannita.
   Every child intends to learn English.
8. Sŏnŭng mařa Yŏnge lɪl (maľ-)hal su issimniţa.
   All the teachers can speak English.
   Not every teacher can speak English.
10. Sŏnŭng mařa Yŏnge lɪl kalichil su ēpsimniţa.
    Not every teacher can teach English.
11. Sŏnŭng mařa Yŏnge lɪl kongpu-haci anhsiimniţa.
    Not every teacher studies English.

E. Substitution Drill

1. Hankuk maľ pæuki swipsimniţka?
   Is learning Korean easy?
2. Hankuk maľ kalichiki swipsimniţka?
   Is teaching Korean easy?
3. Hankuk maľ (maľ-)haki swipsimniţka?
   Is speaking Korean easy?
4. Hankuk maľ ḳ(1)kki swipsimniţka?
   Is reading Korean easy?
5. Hankuk maľ sêki swipsimniţka?
   Is writing Korean easy?
6. Hankuk maľ kongpu-haki swipsimniţka?
   Is studying Korean easy?
7. Hankuk maľ kongpu-haki ēlypsimniţka?
   Is studying Korean difficult?
8. Hankuk maľ kongpu-haki caam1 issimniţka?
   Is studying Korean interesting?
9. Hankuk maľ kongpu-haki kwænchanhsiimniţka?
   Is studying Korean all right?
10. Hankuk maľ kongpu-haki cohhahsiimniţka?
    Do you like studying Korean?
11. Hankuk maľ kongpu-haki consimniţka?
    Is learning Korean, O.K.?
12. Hankuk maľ kongpu-haki ettohsiimniţka?
    How do you like studying Korean?
F. Substitution Drill

1. Cе nин Panto Hwesa e kinmu-hanmita.
   I work
   I am employed
   at Bando Company.

2. Cе nин Mikuk Tewakwan e kinmu-hamnitа.
   I work at the US Embassy.

3. Cе nин Seoul Sichang e kinmu-hanmitа.
   I work at Seoul City Hall.

4. Cе nин Hankuk inhæng e kinmu-hanmitа.
   I work at the Bank of Korea.

5. Cе nин Pusan Uphyænkuк e kinmu-hanmitа.
   I work at the Pusan Post Office.

6. Cе nин Panto Hotel e kinmu-hanmitа.
   I work at the Bando Hotel.

7. Cе nин Mikuk Cangpu e kinmu-hanmitа.
   I work for the US Government.

8. Cе nин sine sangoam e kinmu-hanmitа.
   I work at a store downtown.

   I work at Seoul Department Store.

G. Substitution Drill

1. Il i cæmi issimmittа.
   [My] work is interesting.

2. Hakkyo ka cæmi issimmittа.
   School is interesting.
   I enjoy school.

   Studying is interesting.
   I enjoy studying.

4. Chawk i cæmi issimmittа.
   This book is interesting.

5. Hankuk mal i cæmi issimmittа.
   Korean is interesting.

6. Cе salam i cæmi issimmittа.
   He ('that man') is interesting.

   I enjoy working. ('It's interesting to
to work. !')
   Working is interesting.

   I enjoy studying.

9. Chawk i (1)kk1 ka cæmi issimmittа.
   I enjoy reading books.
   Reading books is interesting.

*10. Munce ka cæmi issimmittа.
   The problem is interesting.
UNIT 8

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

H. Substitution Drill

1. Yøngë lil com (mal-)hal su issimnita. I can speak a little English.
2. Wekuke lil com (mal-)hal su issimnita. I can speak foreign languages a little.
*3. Cungkuke lil com (mal-)hal su issimnita. I can speak a little Chinese.
*4. Tokile lil com (mal-)hal su issimnita. I can speak a little German.
*5. Ilpone lil com (mal-)hal su issimnita. I can speak a little Japanese.
*6. Pullanse lil com (mal-)hal su issimnita. I can speak a little French.
*7. Saolyene lil com (mal-)hal su issimnita. I can speak a little Russian.
*8. Ithwëli lil com (mal-)hal su issimnita. I can speak a little Italian.
*9. Sepanæ lil com (mal-)hal su issimnita. I can speak a little Spanish.

I. Substitution Drill

1. Co nin Yøngë lil ssici mot hamnita. I can't write in English.
2. Co nin ilim il ssici mot hamnita. I can't write [my] name.
3. Co nin Hankil il ssici mot hamita. I can't write Hankul.
4. Co nin Tokile lil ssici mot hamnita. I can't write in German.
5. Co nin Pullanse lil ssici mot hamnita. I can't write in French.
6. Co nin Saolyene lil ssici mot hamnita. I can't write in Russian.
7. Co nin Ithwëli lil ssici mot hamnita. I can't write in Italian.
8. Co nin Hankuke lil ssici mot hamnita. I can't write in Korean.
9. Co nin Hakuke lil ilkci mot hamnita. I can't read in Korean.
10. Се нин Hankuke lîl mal-bacî mot hannita.
I can't speak Korean.

11. Се нин Hankuke lîl peaci mot hannita.
I can't learn Korean.

12. Се нин Hankuke lîl kalichulî mot hannita.
I can't teach Korean.

*13. Се нин Hankuke lîl alcî mot hannita.
I don't know Korean. ('I can't know Korean.')

*14. Се нин Hankuke lîl sâci mot hannita.
'I can't use Korean.'
'I can't write Korean.'

J. Substitution Drill

1. Hankuk mal i Tokil mal pota te eplypsimnita.
Korean is more difficult than German.

2. Cunguk mal i Yenge pota te eplypsimnita.
Chinese is more difficult than English.

3. Pulange mal i Ithwâlî mal pota te eplypsimnita.
French is more difficult than Italian.

4. Ssolven mal i Hankuk mal pota te eplypsimnita.
Russian is more difficult than Korean.

5. Ilpon mal i Ssolven mal pota te eplypsimnita.
Japanese is more difficult than Russian.

6. Yenge ka Tokil mal pota te eplypsimnita.
English is more difficult than German.

7. Yenge ka Tokil mal pota te swipsimnita.
English is easier than German.

8. Yenge ka Tokil mal pota te omi issimnita.
English is more interesting than German.

English is more complicated than German.

*10. Yenge ka Tokil mal pota te omi epsimnita.
English is less interesting than German.

*11. Yenge ka Tokil mal pota te kantan-hannita.
English is simpler than German.
K. Substitution Drill

1. Musin il il culo hase yo?
2. Musin il il nal mata hase yo?
3. Musin il il kilohke hase yo?
4. Musin il il pothong hase yo?
5. Musin il il kil hase yo?
6. Musin il il manhi hase yo?
7. Musin il il oenjok mata hase yo?
8. Musin il il teke hase yo?
9. Musin il il oikim puthe hase yo?
10. Musin il il nal kkaci hase yo?

What (kind of work) do you do mainly?
What (kind of work) do you do every-
day?
What are you working at so hard?
What are you doing in such a way?
What do you usually do?
What are you doing so hard?
What do you do mostly?
What do you do every evening?
What do you usually do?
What [are] you [going to] do from
now on?
What [are] you [going to] do until
tomorrow?
What [are] you [going to] do at
that time?

L. Substitution Drill

1. Can e mal-haci anhessimnikka?
2. Can e kaci anhessimnikka?
3. Can e saci anhessimnikka?
4. Can e manaci anhessimnikka?
5. Can e mawci anhessimnikka?
6. Can e ilkci anhessimnikka?
7. Can e coci anhessimnikka?
8. Can e poci anhessimnikka?
9. Can e kith-nawi anhessimnikka?

Didn't [I] tell [you] before?
Didn't [you] go [there] before?
Didn't [you] buy [it] before?
Didn't [we] meet before?
Didn't [you] learn [it] before?
Didn't [you] read [it] before?
Wasn't [it] nice before?
Didn't [you] see [it] before?
Didn't [you] finish [it] before?
M. Substitution Drill

1. (Han) sam nyen ccim tiewasimmnita.  It's been about three years.
2. (Han) sam cull ccim tiewasimmnita.  It's been about three weeks.
3. (Han) se sikan ccim tiewasimmnita.  It's been about three hours.
4. (Han) sekk tal ccim tiewasimmnita.  It's been about three months.
5. (Han) sam pun ccim tiewasimmnita.  It's been about three minutes.
6. (Han) sa nyan pan ccim tiewasimmnita.  It's been about four and a half years.
7. (Han) ne sikan pan ccim tiewasimmnita.  It's been about four and a half hours.
8. (Han) nakk tal pan ccim tiewasimmnita.  It's been about four and a half months.

N. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sensaeng in wekyokwan (1)  Mr. Kim became a diplomat.
tiewasimmnita.
2. Kim Sensaeng in kunin (1)  Mr. Kim became a soldier.
tiewasimmnita.
3. Kim Sensaeng in tesa (ka)  Mr. Kim became an ambassador.
tiewasimmnita.
4. Kim Sensaeng in yangs (ka)  Mr. Kim became a consul.
tiewasimmnita.
*5. Kim Sensaeng in Tathongyong (1)  Mr. Kim became the President.
tiewasimmnita.
*6. Kim Sensaeng in hakca (ka)  Mr. Kim became a scholar.
tiewasimmnita.
*7. Kim Sensaeng in teshak kyosu (ka)  Mr. Kim became a college professor.
tiewasimmnita.
*8. Kim Sensaeng in teshak kanga (ka)  Mr. Kim became a college instructor.
tiewasimmnita.
*9. Kim Sensaeng in kongpokwan (1)  Mr. Kim became an information officer.
tiewasimmnita.
10. Kim Sensaeng in thongyekwan (1)  Mr. Kim became an interpreter.
tiewasimmnita.
11. Kim Sensaeng in sinmun kica (ka)  Mr. Kim became a journalist.
tiewasimmnita.
12. Kim Sensaeng in lysa (ka)  Mr. Kim became a doctor.
tiewasimmnita.
UNIT 8

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

*13. Kim Sensaeng in sacang (i)
tweesimnita.

*14. Kim Sensaeng in pyanha (ka)
tweesimnita.

*15. Kim Sensaeng in kyongchul(kwan) (i)
tweesimnita.

Mr. Kim became a president (of the company).
Mr. Kim became a lawyer.
Mr. Kim became a policeman.

0. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal i eleyapimnita.
/Tokil mal/

Student: Tokil mal in te eleywe yo.

1. Tokil mal i swipsimnita.
/Pullanse mal/

2. Yeong-Han sacen i pissamnita.
/Han-Yang sacen/

3. Seoul i khimnita. /Nyuyok/

4. Seoul e mulken kapa i ssamnita.
/Pusan/

5. Kim Sensaeng cip i kakkapsimnita.
/Pak Sensaeng cip/

/pihangki/

7. Hankuk yeca ka yeppimnita. /Mikuk yeca/

8. Ilpon i cakin nala imnita.
/Hankuk/

'Korean is difficult.' /German/

'German is more difficult.'

Pullanse mal in te swiwe yo.

Han-Yang sacen in te pissa yo.

Nyuyok in te khe yo.

Pusan e mulken kapa in te ssa yo.

Pak Sensaeng cip in te kakkawe yo.

Pihangki nin te copa yo.

Mikuk yeca nin te yeppe yo.

Hankuk in te cakin nala iye yo.
P. Expansion Drill

Tutor: Tokil mal i swipsimnita.
      /Pullanse mal/
Student: Tokil mal i Pullanse mal pota te swipsimnita.

1. Hankuk i caksimnita. /Ilpon/
2. Pusan i mamnita. /Inchen/
3. Kicha ka cal tanimnita. /pihængki/
4. Yøŋe ka əlyøpsimnita. /Hankuk mal/
5. Hankuk yeça ka alimtapsimnita.
     /Cungkuk yeça/
6. Kim Sensøŋg i yøŋge lil cal hamnita. /Ceimsi Sensøŋg/
7. Khir sacen il cohahamnita. /cakin sacen/
8. Søul e salam i manhi issimnita.
     /Wætingthon/

'German is easy.' /French/
'German is easier than French.'
Hankuk i Ilpon pota te caksimnita.
Pusan i Inchøn pota te mamnita.
Kicha ka pihængki pota te cal tanimnita.
Yøŋe ka Hankuk mal pota te əlyøpsimnita.
Hankuk yeça ka Cungkuk yeça pota te alimtapsimnita.
Kim Sensøŋg i Ceimsi Sensøŋg pota Yøŋge lil te cal hamnita.
Khir sacen il cakın sacen pota te cohahamnita.
Søul e Wætingthon pota te salam i manhí issimnita.

Q. Response Drill

Tutor: Yøŋge lil mal-hal su issø yø?
Student: Ne, (Yøŋge lil) mal-hal su issimnita.

1. Hankil il ilkil su issø yø?
2. Hakkyø e kal su issø yø?
3. Yøŋge lil kalichil su issø yø?
4. Onil cip e issil su issø yø?
5. Cicik kil il mule pol su issø yø?
6. Nøøl il-hal su issø yø?
7. Samusil e tillil su issø yø?
8. Ki catongcha lil phal su issø yø?

'Can you speak English?'
'Yes, I can (speak).'
Ne, (Hankil il) ilkil su issimnita.
Ne, (hakkyø e) kal su issimnita.
Ne, (Yøŋge lil) kalichil su issimnita.
Ne, (onil) cip e issil su issimnita.
Ne, (cicik kil il) mule pol su issimnita.
Ne, (nøøl) il-hal su issimnita.
Ne, (samusil e) tillil su issimnita.
Ne, (ki catongcha lil) phal su issimnita.
9. Ohu e ttanal su isse yo?
10. Ppesi lil thal su isse yo?
11. Taum tal puthe hakkyo e tanil su isse yo?
12. Nwil kkaci il il kkith-nêl su il isse yo?
12. Ki il il cikim sicak-hal su isse yo?

Ne, (ohu e) ttanal su issimnita.
Ne, (ppesî lîl) thal su issimnita.
Ne, (taum tal puthe hakkyo e) tanil su issimnita.
Ne, nwîl kkacî (il il) kkîth-nêl su issîmînîta.
Ne, (ki il il) cikîm sicak-hal su issîmînîta.

R. Response Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo e kal su issîmînîka?
Student: Anîyo, (hakkyo e) kal su epsilonîta.

'Can you go to school?'
'No, I cannot (go).'

1. Hankîl il ilkil su issîmînîka?
2. Yenge lil kalîchîl su issîmînîka?
3. Onîl cip e issîl su issîmînîka?
4. Cikîm kil il mule pol su issîmînîka?
5. Nwil il-hal su issîmînîka?
6. Samusil e tillil su issîmînîka?
7. Ki catongcha lil phal su issîmînîka?
8. Ohu e ttanal su issîmînîka?
9. Mikuk ese hakkyo e tanil su issîmînîka?

Anîyo, (Hankîl il) ilkil su epsilonîta.
Anîyo, (Yenge lil) kalîchîl su epsilonîta.
Anîyo, (Onîl cip e) issîl su epsilonîta.
Anîyo, (Cikîm kil il mule pol su epsilonîta.
Anîyo, il-hal su epsilonîta.
Anîyo, tillil su epsilonîta.
Anîyo, phal su epsilonîta.
Anîyo, ttanal su epsilonîta.
Anîyo, tanil su epsilonîta.
8. Response Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo e kal su epsimnikka?
Student: Ne, kaci mot hamnita.

1. Yange lil mal-hal su epsimnikka?
2. Hankil il ilkil su epsimnikka?
3. Tokil mal il kalichil su epsimnikka?
4. Onil nes samusil e tillil su epsimnikka?
5. Nwil il-hal su epsimnikka?
6. Cha lil phal su epsimnikka?
7. Ohu e ttenal su epsimnikka?
8. Nwil kkacil il il kkhith-nwil su epsimnikka?
9. Mikuk ese hakkyo e tanil su epsimnikka?

'Can't you go to school?'
'No, I can't (go).'

Ne, mal-haci mot hamnita.
Ne, ilkci mot hamnita.
Ne, kalichici mot hamnita.
Ne, tillici mot hamnita.
Ne, (nwil) il-haci mot hamnita.
Ne, phalci mot hamnita.
Ne, ttenaci mot hamnita.
Ne, (nwil kkacil) khith-nwil ci mot hamnita.
Ne, (Mikuk ese hakkyo e) tanici mot hamnita.

T. Response Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo ka memnikka?
Student: Aniyio, kilin melci anhismnita.

1. Haksweng i manhismnikka?
2. Sicable melkun i pissamnikka?
3. Inheng i kakkapsamnikka?
4. I kilim i alimtapsamnikka?
5. Ki pun i Ssolyen mal il cal hamnikka?
6. Tangsin in ce yeca lil cohahamnikka?
7. Hankuk mal kyosil i khimnikka?
8. Sikan i manhi kellimnikka?
9. Ssolyen mal i pexuki swipsimnikka?
10. Ce tokil yeca ka yeppimnikka?
11. Senseseng in cikim puncuhamnikka?
12. Yenge lil kalichiki elyepsimnikka?
13. Yeng-Han sacen i philyo-hamnikka?

'Is the school far?'
'No, it's not so far.'

Aniyio, kili manhci anhismnita.
Aniyio, kili pissaci anhismnita.
Aniyio, kili kakkapci anhismnita.
Aniyio, kili alimtapi anhismnita.
Aniyio, kili cal haci anhismnita.
Aniyio, kili cohahaci anhismnita.
Aniyio, kili khici anhismnita.
Aniyio, kili manhi kellici anhismnita.
Aniyio, kili swipc anhismnita.
Aniyio, kili yeppici anhismnita.
Aniyio, kili puncuhaci anhismnita.
Aniyio, kili eleypci anhismnita.
Aniyio, kili philyo-haci anhismnita.
UNIT 8 
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

U. Response Drill (Answer the question using /pêlssê/ in the proper place.)

Tutor: Kim Sensâng 1 ttenassê yo?
Student: Ne, (Kim Sensâng 1) pêlssê ttenassimnîta.

1. Kî il il kkîth-nêssê yo?
2. Yenje sensâng il mânassê yo?
3. Han sam nyên ccim twêssê yo?
4. Hakssâng 1 kicha e thassê yo?
5. Hankuk mal kongpu lil sicak-hassê yo?
6. Onil 1 Suyoil iye yo?
7. Pak Sensâng in il-hale kassê yo?
8. Sensâng in hyuka lil patesse yo?
9. Com swisesse yo?
10. Kicha ka cêngkêcang e tahassê yo?

'Has Mr. Kim left?'
'Yes, he has already left.'

Ne, (kî il il) pêlssê kkîth-nêssimnîta.
Ne, (Yenje sensâng il) pêlssê mânassimnîta.
Ne, pêlssê han sam nyên ccim twêssimnîta.
Ne, (hakssâng 1) pêlssê (kicha e) thassimnîta.
Ne, (Hankuk mal kongpu lil) pêlssê sicak-hassimnîta.
Ne, (Onil 1) pêlssê Suyoil imnîta.
Ne, (Pak Sensâng in) pêlssê il-hale kassimnîta.
Ne, pêlssê (hyuka lil) patessimnîta.
Ne, pêlssê swisessimnîta.
Ne, pêlssê (cêngkêcang e) tahassimnîta.

V. Response Drill (Answer the question using /acîk/ in the proper place.)

Tutor: Kim Sensâng 1 pêlssê ttenasšimnikka?
Student: Anîyo, (Kim Sensâng 1) acîk ttenacî anhesse yo?

1. Hakkyo ka pêlssê kkîth-nassimnikka?
2. Yenje sensâng il pêlssê mânassimnikka?
3. Pêlssê sam nyên i twêssimnikka?
4. Hankuk mal kongpu lil pêlssê sicak-hassimnikka?

'Has Mr. Kim left already?'
'No, he's not left yet.'

Anîyo, (hakkyo ka) acîk kkîth-nacî anhesse yo.
Anîyo, (Yenje sensâng il) acîk mânacî anhesse yo.
Anîyo, acîk (sam nyên i) tweci anhesse yo.
Anîyo, (Hankuk mal kongpu lil) acî sicak-hacî anhesse yo.
5. Pak Sønsøng in pelsse il-hale kassimmikka?
   Aniyo, (Pak Sønsøng in) acik (il-
   hale) kaci anhesse yo.
6. Sønsøng in pelsse hyuka lil patessimmikka?
   Aniyo, (Acik hyuka lil) patci anhesse
   yo.
7. Kicha ka pelsse cøngkæcang e tahassimmikka?
   Aniyo, (kichka ka) acik (cøngkæcang
   e) tahci anhesse yo.
8. Pihømgki ka pelsse ttenassimmikka?
   Aniyo, (pihømgki ka) acik ttenaci
   anhesse yo.
9. Ki il il pelsse kkith-næssimmikka?
   Aniyo, (ki il il) acik kkith-næci
   anhesse yo.
10. Kim Sønsøng i pelsse yøngsa ka
tenessimmikka?
    Aniyo, (Kim Sønsøng i) acik yøngsa
    ka tewci anhesse yo.

EXERCISES

1. Tell the following story to Mr. Park that:
   (a) You are attending school these days to study Korean. Learning Korean
       is not so easy but it is interesting. Foreign languages are necessary for
       you. You can speak German a little but cannot read it well. Korean
       is more difficult to study than German.
   (b) Mr. Lee is a little busy these days. He didn't tell you before, but he
       is employed at the Bando Company, where he does ordinary office work.
       And, he has lots of work everyday. He has been with the Company for
       about three months now. He likes his job very much.

2. James wants to know what Mr. Kim, you friend, is. Tell him that Mr. Kim
   has become a(n):
   a. soldier
   b. ambassador
   c. the President
   d. professor
   e. journalist
   f. (medical) doctor
   g. lawyer
   h. college professor
   i. President of a company
   j. Consul
   k. clerk
   l. scholar
   m. interpreter
   n. information officer
   o. secretary
   p. police(men)
   Q. civil servant
3. Ask Mr. James in Korean:
   a. Which (one) is more difficult to study, Korean or German.
   b. Which (one) is more expensive, an English-Korean dictionary or a Korean-English dictionary.
   c. Which is larger, Seoul or Pusan.
   d. Which is nearer (or farther) from America, Japan or Korea.
   e. Which is faster, an airplane or a train.
   f. Which is needed more, a Korean-English dictionary or an English-Korean dictionary.
   g. Which one he likes better, a pencil or a fountain pen.
   h. Who speaks English better, Mr. Kim or Mr. James.
   i. Which language is more complicated, French or German.
   j. Which is more interesting to learn, speaking or reading.
   k. Which is less interesting, teaching or learning.
   l. Which is simpler, to write or to read.

4. Pak sensang asks:
   a. if Mr. Lee can write Hangeul.  
      You answer: 'No, he can't.'
   b. if everybody knows English.  
      You answer: 'Yes, everybody does.'
   c. if you intend to leave tomorrow.  
      You answer: 'No, I'm going to leave the day after tomorrow.'
   d. if you go to the market place every Saturday.  
      You answer: 'Yes, I do (go every Saturday).'
   e. if you are employed by the Bank of America.  
      You answer: 'No, I work for the Government.'
   f. if every ambassador speaks good English.  
      You answer: 'No, not every ambassador does.'
   g. if teaching Korean is not easy.  
      You answer: 'No, it's not that easy, but it's all right.'
   h. how long you have worked for the Government.  
      You answer: 'About three and a half years.'
   i. how is it learning Korean.  
      You answer: 'Oh, it's not so difficult.'
   j. what kind of work you do mainly.  
      You answer: 'Now I do consular work.'
   k. if you have had a vacation.  
      You answer: 'Not yet, but I'm going to get one next week.'
   l. if the school already is over.  
      You answer: 'No, it's not over yet.'
5. Make short statements in which the following expressions are included:

a. cuil mata
b. kili
c. te
d. culo
e. pothong
f. olw (tongan)
g. kileneke
h. cikim puthe
i. noll kkaci
j. polssæ
k. acik
제 9 과  영화 구경

(대화 A)

영화

1. 미쓰 쓰 : 오늘 저녁에 영화 보러 와 가겠어요?

참

좋은 생각

2. 미쓰 부탁훈 : 아, 그것, 참 좋은 생각입니다. 어디에 좋은 영화가 있어요?

국제

국제 극장

(영화관) 상영합니다

상영하고 있습니다

3. 미쓰 쓰 : 국제 극장에서 미국 영화를 상영하고 있습니다.

보고 싶습니다

4. 미쓰 부탁훈 : 나는 한국 영화를 보고 싶습니다.

5. 미쓰 쓰 : 한국 영화를 좋아하세요?

가깝

6. 미쓰 부탁훈 : 예, 가깝 보러 가지요.

다

들습니다, 들웁니다

알아 들습니다

7. 미쓰 쓰 : 한국 맛을 다 얻어 들습니까?
UNIT 9. Going to the Movies

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A
(Miss Choi and Miss Brown work in the same office.)

Miss Choi

양화 
1. Onil 셰역 e 양화 폴네
an kakessye yo?

[the] movies
Wouldn't you like to go to see a
movie tonight?

Miss Brown

참
cohin sangkak

2. A, ki kae, cham cohin sangkak
imnita. eti e cohin 양화 ka
isse yo?

really; very
good idea; good thought

Oh, that's a very good idea. Is
there a good movie on? ('Is there
a good movie somewhere?')

Miss Choi

국씨
Kukce Kikcang

(양화 릴) sangyong-hamnita
sangyong-hako issimnita

international
International Theatre

[they] show movies
movies are being shown

[They] are showing an American
movie at the Interantional
Theatre.

Miss Brown

poko sipshimnita/sipssimnita/

4. Na nin Hankuk 양화 릴 poko
sipshimnita.

I want to see; I'd like to see
I want to see a Korean movie.

Miss Choi

5. Hankuk 양화 릴 cohanase yo?

Do you like Korean movies?

Miss Brown

 kakkim

6. Ne, kakkim pola kaci yo.

sometimes

Yes, I go to see [them] sometimes.
8. 미쓰 부탁습니다:

아니오, 다 앞서 듣지 못 합니다. 그렇지만, 좋은 음식입니다.

(대화 B)

9. RA:

음이 있습니까?

바쁜니다

10. RE:

왜요? 좀 바쁜니다.

무슨 일로
그렇게

11. RA:

무슨 일로 그렇게 늦 바빠요?

할 일이
꾸十分重要

12. RE:

오늘은 할 일이 꽤 많습니다.

그래서
나하죠
구경
구경합니다, 구경합니다

226
7. Hankuk mal il ta ale titsimnikka?  
Do you understand Korean (language) thoroughly?

Miss Brown
ale titci mot hamnita
I don't understand; I can't understand
kilsächi man
however; nevertheless
yensip
practice
yensip-hamnita
[I] practice

8. Aniyo, ta ale titci mot hamnita.  
Kilsächi man, cohin yensip imnita.
No, I don't understand it all. But it's good practice.

Dialogue B

Roommate A
thim
free time; spare time
9. Thim } i issimnikka?
Are you free now? ('Do you have spare time?!')
Sikan

Roommate B
pappimnita
[I]'m busy

I'm a little busy, why?

Roommate A
musin il lo
why ('with what kind of business!')
kilsächke
so; that way; in such a way
nill
all the time; always

11. Musin il lo kilsächke nil pappe
How come you are so busy all the time? ('With what business you yo?
are always busy?!')
13. RA: 그 밖서, 나하고 구경 안 가례어요?

미안하지만
나 감니다.
나 감 수 않으니다.

14. RB: 미안하지만, 오늘은 나 갈 수 없습니다.

15. RA: 그럼, 네일은 나와 같이 나 갈 수 있어요?

16. RB: 예, 네일은 바쁘지 않겠어요. 네일
같이 나 갈시다.

17. RA: 그러니까, 네일까지 기타기게요.
Roommate B

hal il
phêk
manhömnita

work to do; something to do
very; quite
[there]'re many; [there]'re plenty

12. Önîl in hal il i phêk manhömnita.
I have a lot of things to do today.

Roommate A

kîlê se
na hako
kukyêng
{kukyêng kamnita}
kukyêng-hamnita

therefore; so
with me
show; sightseeing
[I] go to a show; [I] go sightseeing; [I] look around

13. Kîlê se, na hako kukyêng an kakesse yo?
Then, you won't go to a show with me?

Roommate B

miarnhaci man
na kamnita
na kal su öpsimnita

I'm sorry but...
[I] go out
[I] cannot go out

14. Miarnhaci man, önîl in na kal su öpsimnita.
I'm sorry but I can't go out today.

Roommate A

15. Kîlêm, néêl in na wa kathi na kal su issksesse yo?
Will you be able to go out with me tomorrow, then?

Roommate B

16. Ne, néêl il pappici anhkessimnita.
Yes, I will not be busy tomorrow.
Nêêl kathi na kapsita.
Let's go out together tomorrow.

Roommate A

kitalikessê yo

[I]'ll wait

17. Kîlêmyan, néêl kkaci kitalikessê yo.
Well, then, I'll wait until tomorrow.
UNIT 9

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogues.)

2. Cham 'really', 'very' is an adverb which occurs without pause before description verbs or other adverbs. It denotes intensification of the qualities of the following expression. Cham followed by a pause also occurs as a sentence adverb which means 'by the way'.

7. Ta 'all', 'in all', 'thoroughly' is an adverb which occurs before inflected expressions (mostly verbals or sentences) to denote either completion or entirety. Ale til- - ale til- 'to understand', 'to comprehend' is a verb phrase which implies that someone 'listens and understands through ears'. The second verb in the verb phrase occurs in an alternative form tit- or til- which means 'listen to-' as an independent verb. In standard Korean, tit- occurs only in the following inflected forms: titsimmite/titsimmikka and titkessimmite/titkessimmikka; til- occurs elsewhere. Note that there are a few verb stems which are called the t-1 alternative stems to which tit- - til- belongs. The inflections of this class of verbs are the same as tit- - til-.

8. Yeonsip 'practice' is a noun. Its verb form yeonsip-ha- 'to practice' occurs as a transitive verb.

9. Thim 'spare time', 'free time' is a free noun.

11. Nil 'always' is synonymous with hangsang 'all the time', once na 'all the time', once tinci 'all the time' and hangsil 'always'.

12. Phak 'quite', 'considerably', 'comparatively' is an adverb which occurs only before description verbs or other adverbs. It is used to imply that the degree of the following expression is more than the speaker's expectation.
1. **-ko**

   The verb ending **-ko** may be added to a verb stem, or to a stem plus other suffixes. However, if either the verb **iss-** or **siph-** succeeds without pause immediately after it, tense suffixes do not occur before the **-ko** ending. Since the inflected form ending in **-ko** (or simply the **ko** form) occurs always before other inflected expressions it is often called the Korean *Gerund*. The **ko** form occurs in the following three constructions:

   (a) **-ko + iss-** 'be ---ing!

      An action verb ending in **-ko + iss-**, denotes that the action of the verb in the **ko** form is in the process of occurring, or in the state of being. Tenses and/or levels of speech may be generated in **iss-** but not in the **ko** form. Examples:

      *Ge nín kí yêca lîl salang-hako issè yo.*  
      'I am in love with her.' (!As for me, I'm in the process of loving that woman.)

      *Hankuk mal lî pauko issimnita.*  
      '[I] am studying Korean (now).'

      *kí tû e Seoul ese salko issesse yo.*  
      '[I] was living in Seoul at that time.'

   (b) **-ko + siph-** and **-ko siphe ha-** 'want to-' and 'wants to-'

      The verb **siph-** occurs only after the **ko** form. The construction **-ko + siph-** denotes the desire or hope of the sentence subject or topic for the action of the verb in the **ko** form. If the subject or topic in the sentence is other than the speaker or addressee **-ko + siphe ha-** is used. The tenses and/or levels of speech may be generated in the verb **siph-** or **siphe ha-**.

      Examples:

      *Ge nín yanghwâ lîl pokô siphsimnita.*  
      'I want to see a movie.'

      *Chinku lîl manâko siphe ye?*  
      'Do you want to meet a friend?'

      *Geîmsî ka Yêngê lîl kalichiko siphe hamnita.*  
      'James wants to teach English.'
(c) -ko + verbs other than iss- or siph-

The ko form which may be followed by a pause also occurs before another inflected expression. The honorific and tense suffixes may be added to the ko form, but if the subject or topic is the same for both verbs, tense suffixes occur only in the final verb. This construction (i.e. -ko followed by another verb) denotes that two actions and/or descriptions are expressed one after another with the one in the ko form occurring or being stated first. Examples:

Nankuk mal i eolyepko, Yëngë nin swipsimnita.  "Korean is difficult and English is easy."
Kim Sënsëng in tæsa ka twëessko, na nin kyoze ka twëesse yo.  "Mr. Kim became an ambassador, and I became a professor."
Ce nin mal il pëousko, wekuk e kako sipsimnita.  "I want to study the language and then go to a foreign country."

2. -ci man '...but'

Man is a particle which, preceded by a nominal or an adverbial, means simply 'only', i.e. N + man 'only N'. The ci form + man which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression to denote that some contradictory further explanation or remark will follow in the following inflected expression. Examples:

Kakkyo ka malci man, sikan il kil manhi kallici anhismnit.  "The school is far, but it doesn't take much time."
Ce nin Hankuk mal il pëousci man, ce chinku nin Ilpon mal il kalliche yo.  "I am studying Korean, but my friend is teaching Japanese."

3. -i/i

We called the inflected form ending in -n/in/nin before a nominal the Present Noun-Modifier Word. (See Unit 5, Grammar Note 1.) The inflected form ending in -(i) also occurs as a modifier of the following nominal, to denote the future action or description of, or for, the nominal. We shall call such an inflected form the Prospective Noun-Modifier Word, and the ending -(i) the Prospective Modifier Ending. -i/i is added to a consonant stem and -i to a vowel stem. The future tense suffix -kess- does not occur before -(i). Examples:

Ttonal kicha ka issimnita.  "There is a train which will leave."
"There is a train to leave."
Nae ka ilkil cheok i epsa yo.
Onil mannal salam i nuku ici yo?
Hal il i mansimnita.

'There is no book which I will read.'
'Who is the man that [you] will meet today?'
'[I] have a lot work to do.'

4. Particle hako 'with', 'as', 'and'

Hako is an one-shape particle which can be substituted for the particle wa/kwa. (See Grammar Note 4, Unit 4.) Like wa/kwa, hako occurs in two constructions:

(a) Nominal + hako 'with Nominal', 'as Nominal', 'with Nominal'

Nominal + hako, which may occur before an inflected expression, is an adverbial expression.

Kim Sansaeng hako (kathi) kakesa yo.
Chinku hako mal-hesesse yo.
1 kes hako kathin cheok

'I'll go with Kim.'
'I talked with a friend.'
'a book the same as this' ('the same book as this')

(b) Nominal 1 + hako + Nominal 2 = 'N1 and N2'
cheok hako yenphil
onil hako neil

'a book and a pencil'
'today and tomorrow'
A. Substitution Drill

1. Onil cényok e yëngëhwa pòle an kakesë yo?
   Wouldn't you like to go to see movies this evening?

*2. Onil cényok e mulken sale an kakesë yo?
   Wouldn't you like to go for shopping ('to buy goods') this evening?

3. Onil cényok e kuyëng-hale an kakesë yo?
   Wouldn't you like to go to see a show this evening?

4. Onil cényok e chinëku mannale an kakesë yo?
   Wouldn't you like to go to meet friends this evening?

5. Onil cényok e Hankuk mal pëule an kakesë yo?
   Wouldn't you like to go to study Korean this evening?

6. Onil cényok e Hankuk mal yënsip-hale an kakesë yo?
   Wouldn't you like to go to practice Korean this evening?

*7. Onil cényok e unëng-hale an kakesë yo?
   Wouldn't you like to go for exercise this evening?

*8. Onil cényok e sanpo-hale an kakesë yo?
   Wouldn't you like to take a walk this evening?

9. Onil cényok e sëne kuyëng-hale an kakesë yo?
   Wouldn't you like to go sightseeing downtown this evening?

*10. Onil cényok e chum chule an kakesë yo?
    Wouldn't you like to go for dancing this evening?

*11. Onil cényok e sicang pole an kakesë yo?
    Wouldn't you like to go for food shopping this evening?

B. Substitution Drill

   American movies are being shown at the International Theatre.

2. Kukce Kikkang esë Hankuk yëngëhwa lil sangyëng-hako issimnitë.
   Korean movies are being shown at the International Theatre.

   Japanese movies are being shown at the International Theatre.

   German movies are being shown at the International Theatre.
5. Kukoe Kikoang esse Ithwali yanghwang
    lil sangyang-hako issimnita.
6. Kukoe Kikoang esse Fullanse yanghwang
    lil sangyang-hako issimnita.
7. Kukoe Kikoang esse Wekuk yanghwang
    lil sangyang-hako issimnita.
8. Kukoe Kikoang esse Yangkuk yanghwang
    lil sangyang-hako issimnita.
9. Seoul Kikoang esse Yangkuk yanghwang
    lil sangyang-hako issimnita.
10. Sina Kikoang esse Yangkuk yanghwang
    lil sangyang-hako issimnita.

Italian movies are being shown at the International Theatre.
French movies are being shown at the International Theatre.
Foreign movies are being shown at the International Theatre.
British movies are being shown at the Seoul Theatre.
British movies are being shown at a theatre downtown.

C. Substitution Drill

1. Na nin Hankuk yanghwang lil poko
    siphsimnita.
2. Na nin Seoul sine lil poko
    siphsimnita.
3. Na nin Wekuk yangpok il poko
    siphsimnita.
4. Na nin Han-Yang sacan il poko
    siphsimnita.
5. Na nin Kukoe Kikoang il poko
    siphsimnita.
6. Na nin yala kaci lil poko
    siphsimnita.
7. Na nin Mikuk Tesa lil poko
    siphsimnita.
8. Na nin Tokil kunin il poko
    siphsimnita.
9. Na nin nwesa sacan il poko
    siphsimnita.
10. Na nin Yongsu pise lil poko
    siphsimnita.

I want to see Korean movies.
I want to see downtown Seoul.
I want to see foreign (made) suits.
I want to see a Korean-English dictionary.
I want to see the International Theatre.
I want to see many kinds.
I want to see the American Ambassador.
I want to see German soldiers.
I want to see the president of the company.
I want to see the secretary to the consul.
D. Substitution Drill
1. Na nin yænhwa lîl pokø siphe yo.
2. Na nin Hankûk e kako siphe yo.
3. Na nin i cheok i lîl sako siphe yo.
4. Na nin Yønγe lîl kâlihiko siphe yo.
5. Na nin Hankûk yâksa lîl ìlkkò siphe yo.
6. Na nin ca tongcha lîl phalãko siphe yo.
7. Na nin yeqa chinkú lîl manнакo siphe yo.
8. Na nin tapang e tilliko siphe yo.

I want to see a movie.
I want to go to Korea.
I want to buy this book.
I want to teach English.
I want to read Korean history.
I want to sell [my] car.
I want to meet my girl friend.
I want to stop by a tearoom.
I want to look around downtown.

E. Substitution Drill
1. Kakkim yænhwa (lîl) pole kaci yo.
2. Nil yænhwa (lîl) pole kaci yo.
3. Hangsang yænhwa (lîl) pole kaci yo.
4. Tte ttae lo yænhwa (lîl) pole kaci yo.
5. Fæm mata yænhwa (lîl) pole kaci yo.
6. Cuil mata yænhwa (lîl) pole kaci yo.
7. Han cuil e han pen yænhwa (lîl) pole kaci yo.
8. Han tal e tu pen yænhwa (lîl) pole kaci yo.
9. Il nyan e se pen yænhwa (lîl) pole kaci yo.
10. Cacü yænhwa (lîl) pole kaci yo.

Sometimes I go to see the movies.
I always go to (see) the movies.
I go to (see) the movies all the time.
I go to (see) the movies occasionally.
I go to (see) the movies every night.
I go to (see) the movies every week.
I go to (see) the movies once a week.
I go to (see) the movies twice a month.
I go to (see) the movies three times a year.
I go to (see) the movies frequently.
11. **Cumal mata yenghwa (lil) pole kaci yo.**
   I go to (see) the movies every weekend.

12. **Mwil yenghwa (lil) pole kaci yo.**
   I go to (see) the movies everyday.

13. **Mweu[l] yenghwa (lil) pole kaci yo.**
   I go to (see) the movies every week.

14. **Mwuel yenghwa (lil) pole kaci yo.**
   I go to (see) the movies every month.

15. **Mwuyen yenghwa (lil) pole kaci yo.**
   I go to (see) the movies every year.

F. Substitution Drill

1. Onil in hal il i manhsimnita.
   I have a lot of things to do today.

2. Onil in ilkil cheuk (1) manhsimnita.
   I have a lot of books to read today.

3. Onil in mannal salam (1) manhsimnita.
   I have a lot of people to meet today.

4. Onil in ol salam (1) manhsimnita.
   There are a lot of people to come today.

5. Onil in kitilil salam (1)
   manhsimnita.
   There are a lot of people to wait for today.

6. Onil in ttenal pe (ka) manhsimnita.
   There are a lot of ships which will leave today.

7. Onil il sal mulken (1) manhsimnita.
   There are a lot of things to buy today.

8. Onil in kalichil haksang (1)
   manhsimnita.
   There are a lot of students to teach today.

9. Onil in mule pol mal (1)
   manhsimnita.
   I have a lot of things to ask about today.

10. Onil in tillil sangcam (1)
    manhsimnita.
    There are many stores to stop by today.

11. Onil in sicol-hal il (1)
    manhsimnita.
    I have a lot of work to begin today.

12. Onil in ssil phyenel (ka)
    manhsimnita.
    I have a lot of letters to write today.
G. Substitution Drill

1. Mianhaci man, cikim nāl kal su epsiminita.
   I'm sorry but I cannot go out now.

2. Mianhaci man, cikim hāl su epsiminita.
   I'm sorry but I cannot do [it] now.

   I'm sorry but I cannot wait for [you] now.

   I'm sorry but I cannot leave now.

5. Mianhaci man, cikim (Hankuk mal ūl) kalchil su epsiminita.
   I'm sorry but I cannot teach (Korean) now.

   I'm sorry but I cannot go with [you] now.

7. Mianhaci man, cikim (tangsgin cip e) tillil su epsiminita.
   I'm sorry but I cannot stop by (your house) now.

8. Mianhaci man, cikim il il sicak-hal su epsiminita.
   I'm sorry but I cannot start work now.

   I'm sorry but I cannot go sight-seeing now.

10. Mianhaci man, cikim cip e issil su epsiminita.
    I'm sorry but I cannot be at home now.

11. Mianhaci man, cikim tola kal su epsiminita.

12. Mianhaci man, cikim tola ol su epsiminita.


15. Mianhaci man, cikim na ol su epsiminita.


17. Mianhaci man, cikim olla ol su epsiminita.

18. Mianhaci man, cikim olla kal su epsiminita.

I'm sorry but I cannot go up now.
H. Substitution Drill
1. Han'guk mal i cemi issimnita.
2. Yang (ka) cemi issimnita.
3. Cheok (iil) i(i)kkal (ka) cemi issimnita.
4. Soul e aalke (ka) cemi issimnita.
5. Mal puukki (ka) cemi issimnita.
6. Ii-haki (ka) cemi issimnita.
7. Kalikikii (ka) cemi issimnita.
8. Hakkyo e taniki (ka) cemi issimnita.
10. Tipi poki (ka) cemi issimnita.

Korean is interesting.
English is interesting.
Reading books is interesting.
Living in Seoul is interesting.
Learning a language is interesting.
Working is interesting.
Teaching is interesting.
Attending school is interesting.
Working in a bank is interesting.
Watching TV is interesting.

I. Substitution Drill
1. Na wa kathi kakesse yo?
2. Chiniku (wa) kathi okesse yo?
3. Saeng (kwa) kathi makkessyo?
4. Ce yaca (wa) kathi na kakesse yo?
5. Puin (kwa) kathi tillikesse yo?
6. Pisa (wa) kathi mal-hakesse yo?
7. Mikuk Tesa (wa) kathi insa-hakesse yo?
8. Kunin (kwa) kathi nolkessyo?
9. Yangsa (wa) kathi ttaakissee yo?
10. Yece chinku (wa) kathi kuyang kakesse yo?
11. Ul (wa) kathi okessyo?
12. Yehakson (kwa) kathi na kakesse yo?
13. Omni (wa) kathi tola kakesse yo?
14. Tivongjang (kwa) kathi tola okessyo?

Will you go with me?
Will you come with a friend?
Will you eat with [your] teacher?
Will you go out with that girl?
Will you stop by with your wife?
Will you talk with your secretary?
Will you greet with the American Ambassador?
Will you play with a soldier?
Will you leave with the consul?
Will you go sightseeing with your girl friend?
Will you come with us?
Will you go out with a girl student?
Will you go back with your mother?
will you come back with the President?
J. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sansæng kwa kathî mal- hasipsyo. Please talk with Mr. Kim.
2. Kim Sansæng kwa kathî kongpu- hasipsyo. Please study with Mr. Kim.
4. Kim Sansæng kwa kathî ki kæs il ilkapsyo. Please read it with Mr. Kim.
5. Kim Sansæng kwa kathî il-hasipsyo. Please work with Mr. Kim.
6. Kim Sansæng kwa kathî sëcak- hasipsyo. Please start with Mr. Kim.
7. Kim Sansæng kwa kathî peusipsyo. Please study with Mr. Kim.

K. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Uli nin Hankuk mal il kongpu- hamnita. 'We study Korean.'
Student: Uli nin Hankuk mal il kongpu- hako issimnita.

1. Cikim hakkyo e kamnita. Cikim hakkyo e kako issimnita. ('I'm on my way to school now.')
L. Response Drill

Tutor: Pak Sensæng in Hankuk mal il kalichye yo?
Student: Ne, cikim kalichiko issimnita.

1. Geimsi Sensæng i wasakwan ese il-hae yo?
2. Kicha ka ttena yo?
3. Salam til i pihængki lil tha yo?
4. Mikuk tæsa ka pihængki ese nœlye yo?
5. Tangsin in hakkyo e tanye yo?
6. Chinku lil Kitalye yo?
7. Sœul yek e kanin kil il ale yo?
8. Hankuk mal il manhi pæwe yo?
9. Kim Sensæng il chace yo?
10. Kikcang ese Mikuk yængæwa lil sangyæng-hæe yo?
11. Hankik mal il yœnsip-hæe yo?

'Does Mr. Park teach Korean?'
'Yes, he's teaching [it] now.'
Ne, cikim wasakwan ese il-hako issimnita.
Ne, cikim tænako issimnita.
Ne, cikim thako issimnita.
Ne, cikim nœliko issimnita.

Ne, cikim taniko issimnita.
Ne, cikim kitaliko issimnita.
Ne, cikim aiko issimnita.
(‘Yes, I'm aware of it now.’)
Ne, cikim manhi pæuko issimnita.
Ne, cikim chacko issimnita.
Ne, cikim sangyæng-hako issimnita.

Ne, cikim yœnsip-hako issimnita.

M. Response Drill

Tutor: Ki ttæ e Hankuk mal il kongpu-hako issæssimnikka?
Student: Ne, ni ttæ e Hankuk mal il kongpu-hako issæssyo.

1. Ki ttæ e hakkyo e kako issæssimnikka?
2. Ki ttæ e Mikuk yængæwa lil sangyæng-hako issæssimnikka?
3. Ki ttæ e Yængæ lil kalichiko issæssimnikka?
4. Ki ttæ e wekuk salam il mannako issæssimnikka?
5. Ki ttæ e Kim Sensæng cip il chacko issæssimnikka?

'Were you studying Korean at that time?'
'Yes, I was studying Korean at that time.'
Ne, ki ttæ e hakkyo e kako issæssyo.
Ne, ki ttæ e Mikuk yængæwa lil sangyæng-hako issæssyo.
Ne, ki ttæ e Yængæ lil kalichiko issæssyo.
Ne, ki ttæ e wekuk salam il mannako issæssyo.
Ne, ki ttæ e Kim Sensæng cip il chacko issæssyo.
6. 키 태에 미군 태사권에 11-hako issessimnikka?
   Ne, 키 태에 미군 태사권에 11-hako issessa yo.

7. 키 태에 양획 릴 포코 issessimnikka?
   Ne, 키 태에 양획 릴 포코 issessa yo.

8. 키 태에 미군 포 캐크로 이 탄코 issessimnikka?
   Ne, 키 태에 미군 포 캐크로 이 탄코 issessa yo.

9. 키 태에 친구 릴 키탈리코 issessimnikka?
   Ne, 키 태에 친구 릴 키탈리코 issessa yo.

10. 키 태에 친구 이 련리코 issessimnikka?
    Ne, 키 태에 친구 이 련리코 issessa yo.

N. Response Drill

Tutor: Musx il salyxoko hammikka?
       /moca/

Student: Moca lil sako siphsimnita.

1. Nuku lil manxalyeko hammikka?
   /Coinsi Sænsæng/

2. ëti ese il-halyeko hammikka?
   /Mikuk Tæsakwan/

3. ence Wæsingthon il tænalyeko hammikka? /tæm tal/

4. Musin yoll e siçang e kalxeko hammikka? /Thoyoil/

5. elma tongan Hankuk mal il pæxlyeko hammikka? /yl tal/

6. Musin yænghwa lil polxeko hammikka?
   /Hankuk yænghwa/

7. Onil ëte issixlyeko hammikka? /olp/

8. ëti e tillixlyeko hammikka? /chinku samusil/

9. eni tal e hyuka lil patixlyeko hammikka? /Phal-wol/

10. ëti ese ræjilixlyeko hammikka?
    /sicheng aph/
11. Muus ilo Hankuk e kalyæko hamnikka? /pihængki/
12. ence coim Mikuk e tola kalyæko hamnikka? /i nyan hu/

Pihængki lo kako siphsimnita.
I nyan hu e tola kako siphsimnita.

0. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Geumsi nin Seoul esse sal(1)yæko hamnita.

Student: Geumsi nin Seoul esse salko siphe hæ yo.

'James intends to live in Seoul.'

'James wants to live in Seoul.'

1. Kim Senseong in onil yæghwa lil polysko hamnita.
2. Hankuk haksæng i Mikuk hakkyo e tanilyæko hamnita.
4. Haksæng in nœil sïne e na kalyæko hamnita.
5. Salam til in wekuk il kuyæng-halyæko hamnita.
6. Pak Senseong in Yængê lil kaliclyæko hamnita.
7. Ki salam in Hankuk inhæng esse il-halyæko hamnita.
8. Çe e chinku nin hyuka lil patilyæko hamnita.

Kim Senseong in onil yæghwa lil pokosiphe hæ yo.
Hankuk haksæng i Mikuk hakkyo e tanikosiphe hæ yo.
Chwe Senseong in Seoul e halu tongan isskosiphe hæ yo.
Hanksæng in nœil sïne e na kako siphe hæ yo.
Salam til in wekuk il kuyæng-hako siphe hæ yo.
Pak Senseong in Yængê lil karichiko siphe hæ yo.
Ki salam in Hankuk inhæng esse il-hakosiphe hæ yo.
Çe e chinku nin hyuka lil patkosiphe hæ yo.
P. Response Drill

Tutor: Kim Sensæng in Yæøe lil pæuko siphe hæ yo?

Student: Ne, pæk pæuko siphe hamnita.

1. Ki chinku nin hyuka lil patko siphe hæ yo?
   'Does Mr. Kim want to study English?'
   'Yes, [he] wants to study [it] very much.'
   Ne, pæk patko siphe hamnita.

2. Ki salam in Hankuk inhæng e kimmu-hako siphe hæ yo?
   Ne, (Hankuk inhæng e) pæk kimmu-hako siphe hamnita.

3. Pak Sensæng in Hankuk mal il kalichiko siphe hæ yo?
   Ne, pæk kalichiko siphe hamnita.

4. Chwe Sensæng in khæphi lil masiko siphe hæ yo?
   Ne, pæk masiko siphe hamnita.

5. Kim Sensæng in tampæ lil phiuko siphe hæ yo?
   Ne, pæk phiuko siphe hamnita.

6. Hankuk haksæng i Mikuk hakkyo e taniko siphe hæ yo?
   Ne, pæk taniko siphe hamnita.

7. Haksæng i Hankuk mal il yensip-hako siphe hæ yo?
   Ne, pæk yensip-hako siphe hamnita.

8. Ce si ka lëtiyo lil titko siphe hæ yo?
   Ne, pæk titko siphe hamnita.

Q. Response Drill

Tutor: Kim Sensæng in Yæøe lil kalichiko siphe hamnikka?

Student: Aniyo, kalichiko siphe haci anhæ yo.

1. Ki yæca ka kikkæng e kako siphe hamnikka?
   'Does Mr. Kim want to teach English?'
   'No, he doesn't (want to teach).'</n   Aniyo, kako siphe haci anhæ yo.

2. Ki chinku ka hyuka lil patko siphe hamnikka?
   Aniyo, patko siphe haci anhæ yo.

3. Chwe Sensæng in khæphi lil masiko siphe hamnikka?
   Aniyo, masiko siphe haci anhæ yo.

4. Hankuk haksæng til i Mikuk hakkyo e taniko siphe hamnikka?
   Aniyo, (Mikuk hakkyo e) taniko siphe haci anhæ yo.
5. Geinsi Sŏmsŏng i Mikuk tesa ka
tweko siphe hamnikka?
6. Kī salam i mal il mule pokpo siphe
hamnikka?
7. Mikuk yengsa ka Mikuk e tola kako
siphe hamnikka?
8. Ge ai ka Yangse chŏk il ilkko siphe
hamnikka?

Aniyo, (Mikuk tesa ka) tweko siphe
haci anhe yo.
Aniyo, mule pokpo siphe haci anhe
yo.
Aniyo, tola kako siphe haci anhe
yo.
Aniyo, ilkko siphe haci anhe yo.

R. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal i elyępimnita.
Kilehk man, cemî issimnita.
Student: Hankuk mal i elyępći man,
cemî issimnita.

1. Hankuk mal il pəœımnita. Kilehcı
man, swipći anhsimnita.
2. Na nın pœ lo kamnita. Kilehcı
man, Kim Sŏnsŏng in kīcha lo
kamnita.
3. Pihsŏngki ka ttenımnita. Kilehcı
man, ppesi nin tashımnita.
4. Ge nin papımnita. Kilehcı man,
talin salam in pappći anhsımnita.
5. Hankuk mal il ale tıtsımnita.
Kilehcı man, ilkći mot hamnita.
6. I kilim il cohabımnita. Kilehcı
man, phek pissımnita.
7. Haksŏng i manhsımnita. Kilehcı
man, sŏnsŏng in ępımnita.
Kilehcı man, ki yecă nin oci
anhsımnita.
9. Pak Sŏnsŏng in Hankuk inhŏng e
kimnu-hamnita. Kilehcı man,
puncuhacı anhsımnita.

Korean is difficult. However, it's
interesting.'

Korean is difficult but it is
interesting.'

Hankuk mal il pęșći man, swipći
anhsımnita.
Na nın pœ lo kacı man, Kim Sŏnsŏng
in kīcha lo kamnita.
Pihsŏngki ka ttenaci man, ppesı nin
tashımnita.
Ge nin pappći man, talin salam in
pappći anhsımnita.
Hankuk mal il ale tıtoći man, ilkći
mot hamnita.
I kilim il cohaıaci man, phék
pissımnita.
Haksŏng i manhći man, sŏnsŏng in
ępımnita.
Nal mata ki yecă lil kitaıći man,
ki yecă nin oci anhsımnita.
Pak Sŏnsŏng in Hankuk inhaıng e
kimnu-haci man, puncuhaci anhsımnita.

245
UNIT 9

10. Il e cəmī ka issimnita. Kilehci man, hal il i phək manhsimnita.

Il e cəmī ka issci man, hal il i phək manhsimnita.

S. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Kicha ka ohu e ttenammnita.
Student: Ohu e ttenal kicha ka issimnita.

'A train is leaving in the afternoon.'
'There's a train which will leave in the afternoon.'

Onil ol haksæng i issimnita.
Ohu e mannal chinku ka issimnita.
Sicak-hal il i issimnita.
Thal ppesı ka issimnita.
Tanil hakkyyo ka issimnita.
Ilkil Hankuk mal chəek i issimnita.
Cip ese kitalil yecə ka issimnita.
Han-si e tahil kicha ka issimnita.

T. Completion Exercise

Tutor: Hankuk mal il alyepci man,
Student: Hankuk mal il alyepci man,

1. Yanghwa lil cohahaci man,
2. Sikàn i əpsci man,
3. Hankuk mal il pəucí man,
4. Kicha ka ttenaci man,
5. Pihængki nin tahci man,
6. Ki yecə lil mannaci man,
7. Hakkyo e tanici man,
8. Yocım kom puncuhaći man,
9. Hankuk mal il ale titci man,
10. Onil hal il i issci man,
11. Cikim chinku lil kitalici man,
12. Mikuk ese salko siphci man,
13. Hankul il ilkci mot haci man,
14. Na nin Mikuk salam icens man,
15. Onil mom i com aphici man,

U. Combination Drill

Tutor: Kicha nin ttenasse yo. Ppesi
nin tahasse yo.
Student: Kicha nin ttenassko, ppesi
nin tahasse yo.

1. Ce nin Yenge lil paewe yo. Ceimsi
nin Hankuk mal il kongpu-hae yo.
2. ece Hankuk insik il makkesse yo.
   Onil in Cunguk insik il makkesse
   yo.
3. Na nin Hankuk yanghwa lil cohahae
   yo. Miss Chwe nin Ilpon
   yanghwa lil pokol siphe hae yo.
4. Na nin puncuhe yo. Ce chinku nin
   sikan i manhi issse yo.
5. Taehek pyengwen in kakkawse yo.
   (The University hospital is near.)
   Cungang Topokwan in com mele
   yo.
   (The Central Library is a
   little far.)

'The train has left. The bus has arrived.'
'The train has left and the bus has arrived.'

Ce nin Yenge lil paako, Ceimsi nin
Hankuk mal il kongpu-hae yo.
ece Hankuk insik il makkessko, onil
in Cunguk insik il makkessse yo.

Na nin Hankuk yanghwa lil cohahako,
Miss Chwe nin Ilpon yanghwa lil
pokol siphe hae yo.
Na nin puncuhako, ce chinku nin
sikan i manhi issse yo.
Taehek pyengwen in kakkapko, Cungang
Topokwan in com mele yo.
EXERCISES

1. Tell Miss Choe: (Once in Formal Polite and once in Informal Polite Speech)
   a. that you want to see Korean movies.
   b. that you are practicing Korean now.
   c. that you are not free now.
   d. that you don't understand Korean well.
   e. that you have lots of things to do.
   f. that you are busy all the time.
   g. that you have a friend to meet this afternoon.
   h. that you can't go out tonight.
   i. that you were waiting for Miss Brown at that time.
   j. that learning a language is not interesting.
   k. that you have many letters to write.
   l. that you cannot finish the work by 4 o'clock.
   m. that you go to see the Korean movies occasionally.
   n. that American movies are shown at the International Theatre twice a month.
   o. that you don't want to go out frequently.
   p. that your girl friend doesn't want to take a walk.
   q. that the students were eating in the dining hall.
   r. that you cannot come out now.
   s. that the children cannot come in the room now.
   t. that you cannot go into the military (service).
   u. that your wife cannot go up the building on foot.
   v. that you are coming up the street.
   w. that there are many students but not many teachers.
   x. that German is easy and Korean is hard.
   y. that you want to go out to see movies but you don't have time.
   z. that the housing is expensive and is not good.
   z1. You cannot go back to School now.
   z2. Your Korean friend came back from the U.S.
2. You ask Miss Brown:
   a. what she wants to see.
   b. what she would like to do today.
   c. where the American movies are being shown.
   d. how she likes (or how it is) living in Seoul.
   e. how long she is going to stay in Korea (or in Washington).
   f. if she can go out with you tonight.
   g. if she wouldn't go dancing on the coming Saturday.
   h. if she goes for food shopping everyday.
   i. if she likes sports.
   j. if she doesn't want to sightsee downtown.
   k. if she can't wait for you.

Miss Brown answers:
   'I'd like to see your new car.'
   'I want to stay home.'
   'They are being shown at the Central Theatre.'
   'Not too bad.'
   'About three or four years.'
   'I'd like to but I cannot go out tonight.'
   'I'm sorry but I'll be busy that day.'
   'No, twice a week.'
   'Yes, I do very much.'
   'I have already done some sightseeing downtown.'
   'Why not. I'll wait for you.'
제 10 과 시내구경

먼저
가고 싶습니까?

1. 김 : 어디에 먼저 가고 싶습니까?

2. 스미스 : 다방에 먼저 들릅니다.

누구
(누구) 만날 사람

3. 김 : 누구 만날 사람이 있습니까?

커피 한 잔
마시면
마셨으면 좋겠습니다.

4. 스미스 : 커피 한 잔 마셨으면 좋겠습니다.

가면

5. 김 : 먼저 시내를 감시다. 시내에 가면 좋은 다방이 많이 있었습니다.

이부근

6. 스미스 : 이부근에는 다방이 없어요?

있어요
그리 좋지 않습니다.

7. 김 : 이부근에 다방이 없어요도 그래 좋지 않습니다.
UNIT 10. Going Around the Town

BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

Kim first; above all
do you want to go

Where do you want to go first?

Smith Let's stop by a tearoom first.

Kim anybody; somebody; who?
somebody to meet

Are you meeting anyone? ('Do you have anyone to meet?')

Smith a cup of coffee
(if [I] drink
(if [I] drank, [it]’ll be nice)

I’d like to have a cup of coffee.
('If I drank a cup of coffee, it would be nice.\')

Kim if [we] go

Let’s go downtown first. There are
good tearooms downtown. ('If [we] go downtown there are a lot of tearooms.\')

Smith this area; this vicinity

Aren’t there any tearooms in this area?
8. 스미스: 여기에서 시내까지 얼마나 멀니까?

아주
걸어서

9. 김: 아주 가깝습니다. 걸어서 십 오 분 점
걸립니다.

버스나 전차
다닙니다

10. 스미스: 버스나 전차는 다니지 않습니까?

합승

11. 김: 왜요? 버스, 전차, 택시, 그리고 합승도
있습니까.

그것들
그(것들) 중에서
어느 편
제일
편리
편리합니다
제일 편리합니다

12. 스미스: 그(것들) 중에서 어느 편이 제일 편리합니까?
isse to

kili cohci anhsonnita

7. I pukan e tapang i isse to, kili cohci anhsonnita.

Kim

Kim

even though there are; there are but...

[It] is not so good

[Yes], there are [some], but they are not very good.

elma na

elma na memnikka

sinwkkaci

8. Yeki esse sinwkkaci elma na memnikka?

Smith

Smith

how; how much

how far is [it]?
as far as downtown

How far is downtown from here?

acu

kele se


Kim

Kim

really; very; extremely

on foot

It is very close. It only takes about fifteen minutes to walk.

ppesi na cencha

tanimnita

10. Ppesi na cencha nin tanici anhsonnikka?

Smith

Smith

bus or streetcar

([I] go and come regularly.)

Aren't there any buses or streetcars running?

hapsing


Kim

Kim

jitney

Yes, there are. ([Why?]) There are buses, streetcars, taxes and even jiteys.
바쁘눌다
가장 바쁘눌다
바쁘고 편리합니다

13. 김: 합승이 가장 바쁘고(가장) 편리합니다.

자주
앞마다 자주
다니는 가요

14. 스미스: 예, 그렇습니까? 합승은 앞마다 자주
다니는 가요?

شرlosure: 한 번
변잡습니다

15. 김: 대개 심오 분에 한 번 있지만, 아직과
저녁에는 좀 변잡습니다.
12. Ki (kès til) cung ese Ѐn phyen
    i cell phyëlli-hamnitka?

   Smith
   they; those (things)
   among them; among those
   which side; which way
   number one
   convenience
   [it]'s convenient
   [it]'s most convenient

   Which is the most convenient (among
   them)? (Among those things which
   one is the most convenient?)

   Kim
   [it]'s fast; [it]'s quick
   [it]'s fastest
   [it]'s fast and convenient

   ppailmnita
   kacang ppailmnita
   ppaliko phyëlli-hamnitka

13. Hapsing i kacang ppaliko, (kacang)
    phyëlli-hamnitka.

   Smith
   cacu
   alma na cacu
   taninin ka yo

   Kim
   A jitney is the fastest and the
   most convenient.

   frequently; often
   how often?
   does [it] run?

   14. Ne, kilëhsinnikka? Hapsing in
    alma na cacu taninin ka yo?

   Smith
   Is that right? How often do the
   jitneys run?

   Kim
   every fifteen minutes ('once
   at 15 minutes!')
   [it]'s crowded

   They usually run every fifteen
   minutes but they are rather
   crowded in the morning and in the
   evening.
UNIT 10  
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogue.)

1. Mannal 'first', 'ahead', is an adverb which occurs before verbs and denotes priority for the following inflected expressions. Mannal followed by a pause also occurs as a sentence adverb, meaning 'in the first place', 'above all'.

3. Nuku mannal salam i issimmikka? 'Are you meeting somebody?' ('Is there anybody to meet?') ends in a rising intonation with a stress on the first syllable of mannal.

4. Khephi han can masyassimyan cohkessimminta. ('If [I] drank a cup of coffee, [it] will be good.') occurs with or without a pause after the -(i)myan form. The pattern -(a, e)ssimyan cohkessimminta, which is the -(i)myan form with the past tense suffix plus the verb coh- in the future tense, is used to express the desire of the speaker or the addressee (See Grammar Note 1).

6. Pukin 'vicinity' is a post-noun which, together with the preceding noun, makes a noun phrase:
   
i pukin 'this area', 'this vicinity'
   hakkyo pukin 'the vicinity of the school'

9. Acu 'very', 'extremely' is an adverb which occurs before description verbs or other adverbs, and denotes the extreme degree of the following inflected expressions. Kole se 'on foot' is an adverbial phrase. Kole is the infinitive of the verb kal- 'to walk'; se is a particle. (We will learn more about the particle se later.) Kole se here should be memorized as it is as the Korean equivalent of the English phrase 'on foot'.

12. Til is a post-noun which occurs after a countable nominal and denotes plurality. Til does not occur after a numeral expression and/or a numeral + counter. In other words, if the nominal is specified by number, til is not used. Cung is a post-noun which occurs in the following types of adverbial phrases.
(a) Name of time + cung + e 'during' + the name of time
   Il-wel cung e
   'in January'
   'during January'
   onil cung e
   'within today'
   kimnyen cung e
   'in this year'
   'within this year'
(b) Countable Noun + cung + ese 'among' + Countable Noun
   hakkyo til cung ese
   'among the schools'
   nala cung ese
   'among the countries'

15. Pencap-ha-ta 'is crowded' is an intransitive verb which may be preceded by
    a place name or a mode of transportation as the subject or topic of the
    sentence.
    Kil i pencap-hamnita.
    'The street is crowded.'
    Kikoang i pencap-hwe yo?
    'Is the theatre crowded?'
    Kyothong i pencap-hamnita.
    'There is a traffic jam.'

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -myen/Imyen 'if (when) X does something', 'if (when) X is such and such'

   The inflected form ending in -(1)myen (or simply the -(1)myen form) which
   may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression. The
   honorific and/or tense suffixes may occur in the -(1)myen form; -myen is added
   to a stem ending in a vowel and -imyen to a stem ending in a consonant. The
   -(1)myen form indicates that the condition or time of the action or description
   takes place for the following inflected expression. Examples:

   Pi ka omyn, cip e isskesse yo.
   'If it rains, I will be home.'
   Hanksuk e kamyen, Saul ese kimmu-
   'If I go to Korea'
   'When I go to Korea'
   'I'd like to
   hako sipshimnit.
   work in Seoul.'

   Wosington e omyn, ce cip e to
   'If you come to Washington, come to
   ose yo.
   my house, too.'

   Remember that the pattern -(a,e)somyen cohkessimnit. ('If [I] did..., [it] will
   be good.') is used to express the speaker's wish or desire.
2. **Infinitive + to 'even though', 'although',**

In Unit 5 we learned that the particle **to** after a nominal means 'also', 'too', 'even'. **To** occurs not only after nominals but also after a small number of inflected forms. Most Korean particles occur after nominals, but note that there also is a small class of particles which occur after other classes of words (e.g. inflected words). The construction **Infinitive + to**, followed by a pause occurring before another inflected expression, denotes concession to the following inflected expression. The tense suffixes may occur in the Infinitive which precedes to. Compare **Infinitive + to** with the construction **-ci man 'but'** for its meaning. Note that the pattern **Infinitive + to + cohsimnikka?** / **Inf. + to + kwonchanhsimnikka?** ('Even if [I] do..., is it o.k.?') is used to get permission or consent from the addressee. In English the pattern 'May I...?' is usually used as the equivalent of the above Korean pattern. The usual 'yes' response to **Infinitive + to + cohsimnikka?** is **Ne, Infinitive + to + cohsimnita. 'Yes, you man...'.** 'No' response is either **-ci masipsiyo** or **-ci anhun kas i cohkessimnita.**

(See Grammar Notes, Unit 11.) Examples:

- **Sine e tapang i issi to, kil1 cohci anhsimnita.**
  - 'Even though there are tearooms, they are not very good.'

- **Pi ka wa to, hakkyo e kakese yo.**
  - 'Even if it rains, I will go to school.'

- **Ceo yesa l1 han peh manassse to, ilim il molimnita.**
  - 'Although I met her once I don't know [her] name.'

- **Hwesa ka com mese to, kele se il-hale tanimnita.**
  - 'My office is a little far, but I go to work on foot.'

- **Kyosil ese khephi l1 masie to cohsimnikka?**
  - 'May I drink coffee in the classroom?'

3. **Cell** / **Kacang** / 'the most___'

The adverb **cell** (or its equivalent **kacang**) occurs before a verbal, noun-modifier word or another adverb, and denotes the superlative degree of the following expression. Compare:

- (a) **Hapsing i phyelli-hamnita.**
  - 'Jitney is convenient.'

   **Hapsing i to phyelli-hamnita.**
   - 'Jitney is more convenient.'

   **Hapsing i {kacang} phyelli-{cell} hamnita.**
   - 'Jitney is most convenient.'
(b) yeppin yeça
   te yeppin yeça
   ceil { yeppin yeça
   kacang} yeppin yeça

(c) Ceimsi ka Hankuk mal il cal hamnita.
   Ceimsi ka Hankuk mal il te cal hamnita.
   Ceimsi ka Hankuk mal il cal hamnita.

  'a) pretty woman'
  'prettier woman'
  'the prettiest woman'
  'James speaks Korean well.'
  'James speaks Korean better.'
  'James speaks Korean best.'

4. Particle na/ina

 Na occurs after a nominal ending in a vowel; ina after a nominal ending in a consonant. Na/ina occurs in the following constructions:

(a) Nominal 1 + na/ina + Nominal 2 'N 1 or N 2', 'either N 1 or N 2'
    Between two nominals na/ina denotes selection of one of the two, N 1 or N 2.

   Yanphil ina mannyenphil il cusipsiyo.
   Onil ina mail i cohsimnita.
   Walyoil ina Hwayoil e tola osipsiyo.

   'Give me a pencil or pen.'
   'Either today or tomorrow is O.K.'
   'Please come back either Monday or Tuesday.'

(b) Question Nominal + na/ina = adverbial phrases

   nuæs ina
   nuku na
   once na
   ati na
   elm na
   elm na cacu

   'anything'
   'anything'
   'anytime'
   'anywhere'
   'how much'
   'how often'
(c) **Nominal + na/ina**, followed by an inflected expression, denotes *choice* of the nominal among others for the following inflected expression.

Onil in yænghwa na pole kapsita.

'Let's go to see, say, movies.'

Khæphi ka epsimyeon, hongcha na hal kka yo?

'If they don't have coffee, shall we have, say, black tea?'

Ca, onil in kukuæng ina kaci yo.

'Say, how about going to a show today.'
DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

1. Mçeko tapang e tillipsita.
2. Mçeko nyo samusil e tillipsita.
3. Mçeko Kukuce Upyeonkuk e tillipsita.
4. Mçeko hakkyo chækkang e tillipsita.
5. Mçeko Chungkuk imsikcam e tillipsita.
7. Mçeko pakmulkwæn e tillipsita.
8. Mçeko kyongchælsa e tillipsita.
9. Mçeko Seul Koting Hakkyo e tillipsita.
10. Mçeko pæyangwen e tillipsita.
11. Mçeko tosaekwan e tillipsita.
12. Mçeko yakpeng e tillipsita.

Let's stop by a tearoom first.
Let's stop by my office first.
Let's stop by the International Post Office first.
Let's stop by the campus bookstore first.
Let's stop by a Chinese restaurant first.
Let's stop by Seoul University first.
Let's stop by the museum first.
Let's stop by the police station first.
Let's stop by the Seoul High School first.
Let's stop by the hospital first.
Let's stop by the library first.
Let's stop by the drugstore first.
Let's stop by the zoo first.
Let's stop by the church first.

B. Substitution Drill

1. Mannal salam i issimnikka?
2. Hal il (1) issimnikka?
3. Pol yeonghwa (ka) issimnikka?
4. Tillil tapang (1) issimnikka?
5. Sal kea (1) issimnikka?
6. Ilkil chæk (1) issimnikka?
7. Masil khephi (ka) issimnikka?
8. Tanil hakkyo (ka) issimnikka?
9. Kitalil salam (1) issimnikka?
10. Kukyang-nal te (ka) issimnikka?

Are you meeting anyone? ('Do you have anyone to meet?!')
Do you have any work to do?
Are there any movies to see?
Is there a tearoom to stop by?
Is there anything to buy?
Do you have a book to read?
Is there any coffee to drink?
Is there a school for you to attend?
Are you waiting for anyone? ('Do you have anyone to wait for?!')
Is there any place for sightseeing?
C. Substitution Drill

1. Kyŏphi han can masŏsimmun cohkessimnita.
   I'd like to have a cup of coffee. ('[It]’ll be nice if [I] drank coffee.'

2. ᴍakkyo e kasimnun cohkessimnita.
   I'd like to go to school.

   I'd like to meet James.

4. Tapang e tollasimnun cohkessimnita.
   I'd like to stop by a tearoom.

5. ᴍanghwa līl pwaassimnun cohkessimnita.
   I'd like to see a movie.

6. Tapang i issessimnun cohkessimnita.
   I wish there were tearooms.

7. Kim sensamg i wassimun cohkessimnita.
   I wish Mr. Kim came.

8. Onil ttensimnun cohkessimnita.
   I'd like to leave today.

9. Ŝeul ṭeakkyo e tanassimnun cohkessimnita.
   I'd like to attend Seoul University.

10. Pulmane mal il pawassimnun cohkessimnita.
    I'd like to study French.

11. Hankuk il kuyoung-hassimnun cohkessimnita.
    I'd like to see Korea.

12. Cip i kakwassimnun cohkessimnita.
    I wish my house were near.

13. Cip kapse i ssassimnun cohkessimnita.
    I wish the rent were cheap.

D. Substitution Drill

1. Sŏn e cohin tapang i manhi issŏ yo.
   There are many nice tearooms downtown.

2. Ŝeul e cohin ᵪakkyo ka manhi issŏ yo.
   There are many good schools in Seoul.

3. Hankuk e cohin pawkhwacŏn i manhi issŏ yo.
   There are many good department stores in Korea.

4. Nyuvŏk e cohin kikkang i manhi issŏ yo.
   There are many good theatres in New York.

5. Wasingthun e cohin tosŏkwan i manhi issŏ yo.
   There are many good libraries in Washington.

6. Yakt e cohin pakmulkwan i manhi issŏ yo.
   There are many good museums here.

7. Kakt e cohin imsikcŏn i manhi issŏ yo.
   There are many good restaurants there.
8. I pukin e cohin yakpang 1 manhi isse yo.
   There are many good drug stores in this vicinity.
   There are many good high schools in Seoul area.
10. Nyuyok pukin e cohin pyongwen 1 manhi isse yo.
    There are many good hospitals in New York area.
11. Pusan pukin e cohin tehakkyo ka manhi isse yo.
    There are many good universities in Pusan area.
12. Taeku pukin e cohin cunghakkyo ka manhi isse yo.
    There are many good junior high schools in Taeku area.
    There are many good elementary schools in the vicinity of Seoul College.

E. Substitution Drill

1. I pukin e tapang 1 apse yo?
   Aren't there any tearooms in this area?
2. Tosawkwon pukin e imakcam 1 apse yoc?
   Aren't there any restaurants around the Embassy?
3. Gongkecang pukin e kyohwe ka apse yo?
   Aren't there any churches around the station?
4. Yakpang pukin e pyongwen 1 apse yo?
   Aren't there any clinics around the drug store?
5. Kyeongchalse pukin e esphanso ka apse yo?
   Aren't there any courts around the police station?
6. Seoul Tewakkyo pukin e pakmulkwon 1 apse yo?
   Aren't there any museums around Seoul University?
7. Tosawkwon pukin e cunghakkyo ka apse yo?
   Aren't there any middle schools around the library?
8. Pakmulkwon pukin e koting hakkyo ka apse yo?
   Aren't there any high schools around the museum?
9. Pyongwen pukin e sohakkyo ka apse yo?
   Aren't there any elementary schools around the hospital?
F. Substitution Drill

1. Hakkyo pukin e nin tapang i epsimmite.
   There are no tearooms around the school.
2. Pyangwan pukin e nin yakpang i epsimmite.
   There are no drug stores around the hospital.
3. Seoul Tehakkkyo pukin e nin chokpang i epsimmite.
   There are no bookstores around Seoul University.
4. Hwesa pukin e nin insikcwm i epsimmite.
   There are no restaurants around the company.
5. Koting hakkyo pukin e nin sohakkyo ka epsimmite.
   There are no elementary schools around the high school.
6. Sohakkyo pukin e nin cunghakkyo ka epsimmite.
   There are no middle schools around the elementary schools.
7. Pakmulkwun pukin e nin kongwen i epsimmite.
   There are no parks around the museum.
8. Mikuk Teseakwan pukin e nin sangcem i epsimmite.
   There are no stores around the U.S. Embassy.
9. Mikuk Yangsakwan pukin e nin inhaeng i epsimmite.
   There are no banks around the U.S. Consulate.
10. Mikuk Kongsowen pukin e nin uphyenkuk i epsimmite.
    There is no post office around USIS.
   *11. Uphyenkuk pukin e nin omphanso ka epsimmite.
    There are no courts around the post office.

G. Substitution Drill

1. Sinne kkaci elma na moomnikka?
   How far is downtown [from here]?
2. Seoul yek kkaci elma na moomnikka?
   How far is it to Seoul Station?
3. Cungkuk insikcwm kkaci elma na moomnikka?
   How far is it to a Chinese restaurant?
4. Hankuk inhaeng kkaci elma na moomnikka?
   How far is it to the Bank of Korea?
5. Panto Kwesa kkaci elma na moomnikka?
   How far is it to the Bando Company?
6. Kukce Kikcang kkaci elma na moomnikka?
   How far is it to the International Theatre?

264
7. Seoul Twakhkyo tosekwon kkaci alma na mëmnikkka?
   How far is it to the Seoul University library?
8. Twakh Pyëngwën kenmul kkaci alma na mëmnikkka?
   How far is it to the University Hospital building?
9. Cell kaakaun kôngwën kkaci alma na mëmnikkka?
   How far is it to the nearest park?

H. Substitution Drill

1. Hakkyo ka alma na mëmnikkka?
   How far is the school?
2. Cîp 1 alma na kakkapsimnikka?
   How near is the house?
3. Pëhmëngki ka alma na ppealmnikka?
   How fast is the airplane?
4. Cëndha ka alma na nnilmnikka?
   How slow is the streetcar?
5. Hapsing 1 alma na phyëlli-hammikka?
   How convenient is the jitney?
6. Kil 1 alma na pencap-hammikka?
   How crowded is the street?
*7. Muneke ka alma na kantän-hammikka?
   How simple is the problem?
*8. Munpëp 1 alma na pokcap-hammikka?
   How complicated is the grammar?
*9. îyca ka alma na phyenhamnikka?
   How comfortable is the chair?
*10. Kyothong 1 alma na pulphyen-hammikka?
    How inconvenient is the transportation (or traffic)?
*11. San 1 alma na nophsimnikka?
    How high is the mountain?
*12. Kenmul 1 alma na nacimnikka?
    How low is the building?
*13. Tali ka alma na ki(1)mmikka?
    How long (length) is the bridge?
*14. Mul 1 alma na kipshimnikka?
    How deep is the water?
*15. Hakki ka alma na cca(1)psimnikka?
    How short is the semester?
*16. Muke ka alma na mukapsimnikka?
    How heavy is the weight?
*17. Chëkkang 1 alma na kapfpsimnikka?
    How light (weight) is the table?
*18. Pang 1 alma na pa(l)ksimnikka?
    How light is the room?
*19. Kyosil 1 alma na atupsimnikka?
    How dark is the classroom?
*20. Tosi ka alma na nelpsimnikka?
    How large is the city?

265
UNIT 10

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

I. Substitution Drill

1. Skin kaci kele se sip-o pun oom kellimnita.
2. Skin kaci catongcha lo sip-o pun oom kellimnita.
*3. Siwe kaci catongcha lo sip-o pun oom kellimnita.
4. Siwe kaci catongcha lo i-sip-o pun oom kellimnita.
5. Siwe kaci cencha lo i-sip-o pun oom kellimnita.
6. Sinmunsa kaci cencha lo i-sip-o pun oom kellimnita.
7. Sinmunsa kaci cencha lo pan sikan oom kellimnita.
8. Sinmunsa kaci kele se pan sikan oom kellimnita.
9. Mikuk Kongpowen tosekwan kaci kele se pan sikan oom kellimnita.
10. Mikuk Kongpowen tosekwan kaci kele se pan sikan oom twenmita.
11. Mikuk Kongpowen tosekwan kaci kele se pan sikan oom kanmita.

It takes about 15 minutes to walk downtown.
It takes about 15 minutes to go downtown by car.
It takes about 15 minutes to go to the suburb by car.
It takes about 25 minutes to go to the suburb by car.
It takes about 25 minutes by streetcar to go to the suburb.
It takes about 25 minutes by streetcar to go to the newspaper publishing company.
It takes about half an hour by streetcar to go to the newspaper publishing company.
It takes about half an hour on foot to go to the newspaper publisher.
It takes about half an hour on foot to go to the USIS library.
It's about half an hour (walk) to the USIS library.
You [have to] go about half an hour on foot to get to the USIS library.

J. Substitution Drill

1. Fpesi na cencha nin tanici anhsimnikka?
2. Haping ina thwakasi nin tanici anhsimnikka?
3. Pa na piwangki nin tanici anhsimnikka?
4. Kicha na catongcha nin tanici anhsimnikka?
*5. Catongcha na hwamulcha nin tanici anhsimnikka?

Aren't there any buses or streetcars running?
Aren't there any jitneys or taxis running?
Aren't there any ships or airplanes running?
Aren't there any trains or automobiles running?
Aren't there any cars or cargo trains running?
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 10

*6. **Hwamulche na hwamulsen in tanici anhsimnikka?**

*7. **Hwamulsen ina kisen in tanici anhsimnikka?**

*8. **Kisen ina kaekeon in tanici anhsimnikka?**

*9. **Hwamulche na hwamu catongohoh nin tanici anhsimnikka?**

*10. **Kaekeon ina kaeke na nin tanici anhsimnikka?**

*11. **Kiphang (cha) na Wanhaeng (cha) nin tanici anhsimnikka?**

**K. Substitution Drill**

1. **Hapsang 1 cacu tanimnita.**
   - Jitneys run frequently.

2. **Hapsang 1 kakkim tanimnita.**
   - Jitneys run sometimes.

3. **Hapsang 1 nil tanimnita.**
   - Jitneys run all the time.

4. **Hapsang 1 hangsaeng tanimnita.**
   - Jitneys run all the time.

5. **Hapsang 1 once na tanimnita.**
   - Jitneys run any time.

6. **Hapsang 1 manhl tanimnita.**
   - Jitneys run a lot.

7. **Hapsang 1 tteo tteo lo tanimnita.**
   - Jitneys run occasionally.

8. **Hapsang 1 ittalakim tanimnita.**
   - Jitneys run from time to time.

9. **Hapsang 1 han sikan u han pen tanimnita.**
   - Jitneys run off and on.

10. **Hapsang 1 halu e tu pen tanimnita.**
    - Jitneys run every hour.

11. **Hapsang 1 halu e tu pen tanimnita.**
    - Jitneys run twice a day.
L. Substitution Drill

1. אלמה 날 캐우 하핑이 탄림니까?
2. אלא 날 캐우 탑耽 이 씟림니까?
3. אלה 날 캐우 pekhwaeam 이 탄림니까?
4. אלה 날 캐우 yeca chinku lee mannamnikka?
5. אלה 날 캐우 ppesai lee thamnikka?
6. אלה 날 캐우 mom 이 apkimnikka?
7. אלה 날 캐우 hyuka lee patsimnikka?
8. אלה 날 캐우 cip eae swinnikka?
9. אלה 날 캐우 yenghwa lee pomnikka?
10. אלה 날 캐우 yenghwa pole kannikka?
11. אלה 날 캐우 Mikkuk yenghwa lee sangyong-hannikka?
12. אלה 날 캐우 se walsyass ka phiyo-hannikka?
13. אלה 날 캐우 yangpok lee samnikka?

How often do the jitneys run?
How often do you go to a tearoom?
How often do you stop by the department store?
How often do you meet your girl friend?
How often do you take the bus?
How often are you sick?
How often do you take leave?
How often do you stay home (!rest home!)?
How often do you see movies?
How often do you go to see movies?
How often do [they] show American movies?
How often do you need new (dress) shirt?
How often do you buy suits?

M. Substitution Drill

1. Ppesai (ka) pencap-hammnita.
2. Cencha (ka) pencap-hammnita.
5. Tapang (1) pencap-hammnita.
6. Siktang (1) pencap-hammnita.
7. Cengkecang (1) pencap-hammnita.
8. Kil (1) pencap-hammnita.
10. Kyothong (1) pokcap-hammnita.
11. Munce (ka) pokcap-hammnita.
12. Munpap i pokcap-hammnita.

Buses are crowded.
Streetcars are crowded.
Theatres are crowded.
Trains are crowded.
Tearooms are crowded.
Restaurants are crowded.
The station is crowded.
The streets are crowded.
Traffic is heavy.
There is a traffic jam.
Transportation is complicated.
There is a traffic jam.
The problem is complicated.
The grammar is complicated.
N. Combination Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Hankuk e kamnita. Seul ese il-hakessimnita.

Student: Hankuk e kamyen, Seul ese il-hakessimnita.

4. Tapang i opsîmîna. Tœsakwan ese mannakessimnîta.
5. I pûkin e tapang i issimnîta. Tilkessimnîta.
11. Cœncha e salâm i manhàsimnîta. Tœksî lo okessimnîta.

'I go to Korea.' 'I'll work in Seoul.'

'When I go to Korea I'll work in Seoul.'

Kim Sœnsœng il mannamyan, kilekke mœl-hakessimnîta.
Sikan i issimyan, kikcang e kaksimnîta.
Sinœ e kamyen, kœphî lîl masikessimnîta.
Tapang i opsîmyen, tœsakwan ese mannakessimnîta.
I pûkin e tapang i issimyen, tilkessimnîta.
Kîcha ka phyènhamyen, kîcha lo Seul e kaksimnîta.
Hakkyo ka kakkaumyen, kœlê ses kaksimnîta.
Sinœ ka mœlmyen, hapsîng il thaksimnîta.
Seul e tto omyen, Seul Tœhakkyo e tanikessimnîta.
Ppœsî ka phyèlì-hamyen, pœsî lo tœnaksimnîta.
Cœncha e salâm i manhimyen, tœksî lo okessimnîta.
0. Completion Exercise

Tutor: Hankuk e kamyen,

Student: Hankuk e kamyen, S'eul ese il-hakessimmita.

1. Sikan i issimyen,
2. Sine e kamyen,
3. Tapang e tillimyen,
4. Tapang i issimyen,
5. Chinku il manammyen,
6. Hakkyo ka epsimyen,
7. Kicha il thamyen,
8. Onil ye ki ese tt'øammyen,
9. Nal i cohimyen,
10. S'eul e cip kaps i pissamyen,
11. Sinøe ka melmmyen,
12. Kø ye cae ka yeppimyen,
13. Cohin Hankuk mal sensøng il chacimyøen,
14. Yøng-Han sacøn il samyøen,
15. Hankuk mal il pøømyøen,
16. Ilpon mal i swiumyøen,
17. Yøøe ka slyøømyøen,
18. Hankuk mal i cøøi issimyøen,
19. Tokil mal il hal su issimyøen,
20. Hankuk e kaci anhømyøen,
21. Khephi il masiko siphimyøen,
22. Neil an pappimyøen,
23. Hankuk mal il alø tillimyøen,
24. Hankuk mal il alø titci mot hamyøen,

'When I go to Korea} 'If I go to Korea} 'When} 'If} I go to Korea I'll work in Seoul.'
P. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: Hankuk mal i olyepci man, omi issimnita.

Student: Hankuk mal i olyowo to, omi isse yo.

1. Sinse e tapang i issi man, cohci anhsimnita.
2. Nal mata hakkyo e kaci man, kongpu-haci anhsimnita.
3. Com pappici man, sinse e kakessimnita.
4. Hankuk mal il ale titci man, mal-haci mot hamnita.
5. Ki salam il kitalici man, oci anhsimnita.
6. Ce yeca lil mannassci man, ilim il molimnita.
7. Sensceng in epscssci man, haksceng in manhasssimnita.
8. HWesa ka malecsic man, kele se tanissimnita.
11. Hankuk mal il peaako siphi ci man, sikan i epsimnita.
12. Seul e kalyeko hac ci man, Hankuk mal il molimnita.

'Korean is difficult but it's interesting.'

'Sinse e tapang i iss to, cohci anhe yo.'

Nal mata hakkyo e ka to, kongpu-haci anhe yo.

Com papp to, sinse e kakesse yo.

Hankuk mal il ale tile to, mal-haci mot hae yo.

Ki salam il kitalye to, oci anhe yo.

Ce yeca lil mannaase to, ilim il molla yo.

'Sensceng in epssse to, haksceng in manhessse yo.'

HWesa ka malsesse to, kele se tanesse yo.

Pihencgi ka phylli-hessse to, com pissasse yo.

Kim Sensceng in Yenge lil mal-hessse to, ssici mot hassse yo.

Hankuk mal il peaako siphe to, sikan i epsse yo.

Seul e kalyeko hae to, Hankuk mal il molla yo.
Q. Completion Exercise (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: I pukin e tapang i isse to, 'Even though there are tearooms in this area,...'
Student: I pukin e tapang isse to, 'Even though there are tearooms in this area, they're not good.'
cohcí anhsimnita.

1. Hankuk mal i slyëwæ to,
2. Nal mata Hankuk mal il pëwæ to,
3. Yëngø lil ale tile to,
4. Pihængki ka phyëll lique to,
5. Sensæng in apsæ to,
6. Ce yeæa lil manasse to,
7. Hakkyo ka meæ to,
8. Hankuk mal il pëwko siphæ to,
9. Seoul e kalyëko hæ to,

R. Response Drill

Tutor: Cip e ka to cohsimnikka?
'May I go home? ('Is it all right even if I go home?!')
Student: Ne, ka to cohsimnita.
'Yes, you may (go).'

1. I chæuk il ilke to cohsimnikka?
Ne, ilke to cohsimnita.
2. Sensæng cip e tille to cohsimnikka?
Ne, tille to cohsimnita.
3. Sensæng e cha lil tha to cohsimnikka?
Ne, tha to cohsimnita.
4. Ce kílim il pwa to cohsimnikka?
Ne, pwa to cohsimnita.
5. Yëkí ese tangsin il kitalie to cohsimnikka?
Ne, yokí ese kitalie to cohsimnita.
6. Onil ttëna to cohsimnikka?
Ne, onil ttëna to cohsimnita.
7. Kyosil ese khæphi lil masye to cohsimnikka?
Ne, masye to coohsimnita.
8. Onil cip ese swie to cohsimnikka?
Ne, swie to cohsimnita.
9. Mikuk yængwa lil pwa to cohsimnikka?
Ne, pwa to cohsimnita.
10. Hankuk mal lo mal-hæ to cohsimnikka?
Ne, Hankuk mal lo mal-hæ to cohsimnita.
S. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor: I chok i pissamnikka?
Student: Ne, i chok ceil pissamnita.

1. Hankik mal i ulyopsinnikka?
2. Hapsing i phyelli-hamnikka?
3. Kim Sensaeng i (Hankuk mal il) cal kalichimmikka?
4. Pihangki ka ppalimmikka?
5. Cencha ka nilimmikka?
6. Hapsing i cacu tanimmikka?
7. Seoul i khin tosi imnikka?
8. Ce yeca lil coahammikka?
9. Yong-Han sacen i philyo-hamnikka?

T. Response Drill

Tutor: Musi ceil phyelli-hamnikka?
Student: Hapsing i kacang phyelli-hamnita.

1. Nuka ceil Yango lil cal hamnikka?
2. Oni mal i ceil ulyopsinnikka?
3. Mikuk ese oni tosi ka ceil khimmikka? /Nyuyok/
4. Musin catongcha ka ceil pissamnikka? /Khyatalak/
5. Hankuk ese eti e Mikuk salam i ceil manhi samnikka? /Seoul pukin/
7. Oni phyen i ceil nilimmikka? /Cencha/

'Is this book expensive?'
'Yes, this (book) is the most expensive.'

Ne, Hankuk mal ceil ulyopsinnita.
Ne, hapsing ceil phyelli-hamnita.
Ne, Kim Sensaeng i (Hankuk mal il) ceil cal kalichimmita.
Ne, pihangki ceil ppalimmita.
Ne, cencha ceil nilimmita.
Ne, hapsing ceil cacu tanimmita.
Ne, Seoul ceil khin tosi immita.
Ne, ce yeca ceil coahammita.
Ne, Yong-Han sacen ceil philyo-hamnita.

'What is most convenient?' /jitney/
'A jitney is the most convenient.'

Kim Sensaeng i Yango lil kacang cal hamnita.
Ssolyen ceil ulyopsinnita.
Nyuyok ceil kacang khimmita.
Khyatalak ceil kacang pissamnita.
Seoul pukin ceil kacang manhi samnita.
Kicha ceil kacang ppalimmita.
Cencha phen ceil kacang nilimmita.
8. sini lir cell mance kuyang-hako sipsiwinnitka? /sini kongwen/  
9. eni phyen i cell cacu tanimnikka? /hapsing/

Sini kongwen il kacang mance kuyang-hako sipsiwinnitka.  
Hapsing (phyen) i kacang cacu tanimnikita.

U. Expansion Drill

Tutor: I chek i pissamnità. /Yang-Han sacen/  
Student: Yang-Han sacen cung ese i chek i kacang pissamnità.

1. Mikuk i cohsimnita. /nala til/  
2. Mikuk catongcha ka phyenhamnità.  
   /yelo nala cha/  
3. Seoul i kin tosi imnità. /Hankuk e yelo tosi/  
4. Kicha ka ppalimnità. /catongcha wa ppesi wa kicha/  
5. Cungkuk imsik il cohahamnità.  
   /yelo kaci imsik/  
6. Hankuk mal i slyepsimnità. /mal til/  
7. Cho Sensëng i cal kalichimnità.  
   /sensëng til/

'Wht, this book is expensive.' /English-Korean dictionary/  
'Of the English-Korean dictionaries this book is the most expensive.'

Nala til cung ese Mikuk i kacang cohsimnità.  
Yelo nala cha cung ese Mikuk catongcha ka kacang phyenhamnità.  
Hankuk e yelo tosi cung ese Seoul i kacang kin tosi imnità.  
Catongcha wa ppesi wa kicha cung ese kicha ka kacang ppalimnità.  
Yelo kaci imsik cung ese Cungkuk imsik il kacang cohahamnità.  
Mal til cung ese Hankuk mal i kacang slyepsimnità.  
Sensëng til cung ese Cho Sensëng i kacang kalichimnità.

EXERCISES

1. Kim Sensëng asks you what you want to see first. Propose that you go together to see the following places:

   a. Seoul University  
   b. Seoul High School  
   c. a girls' middle school  
   d. the nearest elementary school  
   e. a library  
   f. a hospital  
   g. the zoo  
   h. a museum  
   i. a drug store  
   j. the central police station  
   k. the British consulate  
   l. a church  
   m. the International Post Office  
   n. the dormitory
2. Mr. James asks:

a. how far the school is from your house.
b. how long your car is.
c. how long it takes to come to work.
d. how high the mountain is.
e. which is slower, the bus or the train.
f. which way is the most convenient of them all.
g. if Korean is complicated.
h. if you came to school early /ilcoki/.
i. if the chair is very heavy.
j. if the chair is comfortable.
k. if the room is dark.
l. if the Han bridge is longer than the other one.
m. if the street is always crowded.
n. if the Korean grammar is simple.
o. if you want to study Korean.
p. if he may get off in front of the building.
q. if he may use your car.
r. if he may ask you a question.
s. if he may drink coffee in the classroom.

You respond:

"It's about three miles."
"It's 5 and a half meters (long)."
"It usually takes 25 minutes by car."
"It is low but is about 850 feet high."
"The bus is a little slower than the train."
"The airplane is the most convenient of them all."
"No, it's not so complicated and the writing is simple."
"No, I came a little late /nicke/.
"It's quite heavy but it is lighter than a table."
"It's not bad."
"No, it's quite light."
"No, it's shorter."
"No, not always. Only in the morning and afternoon."
"No, it's very complicated."
"I have no time even though I would like to."
"Yes, you may."
"I'm sorry but you can't."
"Yes, please do."
"Yes, please if you want to."

3. Find out the following information at the travel bureau:

a. if there are any passenger ships running between Inchon and Pusan.
b. if so, whether they are steamships.
c. if any cargo ships go to Tokyo.
d. if it is more expensive to ship /puchi-ta/ things by airplane.
e. how often express trains are running between Seoul and Pusan, and how much is a round-trip ticket /wangpok phyo/.
f. how much longer it takes to go to Suwon by a local train.
제 11 과  시내 구경 (계속)  

(대화 A )

타코 갑시다

1. 스미스 : 시내까지 합승을 타고 갑시다.

하지 닿시다

2. 김 : 버스나 합승은 타지 닿시다. 지금은 합승에도 사람이 많습니다.

거여 갑시다

3. 스미스 : 그림. 거여 갑가요?

4. 김 : 택시를 탑시다. 여보세요! 택시!

가 드릴가요

5. 운전수 : 여기 탑시요. 어디로 가 드릴가요?

중앙
중앙 우편국
가 주십시요

6. 김 : 서울 중앙 우편국으로 가 주십시요.

거의
다
거의 다
내립니다
UNIT 11. Going Around the Town (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

thako kapsita
1. Sin-ne kkaci hapsing il thako
   kapsita.
   Smith
   (‘let’s ride and go’) Let’s take a jitney downtown.

thaci mapsita
2. Ppæsi na hapsing in thaci mapsita.
   Cikim in hapsing e to salam i
   manhsimnita.
   Kim
   let’s not ride
   Let’s not take the bus or a jitney.
   Jitneys are (also) crowded at
   this time (of day).

kælæ kamnita
3. Kílem, kælæ kal kka yo?
   Smith
   [I] walk; [I] go on foot
   Shall we walk, then?

4. Tækkssi lil thapsita.
   Kim
   Let’s take a taxi.

   (... to a taxi)

   Yapose yo! Tækkssi!
   Hey! Taxi!

   ka tilil kka yo
5. øæø thasipsiyo. øti lo ka
   tilil kka yo?
   Driver
   (shall I go (for you)?) Please get in. Where shall I take
   you? (‘Where shall I go for you?’)

   cungang
   Cungang Uphyanук
   ka cusipsiyo
   Kim
   center; central
   Central Post Office
   please for (for me)
6. Sø’l Cungang Uphyanук ilo ka
   cusipsiyo.
   Please go to the Seoul Central Post
   Office.

277
7. 운전수: 중앙 우면국에 거의 다 왔습니다. 어디에서 내리시겠습니까?

앞문
가까이에서
내려 주십시오.

8. 김: 앞문 가까이에서 내려 주십시오.

(대화 B)

잡간
들뜸 일

9. 김: 저는 잡간 우면국에 들뜸 일이 있습니다. 선생은 먼저 담담으로 가시겠어요?

10. 스미스: 무슨 일이 있습니까?

편지
부침다
부쳐야
부쳐야 합니다

11. 김: 에, 편지 한 장 부쳐야 하겠어요.

12. 스미스: 저도 같이 갈까요?

기타는 것
기타는 것이 좋겠습니다

13. 김: 선생은 담담에서 기타리는 것이 좋겠습니다.
(... a little later)

Driver

kèl
kèl ta

mølimnitā

almost; nearly
most; almost; almost all;
almost everyone

[I] get off; [it] falls down

We've almost come to the Central Post Office. Where would you like to get off?

Kim

aš mun/ammun/
kakkai ēse
mølye cusipsiyo

the front door
near; at the near place
don't drop [me] off

Please drop [us] off at the front door.

(...They got off the taxi.)

Kim

camkan
tillil il/tilyilil/

a little while
something to stop by for

I have some business at the post office for a moment. Would you [like to] go to the tearoom first?

Smith

What do you have [to do]?

Kim

phyønci
puchimnitā
puchie ja

letter
[I] mail

(['only if [I] mail']; ['only when [I] mail'])

[I] have to mail; [I] must mail

Well, I have to mail a letter.

phyønci han cang puchie ja

nakessimnitā.
아마
시간이 걸릴 것입니다.

14. 아, 시간이 좀 걸릴 것입니다.

나무
늘습니다. 늘습니다.
늘지 마십시오.

15. 스미스: 그럼, 너무 늘지 마십시오.

굴
돌아 익니다.

10. 김: 아니오, 곧 돌아 오겠습니다.

이따라

17. 스미스: 그럼, 이따라 만납니다.
12. Ce tc kathi kal kka yo?  Shall I also go with you?


Kım
kitalinin kês ('the waiting thing!')
kitalinin kês i cohkessimnita
you'd better wait ('that you wait will be good!')

14. Ama, sikan i kellil kês imnita. perhaps; probably

Kim
ama
it will take time

sikan i kellil kês imnita

15. Kilen, nemu nicci masipsiyo.

Smith
too

nemunitsi

[it]'s late; [it] delays

niccinitsi

don't be late; don't be long

nicci masipsiyo

16. Aniyô, kot tola okesse yo.

Smith
too

kot

Don't be too long, then.
tola omnita

Kim
soon; immediately

16. Aniyô, kot tola okesse yo.

[I] come back

Kim

17. Kilen, itta mannapaitsa.

Smith

itta

later; after a while

Kilen, itta mannapaitsa.

See you in a few minutes, then.
NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers)

1. 3. Thako kapsita. ("Let's ride and go.") is a fixed expression used in contrast to Kelo (se) kapsita "$Let's go on foot." Thako ka- with or without specifying a mode of transportation before it (as an object) is used to denote going by some means of transportation (e.g. car, taxi, bus, streetcar, etc.)

5. sti lo ka tilil kka yo? ("Where shall I go for you?") is the politer equivalent of sti lo ka cul kka yo?. The verb cu- or its politer equivalent till- is used as an auxiliary verb. (See Grammar Note 2.)

6. Cungang 'central', 'center' occurs either as a determinative or a free-noun. As a determinative it forms a noun phrase with the following noun; as a free-noun it denotes geographical location. Compare (a) and (b):

(a) Cungang Kikcang
    Cungang Cengkecang
    'Central Theatre'
    'Central Station'

(b) Sine cungang e samnita. [I] live in the center of the city.

7. Kei 'almost', 'most of them' and kei ta 'almost (all)', 'most of all' both occur either nominals or adverbials. Kei ta is a two-word phrase. As a nominal, either one of them occurs in the subject, topic or object position in a sentence.

8. Nool- 'to get off', 'to descend' is an intransitive verb which may precede a place or transportation name + ese. Tha- 'to ride', 'to get on' is synonymous with nool- (See Notes on Dialogues 14, Unit 7.) The verb phrase nool cu- 'to drop somebody off' occurs as a transitive verb phrase which may precede a direct object with or without a place or transportation name + ese. The synonymous verb for nool cu- is either them- or thawa cu-, both of which mean 'to give someone a ride' or 'to load'. Kakka! 'near!', 'at the near place!', 'the near place' occurs either as an adverb or a noun. The antonym for the adverb kakka! is mooli 'far away'.
14. *An¹* 'perhaps', 'probably' occurs as a sentence adverb which is usually followed by either an inflected form with the suffix *-kess-* in it or the construction *(i)l kəs i*. It denotes the speaker's presumption for the probable action or description of the subject or topic in the sentence.

15. *Nam¹* 'too' is an adverb which, without being followed by a pause immediately before verbals, noun-modifier words, or other adverbs, denotes excessive degree of the following descriptive expressions.

16. *Kot¹* 'soon', 'right away', 'immediately' which may be followed by a pause occurs as a sentence adverb. It denotes immediate time for the following inflected expression.

17. *Itta¹* 'later', 'after a while' which may be followed by a pause, occurs as a sentence adverb, and denotes later point of time on the same day for the following inflected expression. The antonym of *itta¹* is *akkə¹* 'a little while ago' which is also a sentence adverb.

**GRAMMAR NOTES**

1. *-ci + ma(l)-*

We learned in Unit 4 that the *ci* form plus the verb *anh-* was used to negate the verb in the *ci* form in a statement or question sentence. Remember that *anh-* does not occur alone but is always preceded by the *ci* form without a pause. Like *anh-* the verb *ma(l)-* does not occur without being preceded by the *ci* form. *-ci + ma(l)-* is used to indicate negation of the verb in the *ci* form in either propositional or imperative sentences. Note that in the construction *-ci + anh-* tenses and/or levels of speech may be generated in the verb *anh-* but in the construction *-ci + ma(l)-*, tense suffixes do not occur in the inflected form of the stem *ma(l)-*: the verb *ma(l)* takes only *(i)psita* and *(i)sipsiyo* endings in Formal Polite Speech, and the infinitive form of *ma(l)-* is *male*, making the informal polite speech present form *ma³e yo*. Compare:

**GROUP 1**

a. Hänkuçe lo (mal-)hapsita.
   Hänkuçe lo (mal-)haci mapsita.
   'Let's speak in Korean.'
   'Let's not speak in Korean.'

b. Kæn kapsita.
   Kæn kaci mapsita.
   'Let's go on foot.'
   'Let's not go on foot.'
c. Kyosil ese tampoe (lil) phiupsisita.  'Let's smoke in the classroom.'
Kyosil ese tampoe (lil) phiuci mapsita.  'Let's not smoke in the classroom.'

GROUP 2

a. I cheok il ilkisipsiyo.  'Read this book.'
I cheok il ilkci masipsiyo.  'Don't read this book.'
b. Hankuk mal lo mal-hasipsiyo.  'Speak in Korean.'
Hankuk mal lo mal-haci masipsiyo.  'Don't speak in Korean.'
c. Kimchi lil mokisipsiyo.  'Eat Kimchi.'
Kimchi lil mokci masipsiyo.  'Don't eat Kimchi.'

2. Infinitive + cu-
In Unit 7, we were introduced to a verb phrases (i.e. infinitive + auxiliary verb). The verb cu- preceded by an infinitive without a pause occurs as an auxiliary verb. As an independent verb cu- means 'to give', and the construction Infinitive + cu- which may be preceded by a Personal Nominal + {ske hanhe} 'to +

Personal Nominal' means literary something like 'do and give to someone'. But the auxiliary verb cu- is generally used either to denote 'rendering service to someone' by the subject or topic, or simply to mean nothing but to make the speech politer in an imperative sentence. The politer or honorific equivalent of cu- is an irregular form tili- which occurs also either as an independent verb or as an auxiliary verb. Observe the following examples:

1. a. Cheok il ilkisipsiyo.  'Read the book.'
b. Cheok il ilke cuisipsiyo.  'Please read the book.'
c. Cheok il na eke ilke cuisipsiyo.  'Please read the book {for} me.'

2. a. Kim Sønsæng i khëphi lil sassimnita.  'Mr. Kim bought coffee.'
b. Kim Sønsæng i khëphi lil sa cuassimnita.  'Mr. Kim bought [me] coffee.'
c. Kim Sønsæng i ce eke khëphi lil sa cuassimnita.  'Mr. Kim bought me coffee.'

'Mr. Kim bought coffee for me.'
3. a. Ce yeca ka Yange lil kalichessimnita.
   'That woman taught English.'

   b. Ce yeca ka Yange lil kalichie cuessimnita.
   'That woman taught [me] English.'

   c. Ce yeca ka na hanthe Yange lil kalichie cuessimnita.
   'That woman taught me English.'

4. a. Sensæng kwa kathi kal kka yo?
   'Shall I go with you?'

   b. Sensæng kwa kathi ka tilil kka yo?
   'Shall I go with you (for you)?'

   c. Ne, na wa kathi ka cusinsiyo.
   'Would you like me to go with you?'

   'Yes, please go with me.'

3. Particle ya

Ya belongs to a small class of particles which occur without a pause immediately after inflected forms (e.g. Infinitives). Infinitive + ya occurs in the following two constructions:

a. Infinitive + ya + ha— 'must...!', 'have (or has) to...'

   Infinitive + ya followed by the verb ha— without a pause is used to denote obligation of the action or description of the verb in the infinitive for the subject or topic in the sentence. In this construction the tenses and/or levels of speech is generated only in ha—. Examples:

   Wekyokwan in wekuk mal il ale ya hannita.
   'Diplomats must know foreign languages.'

   Ce to Hankuk mal il pæwe ya hæ yo.
   'I have to study Korean, too.'

   Chinku lil manna ya hakesse yo?
   'Do [you] have to meet a friend?'

   Hakkyo e ka ya hassimnita.
   'I had to go to school.'

   Note that the pattern -ci ahhimyan an twennita. (If [one] doesn't do... [it] doesn't become.) is often interchangeably used with Infinitive + ya ha—. Thus, the Yes response to either Infinitive + ya hannita? or -ci ahhimyan an twennikka? is either Ne, Infinitive + ya hannita, or Ne, -ci ahhimyan an twennita. The most usual No response to either of the above questions is Aniyo, -ci anhe to {cohaimnita, kwæchansimnita} 'No, [you] don't have to...!' (Even if [one] does not do... [it]'s O.K.)
b. Infinitive + ya + verbs other than ha- 'only when...', 'only if...', 'must...to...'

Infinitive + ya, which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression, occurs to denote obligatory condition of action or description of the subject or topic for the following inflected expression. In this construction, the tense suffixes may also occur in the infinitive form which precedes ya, while tenses and/or levels of speech are generated in the following inflected expression. Examples:

Hankuk mal il ale ya, il-haki swipsimnita.

'It is easy to work only when [you] know Korean.'

'It you have to know Korean to make it easy to work.'

Ton i issê ya, cha lil sal su issimnita.

'Only if [I] have money, I can buy a car.'

'[I] have to have money to buy a car.'

Chæk kaps i ssa ya, sakesse yo.

'Only if the book is cheap, I will buy it.'

Pam e cal ca ya, kongpu cal hal su issimnita.

'You] have to have a goodnight sleep to study well.'

'Only when [you] sleep well, you can study well.'

Kí ttæ e Seul e issæsse ya, kí kas il pol su issæsil kæs ìmînita.

'Only if [you] had been in Seoul at that time [you] could have seen it.'

'[You] should have been in Seoul at that time to have seen it.'

4. -n/in/nin + kæs

Remember that the Nominalized verb (i.e. the kí form) occurs in a nominal position in a sentence, e.g. subject, topic, object (See Unit 8). Just like the kí form, the phrase -n/in/nin + kæs (which is the present noun-modifier word plus the post-noun kæs) often occurs in the nominal positions. Any English verbal expression which occurs in nominal positions can be compared with the above Korean construction. Observe the following examples:

Wekuk mal il peunin kæs in swipci anhsimnita.

'Learning foreign languages is not easy.'

Oeimsi ka Yæng e lil kælæchinin kæs il amnîta.

'[I] know that James is teaching English.'

Kim Sænsæng e hakkyo e kænæn kæs il pawsæ yo.

'I saw that Mr. Kim was going to school.'
Theksai lil thanin kas i
atthainnikka?
Soul esa sanin kas i cohaamnikka?
"How would you like to take a taxi?"
"Do you like to live in Seoul?"

Note, however, that the expression -n/in/nin kas i coh(kess)aimnita [You] had
better do..! (It (will) be good to do such-and-such! or That [you] do.. will
be good.) occurs as a fixed expression to indicate the speaker's recommendation,
suggestion or wishes.

5. -((i)l) kas i-

We learned about the inflected forms which include the suffix -kess-
(Grammar Note 2, Unit 3). Like the inflected forms including -kess-, the con-
struction -((i)l) kas i- is also used to indicate either the future action or
description, or the speaker's presumption, about the subject or the topic in the
sentence. Study the following formula:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject/Topic</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Denotation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Speaker</td>
<td>-kess-</td>
<td>Speaker's positive intention for the future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Addressee (in a question sentence)</td>
<td>-kess-</td>
<td>Addressee's positive intention for the future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Other than speaker or addressee (in a question sentence)</td>
<td>-kess-</td>
<td>Addressee's opinion or presumption for the future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. Other than speaker or addressee (in a statement sentence)</td>
<td>-kess-</td>
<td>Speaker's presumption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. Speaker</td>
<td>-((i)l) kas i-</td>
<td>Speaker's passive future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. Addressee (in a question sentence)</td>
<td>-((i)l) kas i-</td>
<td>Addressee's passive future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. Addressee (in a statement sentence)</td>
<td>-((i)l) kas i-</td>
<td>Speaker's presumption for the future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h. Other than the speaker or addressee (in a statement sentence)</td>
<td>-((i)l) kas i-</td>
<td>Speaker's belief or knowledge for the future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i. Other than the speaker or addressee (in a question sentence)</td>
<td>-((i)l) kas i-</td>
<td>Addressee's opinion, presumption or knowledge for the future</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that if the subject/topic in the sentence is other than the speaker or
addressee, and if the speaker simply states his knowledge about the action or
description of the subject/topic for the future, the construction -((i)l) kas i-
is usually used instead of the -kess- form. However, -(1)1 kos 1- is also used occasionally to denote the speaker’s presumption about the subject/topic. Compare the following pairs:

a. Onil pi ka okessimnita.  
   Onil pi ka ol kos imnita.  
   'It is going to rain today (I suppose).'
   'It will rain today.'

b. Ki cha ka pissakessimnita.  
   Ki cha ka pissal kos imnita.  
   'That car must be expensive.'
   'That car will be expensive.'

c. Onil Thoyoil ini kka, haksæng  
   til i hakkyo e epskessimnita.  
   Onil Thoyoil ini kka, haksæng  
   til i hakkyo e epsil kos imnita.  
   'Because today is Saturday, I presume there are not students at school.'
   'Because today is Saturday, there (will) be no students at school.'
   'Probably there (will) be no students at school because today is Saturday.'

d. Pak Sensæng i onil ttenakessimnita.  
   Pak Sensæng i onil ttenal kos  
   imnita.  
   'I believe Mr. Park will leave today.'
   'Mr. Park will leave today.'

6. Further Notes on Honorifics

In Unit 3, we noticed that when the subject, topic or the person acted upon in a sentence is honored, the honorific suffix -(1)sì- is added to the verb stem. While most Korean verb stems take -(1)sì- to form honorifics there is a small class or verb stems of which honorifics have irregular shapes. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Honorific or Humble form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ca-</td>
<td>cumusì-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iss-</td>
<td>kyesì-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mok-</td>
<td>capsusi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cu-</td>
<td>tili(sì)-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuk-</td>
<td>tola kasi-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'to sleep'
'to exist'
'to eat'
'to give'
'to die!', 'to pass away (H)'

Remember that the speaker does not honor himself regardless of age, status or other factors. That is, the honorific suffix -(1)sì- should not occur in the verb in a sentence where the speaker himself is the subject, topic or the person acted upon.
DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

1. Sinse kkaci hapsing il thako kapsita.
2. Saul Yak kkaci cencha lil thako kapsita.
3. Cungang Uphyaenkuk kkaci pposi lil thako kapsita.
4. Hankuk inhwang kkaci catongcha lil thako kapsita.
5. Twakwan apn kkaci thwkaei lil thako kapsita.
7. Cungkuk insikcam kkaci cha lil thako kapsita.
8. Yongsakwan pukan kkaci hapsing il thako kapsita.

Let's take a jitney as far as the downtown area.
Let's take a streetcar as far as Seoul Station.
Let's take a bus as far as the Central Post Office.
Let's take a car as far as the Bank of Korea.
Let's take a taxi as far as the front of U.S. Embassy.
Let's take a jitney as far as the International Theatre.
Let's take a car as far as the Chinese restaurant.
Let's take a jitney as far as the vicinity of the consulate.
Let's walk as far as the airport.

B. Substitution Drill

1. Cungang Uphyaenkuk ilo ka cusipsiyo.
2. Cungang Sicang ilo ka cusipsiyo.
3. Cungang Kikcang ilo ka cusipsiyo.
4. Cungang Tosakwan ilo ka cusipsiyo.
5. Cungang Kyangchalsa ilo ka cusipsiyo.
6. Cungang Kongwon ilo ka cusipsiyo.
7. Cungang Pakmulkwan ilo ka cusipsiyo.
8. Saul Sinmunsa ilo ka cusipsiyo.
9. Pihoengcang ilo ka cusipsiyo.
10. Pyangwan ilo ka cusipsiyo.
11. Mun ilo ka cusipsiyo.
12. Gali ilo ka cusipsiyo.

Please go to the Central Post Office.
Please go to the Central Market.
Please go to the Central Theatre.
Please go to the Central Library.
Please go to the Central Police Station.
Please go to the Central Park.
Please go to the Central Museum.
Please go to the Seoul Newspaper Co.
Please go to the airport.
Please go to the hospital.
Please go to the door.
Please go to the seat.
C. Substitution Drill

1. Mun kakkai ese nàllie cusipsiyo.
   Please drop [me] off near the door.

2. Mun yoph ese nàllie cusipsiyo.
   Please drop [me] off beside the door.

3. Inhàng aph ese nàllie cusipsiyo.
   Please drop [me] in front of the bank.

4. Tosokwan twi ese nàllie cusipsiyo.
   Please drop [me] behind the library.

5. Ce kenmul kakkai ese nàllie cusipsiyo.
   Please drop [me] near that building.

6. Pakhwacem olin cook ese nàllie cusipsiyo.
   Please drop [me] on the right side of the department store.

*7. Sopangse wen cook ese nàllie cusipsiyo.
   Please drop [me] on the left side of the fire station.

8. Kyangchalse yoph ese nàllie cusipsiyo.
   Please drop [me] next to the police station.

   Please drop [me] in front of the stationery shop.

10. Cungkuk siktang twi ese nàllie cusipsiyo.
    Please drop [me] behind the Chinese restaurant.

    Please stop behind the Chinese restaurant.

*12. Cungkuk siktang twi ese se cusipsiyo.
    Please stop (or stand) behind the Chinese restaurant.

*13. Cungkuk siktang twi ese sewa cusipsiyo.
    Please park behind the Chinese restaurant.

D. Substitution Drill

1. Uphyenkuk ılo ka cusimyen,
   I would appreciate it if you'd go
   kamsahakessimnita.
   to the post office for me.

2. Hankuk mal il kalichie cusimyen,
   I would appreciate it if you would
   kamsahakessimnita.
   teach [me] Korean.

3. Ce lil Kitalye cusimyen,
   I would appreciate it if you would
   kamsahakessimnita.
   wait for me.

4. Yekí ese nállie cusimyen,
   I would appreciate it if you would
   kamsahakessimnita.
   drop me off here.

5. Ki sącen il poye cusimyen,
   I would appreciate it if you would
   kamsahakessimnita.
   show me the dictionary.
6. Mun il tate cusimyon,  
kamsahakessimmnita.
I would appreciate it if you would 
close the door.

7. Mun il yole cusimyon,  
kamsahakessimmnita.
I would appreciate it if you would 
open the door.

8. Ki chek il pilye cusimyon,  
kamsahakessimmnita.
I would appreciate it if you would 
lend me that book.

9. Calli e anee cusimyon,  
kamsahakessimmnita.
I would appreciate it if you would 
take a seat.

10. Catongcha lil ponx cusimyon,  
kamsahakessimmnita.
I would appreciate it if you would 
send [me] a car.

11. Mun apn ese sa cusimyon,  
kamsahakessimmnita.
I would appreciate it if you would 
stop in front of the door.

E. Substitutuion Drill

1. Camkan uphyəŋkuk e tillil il i 
issimnita.
I have to stop by the post office 
for a few minutes. ('I have some-
thing to stop by the post office 
for.')

2. Camkan chaŋpaŋg e tillil il i 
issimnita.
I have to stop by a bookstore for 
a few minutes.

3. Camkan yakpaŋg e tillil il i 
issimnita.
I have to stop by the drugstore for 
a few minutes.

4. Camkan pyeŋgwon e tillil il i 
issimnita.
I have to stop by the hospital for 
a few minutes.

5. Camkan kyŋgθalaŋg e tillil il i 
issimnita.
I have to stop by the police station 
for a few minutes.

6. Camkan paŋsɔŋkuk e tillil il i 
issimnita.
I have to stop by the radio station 
for a few minutes.

7. Camkan kyohwe e tillil il i 
issimnita.
I have to stop by the church for a 
few minutes.

8. Camkan hwesə e tillil il i 
issimnita.
I have to stop by the office for a 
few minutes.

9. Camkan hwesə e kal il i issimnita.
I have to go (something to go for) 
to the office for a few minutes.

10. Camkan hwesə e haŋ il i issimnita.
I have something to do at the office 
for a few minutes.

11. Camkan hwesə e pol il i issimnita.
I have some business at the office 
for a few minutes.
F. Substitution Drill

1. Sansæng in tapang ese kitalinän kes ı cohkessimnitaita.
   You'd better wait at the tearoom.

2. Sansæng in hakkyo e kanin kes ı cohkessimnitaita.
   You'd better go to school.

3. Sansæng in Yæge lîl kalichinin kes ı cohkessimnitaita.
   You'd better teach English.

4. Sansæng in cîp e isanin kes ı cohkessimnitaita.
   You'd better stay home.

5. Sansæng in hyuka lîl patnin kes ı cohkessimnitaita.
   You'd better take a vacation.

   You'd better take a little rest.

7. Sansæng in ki yeca lîl mananan kes ı cohkessimnitaita.
   You'd better meet her.

8. Sansæng in Ceimsi eke mule ponin kes ı cohkessimnitaita.
   You'd better ask James.

   You'd better stop doing [it].

10. Sansæng in tehak lîl kith-nænin kes ı cohkessimnitaita.
    You'd better finish college.

11. Sansæng in mence ttonanin kes ı cohkessimnitaita.
    You'd better leave first (before me).

12. Sansæng in yeki ese nælinin kes ı cohkessimnitaita.
    You'd better get off here.

13. Sansæng in yeki e cha lîl seunin kes ı cohkessimnitaita.
    You'd better park [your] car here.

G. Substitution Drill

1. (Sansæng in) hakkyo e kaci anhnin kes ı cohkessimnita. [You]’d better not go to school.

2. (Sansæng in) Yæga lo mal-haci anhnin kes ı cohkessimnita. [You]’d better not speak in English.

3. (Sansæng in) ki salam il kitalici anhnin kes ı cohkessimnita. [You]’d better not wait for him.
4. (Sensëng in) ki yanghwa lil poci anhnin kës ñ cohkešimnita.
   [You]'d better not see the movie.
5. (Sensëng in) i catongcha lil saci anhnin kës ñ cohkešimnita.
   [You]'d better not buy this automobile.
6. (Sensëng in) onli tola oći anhnin kës ñ cohkešimnita.
   [You]'d better not go back today.
7. (Sensëng in) yaki esa nêlici anhnin kës ñ cohkešimnita.
   [You]'d better not get off here.
8. (Sensëng in) yaki e cha lil seucì anhnin kës ñ cohkešimnita.
   [You]'d better not park the car here.
9. (Sensëng in) i phyënci lil porëçì anhnin kës ñ cohkešimnita.
   [You]'d better not send this letter.

H. Response Drill

Tutor: Hapsing ìl thal kka yo?
Student: Aniyo, thaci mapsìta.
1. Kële kal kka yo?
   'Shall we walk?'
2. Mun aph esa nêlici kka yo?
3. Hankuk yanghwa lil pol kka yo?
   'Shall we take a jitney?'
   'No, let's not (take).'
   Aniyo, kële kaci mapsìta.
   'No, let's not (walk).'</n
4. Onli cip e issil kka yo?
5. Cëngkëscang ese ki pun il kitalil kka yo?
   Aniyo, kële kaci mapsìta.
   'No, let's not (walk).'
   Aniyo, mun aph esa nêlici mapsìta.
   Aniyo, (Hankuk yanghwa lil) poci mapsìta.
   Aniyo, cip e issil mapsìta.
   Aniyo, (cëngkëscang ese) kitalici mapsìta.
   Aniyo, puchici mapsìta.
   Aniyo, (tapang e) tillici mapsìta.
   Aniyo, (ittë) manncí mapsìta.
   Aniyo, poyë cuci mapsìta.
   Aniyo, cikìm sicak-haci mapsìta.
   Aniyo, swici mapsìta.
UNIT 11

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

I. Response Drill

Tutor: Hapsing il thal kka yo?
Student: Aniyo, hapsing il thaci anhnin kēs i cohkessimnita.

1. Tapang e tillil kka yo?
   'Shall we take a jitney?'
   'No, we'd better not take a jitney.'
   Aniyo, (tapang e) tillici anhnin kēs i cohkessimnita.

2. Ki yeca lil kitalil kka yo?
   Aniyo, (ki yeca lil) kitalici anhnin kēs i cohkessimnita.

3. Sōul e tola kal kka yo?
   Aniyo, (Sōul e) tola kaci anhnin kēs i cohkessimnita.

4. Ppesi lil thako kal kka yo?
   Aniyo, (ppesi lil) thako kaci anhnin kēs i cohkessimnita.

5. Taim cuill e hyuka lil patil kka yo?
   Aniyo, taim cuill e (hyuka lil) patci anhnin kēs i cohkessimnita.

6. Lētiyo lil tillil kka yo?
   Aniyo, (Lētiyo lil) titci anhnin kēs i cohkessimnita.

7. Hankuk mal il pœul kka yo?
   Aniyo, (Hankuk mal il) pœuci anh in kēs i cohkessimnita.

J. Response Drill

Tutor: Cīkīm hakkyo e ka to cohсимниккa?  
Student: Aniyo, kāci masipsiyo.

1. Phōnci lil puχyē to cohсимникkā?
   'May I go to school now?'
   'No, please don't go.'
   Aniyo, puχici masipsiyo.

2. Hapsing il thako ka to cohсимникkā?
   Aniyo, thako kāci masipsiyo.

3. Sensŏng e samusil e tille to cohсимникkā?
   Aniyo, tillici masipsiyo.

4. Sīchŏng aph ešē nēlīs to cohсимникkā?
   Aniyo, (sīchŏng aph ešē) nēlici masipsiyo.

5. Sensŏng il tapang ešē kitaliś to cohсимникkā?
   Aniyo, (na lil) kitalici masipsiyo.

6. Cīp e tola ka to cohсимникkā?
   Aniyo, tola kāci masipsiyo.

7. Cŏkīm swī to cohсимникkā?
   Aniyo, swīci masipsiyo.

8. Cīkīm ttnē to cohсимникkā?
   Aniyo, cīkīm ttnēci masipsiyo.

9. Hankuk mal lo mal-hęe to cohсимникkā?
   Aniyo, Hankuk mal lo mal-hacı masipsiyo.

294
10. Kyosil esse khëphi lil masie to cohësimnikka?

Aniyọ, (kyosil esse khëphi lil)
masicı masipsiyo.

11. Malësim com mule pwa to cohësimnikka?

Aniyọ, mule poci masipsiyo.

K. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Na nïn phyënci lil
puçhikessimnitata.

'I'll mail a letter.'

Student: Na to phyënci lil puchie
ya hë yo.

'I have to mail a letter, too.'

1. Na nïn kicha lil thakessimnitata.

Na to kicha lil tha ya hë yo.

2. Na nïn Mikuk Tësakwan e
tillikessimnitata.

Na to Mikuk Tësakwan e tille ya
hë yo.

3. Na nïn cohın tehakkyo e
tanikessimnitata.

Na to cohın tehakkyo e tanis ya
hë yo.

4. Na nïn Ceimsi lil kitalikessimnitata.

Na to Ceimsi lil kitalíe ya hë yo.

5. Na nïn nãl Seul il ttenakessimnitata.

Na to nãl Seul il ttna ya hë yo.

6. Na nïn nãl mata Hankuk mal ii
yensip-hakessimnitata.

Na to nãl mata Hankuk mal ii
yensip-he ya hë yo.

7. Na nïn conyëk e cip e isskessimnitata.

Na to conyëk e cip e iss ya hë yo.

8. Na nïn khëphi lil masikessimnitata.

Na to khëphi lil masi ya hë yo.


Na to wekyokwan i twëe ya hë yo.

10. Na nïn taim cuil e Seul e tola
okessimnitata.

Na to taim cuil e Seul e tola wa
ya hë yo.

L. Response Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal il paemësë yë?

'Have you studied Korean?'

Student: Ne, (Hankuk mal il) paemë
ya hëmë yë.

'Yes, I had to (study Korean).'

1. Phyënci lil puchiësë yë?

Ne, phyënci lil puchie ya hëmë yë.

2. Kicha lil thakë kaasë yë?

Ne, kicha lil thako ka ya hëmë yë.

3. Cohın tehakkyo e tanisë yë?

Ne, cohın tehakkyo e tanis ya hëmë
yë.

4. Mun aph esse nãlësë yë?

Ne, mun aph esse nãle ya hëmë yë.
5. 김성승이 서울에 편안하게요?
6. 토스케반은 세이미시리리기اذ서요?
7. '세 부산에 돌아 왔어요?
8. 키 푸른 행후성으면서 풀어요?
9. '키 일일 세기써 집는데요?
10. 발레수 혔카리 팔세요?

Ne, (Kim Sŏnseong in Sŏul il) ttaena ya haeše yo.
Ne, (tosekwan esse Geimsi ilil) kitalis ya haeše yo.
Ne, (esse Pusan esse) tola wa ya haeše yo.
Ne, (ki pun in) hakkyo sŏnseong i tteo ya haeše yo.
Ne, (ki il il) sekkaci kkkth-nae haeše yo.
Ne, palse hyuka lil pate ya haeše yo.

M. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)
Tutor: Sin'ne lo kal kka yo?
Student: Sin'ne lo ka tilil kka yo?

1. 천식 il ilkil kka yo?
2. Tapang esse kitalil kka yo?
3. Khephi lil sal kka yo?
4. I cha lil phal kka yo?
5. Hankuk mal il kalilchil kka yo?
6. Kathi cip e issil kka yo?
7. Kil il mule pol kka yo?
8. Ki chaoek il chacil kka yo?
9. Yeki esse naiil kka yo?
10. Kim Sŏnseong il mannal kka yo?

'Shall I go downtown?'
'Do you want me to go downtown?'
'Shall I go downtown (for you)?'
'Would you like me to go downtown (for you)_PI?

Cheoek il ilke tilil kka yo?
Tapang esse kitalise tilil kka yo?
Khephi lil sa tilil kka yo?
I cha lil phala tilil kka yo?
Hankuk mal il kaliche tilil kka yo?
Kathi cip e issse tilil kka yo?
Kil il mule pwa tilil kka yo?
Ki cheok il chaece tilil kka yo?
Yeki esse naiise tilil kka yo?
Kim Sŏnseong il manna tilil kka yo?
N. Response Drill

Tutor: Chōk il ilke tilikesse yo.
Student: Ne, (chōk il) ilke cusipsiyō.

1. Tapang ese kitalie tilikesse yo.
2. Khephi lil sa tilikesse yo.
3. Kil il mule pwa tilikesse yo.
4. Ki chōk il chace tilikesse yo.
5. Cip e isskesse yo. issē tilikesse yo.
6. Hankuk mal il kalichie tilikesse yo.
7. Wen cook ilo ka tilikesse yo.
8. Mikuk Yongsakwan ese nālie tilikesse yo.
9. Onil ohu e samusil e tilla tilikesse yo.

'I will read the book for you.'
'Yes, please read it for me.'

Ne, tapang ese kitalie cusipsiyō.
Ne, khephi lil sa cusipsiyō.
Ne, kil il mule pwa cusipsiyō.
Ne, ki chōk il chace cusipsiyō.
Ne, cip e issē cusipsiyō.

Ne, (Hankuk mal il) kalichie cusipsiyō.

Ne, wen cook ilo ka cusipsiyō.
Ne, Mikuk Yongsakwan ese nālie cusipsiyō.
Ne, onil ohu e samusil e tilla cusipsiyō.

0. Response Drill

Tutor: aṭi lo ka tilil kka yo?
/sichang cook/
Student: Sichang cook ilo ka cusipsiyō.

1. aṭi ese nālie tilil kka yo?
/pākhwacem mun/
2. Muas il sa tilil kka yo? /khephi/
3. eńce sansāng e cip e tilil kka yo? /Suyoi/
4. aṭi ese sansāng il kitalil kka yo? /tosekwan ap/i
5. eńi sinmun il ilke tilil kka yo? /Saul Sinmun/
6. eńce kkaci i il il kkith-nāe tilil kka yo? /mole kkaci/
7. eńi mal il kalichie tilil kka yo? /Cungkuk Mal/
8. Myach-si e tasi wa tilil kka yo?
/tases-si/

'Where shall I go?! /the direction of the City Hall/
'Please go to (the direction of) the City Hall.'

Pākhwacem mun ese nālie cusipsiyō.

Khephi lil sa cusipsiyō.
Suyoi e tilla cusipsiyō.

Tosekwan ap/ e (na lil) kitalie cusipsiyō.
Saul Sinmun il ilke cusipsiyō.

Mole kkaci i il il kkith-nāe cusipsiyō.
Cungkuk Mal il kalichie cusipsiyō.
Tases-si e tasi wa cusipsiyō.
UNIT 11

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

P. Expansion Drill (Use /kê/ ta/ in the proper place.)

Tutor: Uphyeonkuk e wassimnita.
Student: Uphyeonkuk e kê ta wassimnita.

1. Haksæng til i Sêu ese ttoenassimnita.
2. Onil il i kkipith-nassimnita.
3. Hakkyo kal sikan i tweassimnita.
4. Hankuk mal sensæng til iI manassimnita.
5. Salam til i kicha e thassimnita.
6. Céinsi Sensæng in Hankuk mal iI ale títssimnita.
7. Ulì nin Sêu il kupyang-hassimnita.
8. Ai til i cip e tola wassimnita.

Q. Response Drill

Tutor: Sine lo ka tilil kka yo?
Student: Ne, sine lo ka cuse yo.

1. I cheòk il ilke tilil kka yo?
2. Khophì lil sa tilil kka yo?
3. Hankuk mal il kálìchye tilil kka yo?
4. Kil il mule pwa tilil kka yo?
5. Yëki ese nèlya tilil kka yo?
6. Sensæng e cip e tille tilil kka yo?
7. Sensæng il kitalye tilil kka yo?
8. Ki cheòk il chace tilil kka yo?

"Shall I go downtown (for you)?"
"Yes, please (go downtown for me)."
Ne, ilke cuse yo.
Ne, sa cuse yo.
Ne, kálìchye cuse yo.
Ne, mule pwa cuse yo.
Ne, yëki ese nèlya cuse yo.
Ne, tille cuse yo.
Ne, kitalye cuse yo.
Ne, chace cuse yo.

298
R. Response Drill

Tutor: Khapli lil sa tilil kka yo?
Student: (Ne), sa cusimyan komapkessimnita.

1. I chok il ilke tilil kka yo?
2. Hankuk mal il kalichie tilil kka yo?
3. Sensang e cip e tille tilil kka yo?
4. Tansin il kitalie tilil kka yo?
5. Yanphil il chace tilil kka yo?
6. Kil il mule pwa tilil kka yo?
7.Congkocang e kathi ka tilil kka yo?
8. Mun il tate tilil kka yo?
9. Mun il yele tilil kka yo?

'Shall I buy you coffee?'
'I would appreciate [it] if you buy me [coffee].'

Ne, ilke cusimyan komapkessimnita.
Ne, kalichie cusimyan kompakessimnita.
Ne, tille cusimyan kompakessimnita.
Ne, kitalie cusimyan kompakessimnita.
Ne, chace cusimyan kompakessimnita.
Ne, mule pwa cusimyen kompakessimnita.
Ne, kathi ka cusimyen kompakessimnita.
Ne, tate cusimyen kompakessimnita.
Ne, yele cusimyen kompakessimnita.

S. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor: Hankuk mal il ales ya hamnita.
Student: Hankuk mal il ales anhemyen an twennita.

1. Kicha lil thako ka ya hamnita.
2. Yeki eso melie ya hamnita.
3. Mikuk tesa lil kitalie ya hamnita.
4. Mun aph eso memchue ya hamnita.
5. Mun il tate ya hamnita.
6. Catongcha mun il yele ya hamnita.
7. Cali e ance ya hamnita.
8. Phyenci lil ponse ya hamnita.

'I have to know Korean.'
'I have to know Korean. (If I don't know Korean, it does not become.)'

Kicha lil thako kaci anhemyen an twennita.
Yeki eso melici anhemyen an twennita.
Mukuk tesa lil kitalici anhemyen an twennita.
Mun aph eso memchuci anhemyen an twennita.
Mun il tateci anhemyen an twennita.
Catongcha mun il yelci anhemyen an twennita.
Cali e ancci anhemyen an twennita.
Phyenci lil poneci anhemyen an twennita.
T. Response Drill

Tutor: (Sŏnsŏng in) Ceimsi lil kitalie ya hae yo?
Student: Ne, Ceimsi lil kitalici anhimonyen an twe yo.

1. (Sŏnsŏng in) wekuk mal il cal hae ya hae yo?
2. (Sŏnsŏng in) kot tola wa ya hae yo?
3. Catongcha mun il tate ya hae yo?
4. Ki sacen i coha ya hae yo?
5. Yeki ese Sŏnsŏng il kitalie ya hae yo?
6. Nŭil achim e ttena ya hae yo?
7. Cha lil kil yeph e sewe ya hae yo?

'Do you have to wait for James?'
'Yes, I have to wait for James.'
Ne, wekuk mal il cal haci anhimonyen an twe yo.
Ne, kot tola oci anhimonyen an twe yo.
Ne, (catongcha mun il) tatci anhimonyen an twe yo.
Ne, ki sacen i cohci anhimonyen an twe yo.
Ne, yeki ese (na lil) kitalici anhimonyen an twe yo.
Ne, nŭil achim e ttenaci anhimonyen an twe yo.
Ne, (cha lil kil yeph e) seucci anhimonyen an twe yo.

U. Response Drill

Tutor: Onil hakkyo e kaci anhimonyen an twennikka?
Student: Aniyo, (onil hakkyo e) kaci anhe to kwŏnchancha yo.

1. Yeki ese thaci anhimonyen an twennikka?
2. Pyangwan e tillici anhimonyen an twennikka?
3. Kilehke mal-haci anhimonyen an twennikka?
4. iyca e ancci anhimonyen an twennikka?
5. Inchan kkaci kele kaci anhimonyen an twennikka?
6. Tŏnhak kyosu ka tweci anhimonyen an twennikka?

'Do you have to go to school today?'
'No, I don't have to go (to school today).! (Even though I don't go to school, it is O.K.)'
Aniyo, yeki ese thaci anhe to kwŏnchancha yo.
Aniyo, tillici anhe to kwŏnchancha yo.
Aniyo, kilehke mal-haci anhe to kwŏnchancha yo.
Aniyo, iyca e ancci anhe to kwŏnchancha yo.
Aniyo, kele kaci anhe to kwŏnchancha yo.
Aniyo, tŏnhak kyosu ka tweci anhe to kwŏnchancha yo.
V. Combination Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal il ale ya hamnita.
Chinku lil mantil su issimnita.

Student: Hankuk mal il ale ya, chinku
lil mantil su issimnita.

1. Səul e sale ya hamnita. Yele kaci
lil kuyæng-hal su issë yo.

2. Sikan i isse ya hamnita. Sinæ e na
kakessæ yo.

3. Cal swiæ ya hamnita. Taim mal il-
hal su isse yo.

4. Ppesi ka epsæ ya hamnita. Kæle se
il-hale ka yo.

5. Ton i isse ya hamnita. Cha lil
saci yo.

6. Yöngæ lil ale tile ya hamnita. Mal
i cæni isse yo.

[You] have to know Korean. 'I can make friends in Korea.'

[You] have to know Korean to make
friends.' ('Only when you know
Korean you can make friends in
Korea.')

Sœul e sale ya, yæle kaci lil kuyæng-
hal su issë yo.

Sikan i isse ya, sinæ e na kakessæ
yo.

Cal swiæ ya, taim mal il-hal su
isse yo.

Ppesi ka epsæ ya, kæle se il-hale
ka yo.

Ton i isse ya, cha lil saci yo.

Yöngæ lil ale tile ya, mal i cæni
isse yo.

W. Response Drill (the use of næmu)

Tutor: Sœul e kil i pencap-hæ ci yo?

Student: Ne, kilæ yo. Næmu pencap-hæ
yo.

1. Sænææng in yœøe puncuhæ ci yo?
2. I kyoæsil i com copæ ci yo?
3. Hankuk mal i ælyæn mal iæ ci yo?

4. Kim Sænææng i Sœul pukæn iæ cal
æci yo?
5. Onil achim ñænææa ka niææ ci yo?
6. Sœul eæ ñææææ Inchen kkæ ci kcha ka cacu
tænææ ci yo?
7. Sænææng in achim e niææææ ci yo?
8. Yœøe min sikan i pæallæi kæ ci yo?

'The streets in Seoul are crowded,
aren't they?'

'That's right. [They] are too
crowded.'

Ne, kilæ yo. Næmu puncuhæ yo.

Ne, kilæ yo. Com næmu copæ yo.

Ne, kilæ yo. Næmu ælyæn mal iæ
yo.

Ne, kilæ yo. Næmu cal ale yo.

Ne, kilæ yo. Næmu niæææ æ yo.

Ne, kilæ yo. Næmu cacu tanææ æ yo.

Ne, kilæ yo. Næmu niæææ æ yo.

Ne, kilæ yo. Næmu pæallæi ka yo.
X. Response Drill (the use of itta)

Tutor: Cikim ka to cohsimnikka?
Student: Aniyo, cikim kaci masipsiyoo. Com itta kase yo.

1. Cikim puchie to cohsimnikka?
   Aniyo, cikim puchi cohsimnikka. Com itta puchise yo.

2. Cikim sicak-hae to cohsimnikka?
   Aniyo, cikim sicak-haci masipsiyoo. Com itta sicak-hase yo.

3. Cikim tola wa to cohsimnikka?
   Aniyo, cikim tola oci masipsiyoo. Com itta tola ose yo.

4. Cikim nele to cohsimnikka?
   Aniyo, cikim nele cohsimnikka. Com itta nelese yo.

5. Cikim yeki ese Senseong il kitalie to cohsimnikka?
   Aniyo, cikim (na lil) kitalie masipsiyoo. Com itta kitalise yo.

6. Cikim cha e tha to cohsimnikka?
   Aniyo, cikim thaci masipsiyoo. Com itta thase yo.

7. Cikim mun il yele to cohsimnikka?
   Aniyo, cikim yele cohsimnikka. Com itta ye(li)se yo.

8. Cikim mun il tate to cohsimnikka?
   Aniyo, cikim tati cohsimnikka. Com itta tati se yo.

9. Cikim yeki ese nele tiliie to cohsimnikka?
   Aniyo, cikim nele cuci cohsimnikka. Com itta nele cuse yo.

Y. Grammar Drill (the use of kot)

Tutor: Tola osipsiyo.
Student: Kot tola osipsiyo.

1. Ce nin ttenalye ko hamnita.
   Ce nin kot ttenalye ko hamnita.

2. Sicak-hanin kes i cohkessimnita.
   Kot sicak-hanin kes i cohkessimnita.

3. Il il kimantsipsiyo.
   Il il kot kimantsipsiyo.

4. Hal su issimyen, ce cip e tillisipsiyo.
   Hal su issimyen, kot ce cip e tillisipsiyo.

5. I catongcha nin phalci anhkesse yo.
   I catongcha nin kot phalci anhkesse yo.

6. Hankuk mal kongpu lil kimantussimnita.
   Hankuk mal kongpu lil kot kimantussimnita.
7. 키 일 일 키스-날 수 압슴니타.
8. 후케 쿤량 쇼 미륵 양 граж ' 릴 당양-할 케 sommes.
   
2. Response Drill
   Tutor: 김 심영 일 원널 끼다 요?
   Student: 네, 원일 원널 케 sommes.
   아니요, 케 원일 원널 케 sommes.
   
1. 박 심영 일 씽에 이실 끼다 요?
   
2. 핫요 케 알 끼다 요?
   
3. 네일 난 이 코킬 끼다 요?
   
4. 경실 케 코됐사 케 토엘 끼다 요?
   
5. 원일 기 일 이 케 키스-날 끼다 요?
   
6. 기 살람 일 친에 쇼 일 서울 끼다 요?
   7. 미스 브라운 이 헝덕 말 일 타 
      알 틸릴 끼다 요?
   8. 샤간 이 만히 켜릴 끼다 요?
EXERCISES

1. You are in the taxi. Ask the taxi driver to:
   a. go to the airport.
   b. hurry to the International Broadcasting Station.
   c. go a little faster.
   d. go a little slowly /chanchanhi/.
   e. close the window /chang-mun/ on his left.
   f. turn /tol-ta/ left at the next corner /kolmok/.
   g. turn right at the second crossroad /ne-koli/.
   h. tell you when you come to the downtown area.
   i. let you know /allye cu-ta/ if he sees the fire station.
   j. park the car across the street /kil konne/.
   k. stop the car at the gate /tanmun/ of the playground /utongcang/.
   l. wait for you for a little while.
   m. not go too fast.
   n. not take on other passengers.
   o. not stop on the street.
   p. not park on the street.

2. Make short dialogues so that the second party uses the following expressions in his speech:
   a. kale se
   b. thako kamyen
   c. com te ppalli
   d. kakkai ese
   e. camkan man
   f. pol il
   g. tillil il
   h. itta
   i. kot
   j. nemu
   k. ama
   l. kei ta
   m. palsse
   n. acik

3. Tell Mr. Smith that you would appreciate it if he would:
   a. show you the dictionary.
   b. teach you Korean.
   c. give you a ride.
   d. drop you off at the door.
   e. buy you a cup of coffee.
   f. stop the car.
   g. park his car straight.
   h. wait for you.
   i. mail this letter for you.
   j. correct /kochi-ta/ your Korean.
   k. loan you some money.
   l. send you a book.
   m. let you know the time.
   n. come a little early /ilcik1/
4. Tell the following stories to Pak Sensang that:

(a) Messrs. Smith and Kim are going downtown. Mr. Smith wants to stop by a tearoom first. He is not going to meet anyone there, but he'd like to have a cup of coffee. Mr. Kim wants to go downtown first and stop by a tearoom. There are lots of nice tearooms downtown. Even though there are tearooms in this area, they are not so good.

(b) Messrs. Kim and Smith took a taxi and went to the Central Post Office first. They got off near the front door. Mr. Kim had some business to take care of for a while. He had to mail a letter. And it took him a little time. So, Mr. Smith went to the tearoom first and waited there. Mr. Kim came to the tearoom a little later but was not too late.
제 12 과 음식

(대화 A)

배
배가 고픵니까

1. 부탁은 : 나는 좀 배가 고픵니다.

접심
먹으러
접심 먹으러 안 가겠습니까?

접심 시간
 되었습니까
시간이 되었습니까

2. 이 : 벌써 접심 시간이 다 되었습니까?

3. 부탁은 : 예, 접심 먹을 시간입니다. 접심 먹으러 (나) 갑니다.

잡주 싫니까?

4. 이 : 오늘 접심은 무엇을 잡주 싫겠어요?

잡주, 한국 음식
먹어 볼까요?

5. 부탁은 : 오늘은 한식을 먹어 볼까요?

아무 것이나
음식집
UNIT 12. Eating and Drinking

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

Brown

pwe
pwe ka kophimnita

1. Na nin com pwe ka kophimnita.
cemsim
mekile
Cemsim mekile an kakessimnikka?
stomach
I'm hungry

I'm a little hungry.
lunch
to eat
Wouldn't you like to go to eat (lunch)!

Lee

cemsim sikan
sikan 1 tewessimnita

2. Pelsse cemsim sikan 1 ta
tewessimnikka?
lunch hour
time is up ('time became!)
Is it already lunch time? ('Has the lunch hour already become?!

Brown

3. Ne, cemsim mekil sikan imnita.
Cemsim mekile (na) kapsita.
Yes, it is (lunch time). ('It's time to eat lunch.) Let's go (out) for lunch.

capsusimnikka

Lee

do [you] eat (honored)?

4. Onil cemsim in mues il capsusikesse yo?

What will you have for lunch today?

Brown

Hankuk 1msik!
Hansik
mek pol kka yo

Korean food
shall we try eating?

5. Onil in Hansik il mke pol kka yo?

Shall we try Korean food today?

307
6. 이 : 저는 아무 것이나 좋습니다. 어떤 것은 음식점이 있어요?

가까운 곳, 가까운 메
한식점

7. 부탁군 : 예, 여기에서 가까운 곳에 한식점이 하나 있습니다.

음식

8. 김 : 거기 음식은 어떡습니까?

 잘 합니다, 잘 만듭니다

9. 부탁군 : 예, 거기 음식을 잘 합니다.

사나기

 언제든지

10. 그리고, 음식 맛도 사나기가, 언제든지 사람이 많습니다.

(대화 B)

주문
들례움니가, 드시겠습니까

11. 웨이트리스 : 아직 주문 안 하셨습니까?
무엇을 드시겠어요?

메뉴

12. 이 : 메뉴를 좀 보여 주세요. 한식은 무엇이 있어요?
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

Unit 12

Lee

amu kes (ina)

imsikcem

6. Cē nīl amu kes ina cohсимнita.
  ǝti e cohın imsimcem i issǝ yo?

anything; whatever it may be

restaurant

Anything is O.K. Do you know of a

good restaurant? ('Is there a good

restaurant somewhere?')

Brown

kakkaun te )
kakkaun kos)

Hansikcem

some place near

Korean restaurant

Yes, there is a Korean restaurant

near here. ('At the nearby place

from here, there's one Korean

restaurant.')

Lee

imsik

8. Kǝki imsik in etтещимниткка?

food (cooked)

How is the food there?

Brown

cal hamннita

cal manti(li)mnнita

9. Ne, kǝki imsik il cal hamннita.

([they] do well)

([they] make well)

Oh, the food is good.

because [it]'s cheap

anytime; all the time

And because it ('food price') is

cheap, it is always crowded.

Dialogue B

(.... in the restaurant ....)

Waitress

cumun

tilkessimnikka

tilkessimnikka )

ti(li)sikessimnikka)

11. Acik cumun an hасyessimnikka?

Mues il tillsikessǝ yo?

order

[I] lift; [I] have ('eat; drink')

will you have ('eat; drink')?

Haven't you ordered, yet? What

would you like to have, sir?
13. 웨이트래스: 여터 가지가 있습니까. 화식을 잡수시력면
불고기와 골탕, 그리고 냅면 등이 있습니다.

14. 이: 선생은 무엇을 하시게요?

불고기하고 밥

15. 부마운: 나는 불고기하고 밥을 먹겠습니다.

해 보겠습니다

16. 이: 저는 골탕을 해 보겠습니다.

또
가져 익니다

17. 웨이트래스: 다른 것은 또 무엇을 가져 올까요?

목
마음입니다
목이 마음입니다
마실 것

18. 이: 아, 나는 목이 마음입니다. 마실 것은 무엇이
있지요?

마주
사이다
Hansik in mues i issyo?

Lee


Waitress

if you are going to eat
(a kind of barbecue beef)
('fire-meat')
(soup with rice and meat)
(cold noodle) and so on

We have several kinds. If you're going to have Korean food, there are Pul-koki, Komthang, Nangmyen and other things.

14. Sessang in mues il hasikesse yo?

Lee

What will you have?

Brown

(cooked) rice; meal
Pul-koki and rice

I'll have Pul-koki and rice.

15. Na nin Pul-koki hako pap il makkessimminta.

Lee

I'll try Komthang.

16. Ge nin Komthang il hee pokessimminta.

Waitress

also; besides; again
[I] bring (thing)

Would you like anything else? ('What other things shall I also bring?')

17. Talin kes (in) tto mues (11)
kace ol kka yo?

Waitress

kace omnita

Also; besides; again
[I] bring (thing)

Would you like anything else? ('What other things shall I also bring?')
19. 네, 고객님: 매주와 사이타가 있습니다.

- 수주
- 수령
- 수량
- 공

20. 이: 그럼, 매주 두병과 한주간 공을 좀 가져 오세요.
mok
malimnita
mok i malimnita
masil kes

18. A, na nin mok i malimnita. Masil kes in mues i issci yo?

Lee

neck; throat
[it] dries
[I'm thirsty ('throat dries')
something to drink

waitress

beer
(a kind of soft drink)

19. Mokcu wa Saita ka issimnita.

Lee

ancu

relish [taken with wine];

snacks

pyeng

bottle

pyeng man

bottle only; just bottle

khong

beans

20. Kilom, mokcu tu pyeng kwa ancu
lo khong 11 com kace ose yo.

Well, bring us just two bottles of
beer and some beans for snacks.
NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. Pe ka kophimnite. ('Stomach is empty.') is the Korean equivalent of 'I'm hungry'. The intransitive verb kophi- may be preceded by pe 'stomach' as its subject or topic, but never by other nominals.

2. Sikan i (ta) tweassimnite. ('Time (all) became.') is a fixed expression which is used as the equivalent of 'time is up'. The intransitive verb twe-, occurring usually in the past tense form /tweassimnite/ after a point in time, denotes arriving at a certain point in time, and after a period of time denotes elasping of a certain period of time. Compare:

   Han-si ka tweassimnite.  'It is one o'clock now.'
   Han sikan i tweassimnite. 'It has been an hour.'

4. Capsusi- is the honorific or polite equivalent of mak- 'to eat'.

6. Amu 'any-' is a determinative which occurs before (a nominal +) na/ina, making an adverbial phrase: amu kes ina 'anything', amu salam ina 'anybody', amu insik ina 'any food', amu tte na 'any time', amu nal ina 'any day', amu cip ina 'any house', amu na 'anyone'. The construction amu + Nominal + na/ina = Question Nominal + na/ina (See Grammar Note 4, Unit 10). -cam is a bound form which occurs as a part of certain place nouns, meaning 'store' or 'shop': sangcam 'store', pekhwacam 'department store', insikcam 'restaurant', Hansikcam 'Korean restaurant', etc.

7. Both te 'place' and kos 'place' are synonyms and both are post-nouns. However, te occurs only after noun-modifier words, whereas kos occurs after either determinatives or noun-modifier words. Compare Group 1 with Group 2:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group 1</th>
<th>Group 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cohin te</td>
<td>'a good place'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pissan te</td>
<td>'an expensive place'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kongpu-hanin te</td>
<td>'the place of studying'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanin te</td>
<td>'a living place'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9. In *Kekki imnik il cal hamnita* ('[There] they do food well.'), *cal hamnita* is the substitute for *cal mant(il)imnita*. ('[They] make well.')

11. *ti(l)-* 'to lift', 'to hold' is either a transitive or an intransitive verb. When the situation is clear, with or without being preceded by the name of food and/or beverage, *ti(l)-* is used as a substitute for *mek-* 'to eat', or *masi-* 'to drink'.

13. *Ting* 'and so forth!', 'etc.' is a post-noun which occurs after two or more nominals. It singles out the preceding nominals to be the subject, the topic or the object for the following inflected expression.

14. *Sensang lin* *muas il hasikessa yo?* ('[What will you do?]') in an eating and/or drinking situation is used as a substitute for *Muas il makkessa yo?* 'What will you eat?' or *Muas il masikessa yo?* 'What will you drink?'. This is like the English expression, *What will you have?* *Ha-* and *ti(l)-* are interchangeably used in such a situation.

17. The principal verb stem *kaci-* in the phrase *kace o-* 'to bring' means 'to possess', 'to have', 'to hold', or 'to take'. Observe the following verb phrases:

- *kace o-* = *kacik o-* 'to bring [something]' ('to have and come!')
- *kace ka-* = *kacik ka-* 'to take away [something]'
- *talio c-* = *taliko c-* 'to bring [someone]'
- *talio ka-* = *taliko ka-* 'to take [someone]'

315
18. *Mok i malîmnita.* ('Throat is dry.') is the Korean equivalent of 'I'm thirsty.' The noun *mok* means either 'throat' or 'neck'. The verb *mal-* is either an action verb or a description verb, meaning 'to dry' and 'to be dry' respectively.

19. *Saita* is a kind of soft drink which is commonly used in Korea during warm seasons. The taste of it is similar to that of Seven-ups.

**GRAMMAR NOTES**

1. *-(1)ni kka* 'because...', 'since...'

   The inflected form ending in *-(1)ni* plus *kka* which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression. The ending *-(1)ni* is added to a verb stem, or to a verb stem plus other suffixes: *-ni* to a stem ending in a vowel and *-int* to a stem ending in a consonant. The construction *-(1)ni kka* denotes the cause or basis of the action or description of the verb in the *-(1)ni* form for the succeeding inflected expressions. Examples:

   - *Cip i kakkauni kka, kele se il-haê omîita.*
     'I come to work on foot because my home is near.'
   - *Ton i âpsini kka, na kacl anhksesê yo.*
     'Because I don't have money, I won't go out.'
   - *Hankuk mal il mal-hani kka, Hankuk ese il-hakì phyelli-hamînita.*
     'Because I speak Korean, it is very convenient to work in Korea.'

   Note: In the above construction *kka* may be dropped with the same meaning.

2. *-(1)lyamyn* 'if [you] are going to...', 'if [you] intend to...'

   The inflected form ending in *-(1)lyamyn* which may be followed by a pause denotes the conditional desire or intention of the subject for the future for the following inflected expression. The ending *-(1)lyamyn* may be added to a verb stem with or without the honorific suffix, but with no tense suffixes. Examples:

   - *Wekyokwan i twelyamyn, wekuk mal il cal hê ya hamînita.*
     'If [you] intend to be a diplomat, [you] have to speak foreign languages.'
   - *Hankuk mal il cal halyamyn, Yêngê lil ssici anhÎn kës i cohkessîmnita.*
     'If [you] are going to speak Korean well, [you] 'd better not use English.'

316
Mikuk yanghwa lil polyomyon,  
Kukse Kikang ilo kapsita.  
'If you want to see American movies, let's go to the International Theatre.'

Note: -lyaman is added to a vowel stem and -ilyaman to a consonant stem.

3. Infinitive + po-

The verb po- preceded by an infinitive without a pause occurs as an auxiliary verb. The construction Infinitive + po- literally means something like 'does something and see', but the denotation of the auxiliary po- is 'try doing something to see the result'. Some verb phrases of this construction have unique meanings and the two verbs (i.e. principal and auxiliary verbs) are inseparable from each other. Thus, each verb phrase of this kind should be memorized as a unit. Examples:

mule po-ta  'inquires'
tola po-ta  'looks back'
hilkia po-ta  'steers'
pala po-ta  'looks over' (from the distance)
hye po-ta  'tries (doing)'
manna po-ta  'tries meeting'
al po-ta  'finds out'
chista po-ta  'looks up to', 'beholds'
ipe po-ta  'tries on (clothes)'
make po-ta  'tries (eating) food'
tile ka po-ta  'goes in to see'

4. Particle tinci/itinci

Tinci occurs after a nominal ending in a consonant; itinci after a nominal ending in a vowel. The particle tinci/itinci which is synonymous with na/ina can be interchangeable only in the following two constructions (See (a) and (b) of Grammar Note 4, Unit 10).

(a) Nominal 1 + tinci/itinci + Nominal 2 = 'N1 or N2', 'either N1 or N2'
hakkyo tinci cip  'either school or house'
Yange tinci Tokile  'either English or German'
onil itinci ngil  'either today or tomorrow'

(b) Question Nominal + tinci/itinci = adverbial phrase
mues itinci  'anything'
stri tinci  'anywhere'
ence tinci  'any time'
nuku tinci
myechil tinci

'result'
'result'

5. **Particle man 'only'**

In Unit 9, we noticed the construction -ci man (i.e. the ci form + the
Particle man) means '-but'.

A nominal X + man occurs as an adverbial phrase for the following inflected
expressions, meaning 'only X' or 'just X'. Examples:

Mokcu tu pyong man kace ose yo.  'Bring [us] just two bottles of
beer.'

Na nin ki yeoa man salang-hamnita.  'I love only her.'

Kim Somsang in nal mata Yenge man
mal-he yo.  'Mr. Kim speaks only English every-
day.'

Ki nal, Kim in opseasko, na man
Tethongyeng il manhase yo.  'Kim was not [there] that day, and
only I met Mr. President.'
DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

1. Camsin makila an kakessimnikka? Wouldn't you like to go to eat lunch?
2. Sinne kuyang-hale an kakessimnikka? Wouldn't you like to go to see around downtown?
3. Capci ilkila an kakessimnikka? Wouldn't you like to go to read magazines?
*4. Sanpo-hale an kakessimnikka? Wouldn't you like to go to take a walk?
5. Mekou masila an kakessimnikka? Wouldn't you like to go for beer?
*6. Sicang pole an kakessimnikka? Wouldn't you like to go for food shopping?
7. Yenghwa pole an kakessimnikka? Wouldn't you like to go to see a movie?
*8. Chum chule an kakessimnikka? Wouldn't you like to go for dancing?

B. Substitution Drill

1. Camsin mekil sikan i ta tweessimnita. It's time for lunch now. ('Lunch time is all up.')
2. Hakkyo kal sikan i ta tweessimnita. It's time to go to school now.
3. Kongpu-hal sikan i ta tweessimnita. It's time for studying now.
4. Kicha thal sikan i ta tweessimnita. It's time to get on the train now.
5. Ttenal sikan i ta tweessimnita. It's time to leave now.
6. Sicak-hal sikan i ta tweessimnita. It's time to begin now.
7. Pseal ka tahi sikan i ta tweessimnita. It's time for bus to arrive now.
8. Swil sikan i ta tweessimnita. It's time to take a break ('rest') now.
9. (Cam) cal sikan i ta tweessimnita. It's time to go to bed now.
*11. Ilenal sikan i ta tweessimnita. It's time to get up now.
*12. Ii i kkith-nal sikan i ta tweessimnita. It's time to end the work.
*13. Sicang pole kal sikan i ta tweessimnita. It's time to go for food shopping.
UNIT 12

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

C. Substitution Drill

1. Cʻemsim in mues il capsusikesse yo?
2. Achim in mues il capsusikesse yo?
3. Ceyak in mues il capsusikesse yo?
4. Achim siksa nın mues il capsusikesse yo?
5. Ceyak siksa nın mues il capsusikesse yo?
6. Onil cʻemsim in mues il capsusikesse yo?
7. Onil cʻemsim in musin im sik il capsusikesse yo?
8. Onil cʻemsim in Cungkuk im sik il capsusikesse yo?
9. Onil cʻemsim in Yangsik il capsusikesse yo?
10. Onil cʻemsim in Wosik il capsusikesse yo?
11. Onil cʻemsim in Hansik il capsusikesse yo?

What will you have for lunch?
What will you have for breakfast?
What will you have for supper?
What will you have for breakfast ('morning meal')?
What will you have for dinner ('evening meal')?
What will you have for lunch today?
What kind of food will you have for lunch today?
Will you have Chinese food for lunch today?
Will you have Western food for lunch today?
Will you have Japanese food for lunch today?
Will you have Korean food for lunch today?

D. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor: Hansik il mekil kka yo?
Student: Hansik il mekʻo pol kka yo?

1. Hakkyo e kal kka yo?
2. Il il sicak-hal kka yo?
3. Wekuk mal il pʻeul kka yo?
4. Kicha lil thal kka yo?
5. Mʻeukou lil masil kka yo?
6. Samusil e tillil kka yo?
7. Komthang il hal kka yo?
8. Hankuk mal il yensip-hal kka yo?
9. Mun aph ese nʻeul kka yo?
10. Tapang ese ki salam il kitalil kka yo?

'Shall we eat Korean food?'
'Shall we try (eating) Korean food?'
Hakkyo e ka pol kka yo?
Il il sicak-hʻe pol kka yo?
Wekuk mal il pʻeo pol kka yo?
Kicha lil thal pol kka yo?
Mʻeukou lil masie pol kka yo?
Samusil e tille pol kka yo?
Komthang il hʻe pol kka yo?
Hankuk mal il yensip-hʻe pol kka yo?
Mun aph ese nʻeulie pol kka yo?
Tapang ese ki salam il kitalie pol kka yo?
E. Reaction Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor: Hansik il mache pol kka yo?
Student: Ne, Hansik il mache popsita.

1. Hakkyo e tile pol kka yo?
2. Kyosil e tile ka pol kka yo?
3. Cicim sicak-hae pol kka yo?
4. Yeji ese Kim Sensaeng il kitalie pol kka yo?
5. Mun aph ese nalie pol kka yo?
6. Hankuk mal lo mal-hae pol kka yo?
7. Hankuk mekou lil masie pol kka yo?

'Shall we try Korean food?'
'Yes, let's try (Korean food).'

Ne, hakkyo e tile popsita.
Ne, kyo sul e tile ka popsita.
Ne, cikim sicak-hae popsita.
Ne, Yeji ese kitalie popsita.

Ne, mun aph ese nalie popsita.
Ne, Hankuk mal lo mal-hae popsita.
Ne, Hankuk mekou lil masie popsita.

F. Substitution Drill

1. Amu kae ina cohsimnita.
2. Muas ina cohsimnita.
3. Amu salam ina cohsimnita.
4. Sali na cohsimnita.
5. Nuku na cohsimnita.
6. Amu haksang ina cohsimnita.
7. Amu (te na kosa ina)
8. Amu kakoang ina cohsimnita.
10. Sonce na cohsimnita.
11. Ani ral ina cohsimnita.
12. Muun yoil ina cohsimnita.
13. Amu mamsik ina cohsimnita.

Anything is O.K.
Anything is O.K.
Anyone is O.K.
Any place is O.K.
Anybody is O.K.
Any student is O.K.
Any place is O.K.
Any theatre is O.K.
Any time is O.K.
Any day is O.K.
Any day of the week is O.K.
Any kind of food is O.K.
Any weekend is O.K.
G. Substitution Drill

1. Menyu (l1l) com po ye cusipsiyo.
   Please show me the menu.
2. Ki kilm (il) com po ye cusipsiyo.
   Please show me that picture.
3. Nolan syassi (l1l) com po ye cusipsiyo.
   Please show me a yellow shirt.
4. Kkaman yangpok (il) com po ye cusipsiyo.
   Please show me the black suit.
5. Phalan suken (il) com po ye cusipsiyo.
   Please show me a blue towel.
6. Hayan cong1 (il) com po ye cusipsiyo.
   Please show me the white paper.
7. Nan-Yeng sacen (il) com po ye cusipsiyo.
   Please show me a Korean-English dictionary.
8. Menyu (l1l) com po ye cusipsiyo.
   Please show me the menu.
9. Menyu (l1l) com kace osipsiyo.
   Please bring [me] the menu.
10. Menyu (l1l) com kace kasipsiyo.
    Please take (away) the menu.

H. Substitution Drill

1. Na nin muscu l1l masiko sipshimnita.
   I'd like to drink beer.
2. Na nin saita l1l masiko sipshimnita.
   I'd like to drink saita.
3. Na nin mul il masiko sipshimnita.
   I'd like to drink water.
4. Na nin khephi l1l masiko sipshimnita.
   I'd like (to drink) coffee.
5. Na nin khokhoa l1l masiko sipshimnita.
   I'd like (to drink) cocoa.
6. Na nin cha l1l masiko sipshimnita.
   I'd like (to drink) tea (green).
7. Na nin hongcha l1l masiko sipshimnita.
   I'd like (to drink) tea (black).
8. Na nin chan mul il masiko sipshimnita.
   I'd like (to drink) cold water.
9. Na nin alim mul il masiko sipshimnita.
   I'd like to drink ice water.
10. Na nin khokhakholla l1l masiko sipshimnita.
    I'd like to drink coca cola.
11. Na nin yu l1l masiko sipshimnita.
    I'd like to drink milk.
12. Na nin sul il masiko sipshimnita.
    I'd like to have (some) {wine}.
    {liquor}
I. Grammar Drill (Make one sentence out of two as in the example.)

Tutor: Hakkyo ka mmnnta. Catongcha lo kammnta.

Student: Hakkyo ka mën kka, catongcha lo kammnta.

1. I siktang e nin imsik kapsi ssammnta. Salam 1 manhsimnnta.
2. Hankuk e kammnta. Hankuk mal il powe ya hammnta.
3. Yëki e siktang i spsmnnnta. Sincë kkacì kammnta.

'The school is far. I go by car.'

'Because the school is far, I go by car.'

I siktang e nin imsik kapsi ssani kka, salam 1 manhsimnnta.
Hankuk e kani kka, Hankuk mal il powe ya hammnta.
Yëki e siktang i spsni kka, sincë kkacì kammnta.
Mok 1 malnin kka, mëkkcu lîl masikessimnnta.
Cëmsim sikan i ta twenii kka, na nin pe ka kophmnnta.
Na nin Hansik il cohahani kka, Hansikcëmm e kakessimnnta.
Ppesi ka manhcci anhini kka, nil salam 1 manhsimnnta.
Samusîl i cîp ese kakkauni kka, Kim Sensëng in kele se tanimnnta.
Hankuk mal il ani kka, Hankuk salam kwa il-haki cënni issimnnta.

J. Response Drill

Tutor: Wëe catongcha lo kamnikka? /Hakkyo ka mmnnta./

Student: Hakkyo ka mën kka, catongcha lo kammnta.

1. Wëe Hankuk mal il pœumnikka? /Hankuk e kammnta./
2. Wëe nal mata Seoul Tëhakkyo e na kamnikka? /Yënge lîl kalichimnnta./

'Why do you go by car?'/School is far./

'Because the school's far, I go by car.'

Hankuk e kani kka, Hankuk mal il pœumnnta.
Yënge lîl kalichini kka, nal mata Seoul Tëhakkyo e na kamnta.
UNIT 12  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

3. Wæ yælæp-si pan kkaci samusil e wa ya hamnikka. /Yælæp-si pan e il i sicak-hamnitita./
4. Wæ ece nin swiessimnikka? /Mom i apheessimnitita./
5. Wæ Hankuk mal kongpu-haki e kilæhke sikan i kællimnikka? /Hankuk mal i ælyæpsimnitita./
6. Wæ kæle së hakkyo e tanimnikka? /Cip ese mælcı anhæsimnitita./
7. Wæ kilæhke puncuhamnikka? /Yæse nin hal il i manhæsimnitita./
8. Wæ kilæhke pæ ka kophimnikka? /Achim il mælcı anheessimnitita./
9. Wæ ki salam cip e tille ya hamnikka? /Na lil kitaliko issimnitita./

Yælæp-si pan e il i sicak-hani kka, yælæp-si pan kkaci wa ya hamnitita.
Mom i apheessin kka, æce nin swiessimnitita.
Hankuk mal i ælyænni kka, kongpu-haki e kilæhke sikan kællimnitita.
Cip ese mælcı anhænni kka, kæle së hakkyo e tanimnitita.
Yæse nin hal il i manhænni kka, kilæhke puncuhamnitita.
Achim il mælcı anheesin kka, kilæhke pæ ka kophimnitita.
Na lil kitaliko issin kka, ki salam cip e tille ya hamnitita.

K. Completion Exercise (Complete the sentence using the given expression based on your own experiences.)

Tutor: Na nin Hankuk e kani kka,...
Student: Na nin Hankuk e kani kka,
         Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnitita.

1. Hankuk mal in Yængæ wa talini kka,
2. Hankuk mal il cal mal-haci mot hani kka,
3. Na nin mok i mallini kka,
4. Cæmsim sikan i twæessin kka,
5. Hakkyo kal sikan i naæessin kka,
6. Hæpsing i cæl phællihan kka,
7. Na nin Yængæ lil ale tillil su issin kka,
8. Na nin mom i apheessin kka,
9. Sæul il kukuæng-hako siphin kka,
10. Tæm tal e Mikuk e tola kani kka,
L. Response Exercise (Answer the questions based on the reality.)

Tutor:  We Hankuk mal il kongpu-hase yo?
Student:  Hankuk e kani kka, Hankuk mal il Kongpu-hae yo.

Why do you study Korean?
Because I go to Korea, (I'm studying Korean).

1.  We kele sa hakkyo e tanise yo?
2.  We Hankuk mal i kilekhe elyewo yo?
3.  We yose kilekhe pappise yo?
4.  We Hankuk yenghwa lil pokoko siphiswe yo?
5.  We Mikuk Taeakwan e tilla ya hwe yo?
6.  We Thoyoil mata sicang e kase yo?
7.  We cip ese hakkyo kkaci sikan i manhi Kellye yo?
8.  We ese nin cip ese swiessse yo?
9.  We Hankuk mal i philyo-hase yo?

M. Completion Exercise

Tutor:  Hankuk e kalyemyen,
Student:  Hankuk e kalyemyen, Hankuk mal il pewe ya hamnita.

If you're going to go to Korea,
If you're going to go to Korea,
you have to learn Korean.

1.  Hanksik il capsulyemyen,
2.  Ce lil kitalilyemyen,
3.  Catongcha lil phallyemyen,
4.  Mikuk yenghwa lil polyemyen,
5.  Hakkyo e ppsi lo kalyemyen,
6.  Kil il mule polyemyen,
7.  Minku lil masilalyemyen,
8.  Chinku lil manomalyemyen,
9.  Hankuk e ome tongan issilyemyen,
10. Mikuk e tola kalyemyen,
N. Expansion Drill

Tutor: Pul-koki wa Komthang, Nøngmyen
1 issimnita.
Student: Pul-koki wa Komthang, kiliko,
Nøngmyen ting 1 issimnita.
1. Yëngë wa Pullanæ mal, Tokil mal
il kalichimnita.
2. Yëki ese mocë wa kutu, yangpok il phamnita.
3. Pëpsi wa cencha, hapising il taninmita.
4. Hansikcem kwa Yangsikecm, Cungkuk
siktang il pol su issimnita.
5. Pëkhwacem kwa pakmulkwan, sicang il
kukyænghako siphsimnita.
6. Mannyænphil kwa congî, khal il
sasimnita.
7. Cip kaps kwa mulken kaps, imëk kaps
il ale ya hakessimnita.

We have Pul-koki, Komthang and
Nøngmyen.
We have Pul-koki, Komthang and
Nøngmyen and others (so forth).
Yëngë wa Pullanæ mal, kiliko, Tokil
mal ting il kalichimnita.
Yëki ese mocë wa kutu, kiliko,
yangpok ting il phamnita.
Pëpsi wa cencha, kiliko, hapasing
ting il taninmita.
Hansikcem kwa Yangsikecm, kiliko,
Cungkuk siktang ting il pol su
issimnita.
Pëkhwacem kwa pakmulkwan, kiliko,
sicang ting il kukyæng-hako
siphsimnita.
Mannyænphil kwa congî, kiliko, khal
ting il sasimnita.
Cip kaps kwa mulken kaps, kiliko,
imëk kaps ting il ale ya
hakessimnita.

0. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal il pëwuko siphiymen,
hakkyo e tanisipsiyo.
Student: Hankuk mal il pëwulyëmyen,
hakkyo e tanisipsiyo.
1. Hansik il mekkëo siphiymen, Hansikcem
e kasipsiyo.
2. Mikuk mocë lil sako siphiymen,
pëkhwacem e tillisipsiyo.
3. Hankuk sinmun il ilkkëo siphiymen,
il nyæn tôngan ilkkë lil pëwe ya
hamnita.

‘If you want to learn Korean,
(please) go to school.’
‘If you’re going to learn Korean
(please) go to school.’
Hansik il mekoliyæmën, Hansikcem
e kasipsiyo.
Mikuk mocë lil salyëmyen, pëkhwacem
e tillisipsiyo.
Hankuk sinmun il ilkiliyæmyen, il
nyæn tôngan ilkkë lil pëwe ya
hamnita.
4. 서울 친구 칭카 일한그 십히면, 
   한-시 캉치 엽에 카시بسي요.
5. 탕악반 엽세 네稞그 십히면, 
   망세 말-حاسببسي요.
6. 총동차 일하자 십히면, 씇에 
   코럼 콤 포예 콜시بسي요.
7. 히부 일자코 십히면, 탈 말 
   패시بسي요.
8. 테라 키우스 반 톨코 십히면, 
   콜궁루 일 말무 휘야 한mı타.
9. 키플 무레 포예 십히면, 
   총동차 에 네리시스요.
10. 네 일 카타코 십히면, 탕앙 
    에 이시스요.

P. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal il 폐우세서 엽? 
       Hakkryo e 탐시بسي요.
Student: Hankuk mal il 폐우ষ메면, 
         Hakkryo e 탐시بسي요.
1. Hansik il 캡순시스써 엽? 
   Pul-koki ka issinnita.
2. Hankuk e 캐시스써 엽? Mal il 폐웨 
   ya hamnita.
3. 탕앙 e 탐시스써 엽? Na wa 
   츠히 카קט사.
4. Yenghwa il 포예서 엽? Kukce 
   Kikkang i 콜시밈니타.
5. 무주호 일 마시스써 엽? 탕앙 
   e 캐디 마시스요.
6. 웨뇨크반 이 톨시스써 엽? 엽로 
   네라 말 il 폐웨 ya hamnita.
7. 키플 무레 포예서 엽? 총동차 
   에 네리시스요.
8. 무주호 얕고크 il 설시스써 엽? 
   Poתק워섭 e 맘히 iss써 엽.

'Will you study Korean? Go to (or attend) school.'

'If you intend (or are going) to study Korean, go to school.'

Hansik il 캡순으쓰 الكم, Pul-koki 
   ka issimmata.
Hankuk e 캐lsi_Node, mal il 폐웨 ya 
   hamnita.
Tapang e 탐차심요, na wa 츠히 
   캄시타.
Yenghwa il 포으세요, Kukce Kikkang 
   i 콜시밈니타.
무주호 il 마시스ょ요, 탕앙 e 캐디 
   마시스요.
웨뇨크반 이 톨иш요, 엽로 네라 
   말 il 폐웨 ya hamnita.
Tapang e 탐사업요, 총동차 
   에 네리시스요.
무주호 얕고크 il 설사업, poתק워섭 
   e 맘히 iss써 엽.
EXERCISES

A. Tell Mr. Lee that:
1. You are hungry.
2. It is time to eat lunch; time to go to bed; time to get up.
3. It has already been two hours.
4. Any food is O.K. with you.
5. You would like to try Chinese food.
6. You are thirsty.
7. The food at the nearby restaurant is very good.
8. They serve Pul-koki, Nangmyeong, Komthang, and so forth.
9. You have not ordered (food) yet.
10. You haven't had breakfast (or supper) yet.
11. It's time to go for food shopping.

B. Order from the waitress the following:
1. two bottles of beer
2. Pul-koki for two people /tu salam pun/
3. three cups of coffee afterward
4. one glass of cold water and one ice tea
5. milk for the baby
6. Chinese food
7. Japanese food
8. Komthang for only one person /han salam pun man/

C. Make short dialogues so that the second party responds using the following phrases:

1. musu tinci 'anything'
2. osti tinci 'any place'
3. once tinci 'any time'
4. nuku tinci 'anybody'
5. myeolil tinci 'any date'
6. amu imsik tinci 'any food'
7. amu yoil tinci 'any day of the week'
8. eni cumal tinci 'any weekend'
9. amu kos tinci 'any place'
10. amu nal tinci 'any day'
11. amu tae tinci 'any time'
12. amu te tinci 'any place'
D. Jones Sensæng explains the reasons when you ask him:

1. Why he is studying Korean.
2. Why he hasn't had breakfast yet.
3. Why the nearby restaurant is always crowded.
4. Why he is busy all the time.
5. Why he didn't come to school yesterday.
6. Why he has to speak Korean.
7. Why he's going to sell his car.
8. Why the traffic is so thick.
9. Why he joined the foreign service.
10. Why he wants to take a vacation.
11. Why he intends to walk.
12. Why he doesn't take the bus.
13. Why he doesn't take his wife to the movies.
14. Why he tries to find out Mr. Kim's telephone number /sænhwa pænhɔ/.
15. Why he doesn't want to try Korean food.
제 13 과 음식 (계속)

자

1. 부탁은 : 자, 여기 드십시오.

시작하십시오.

2. 이 : 에, 같이 시작하십시오.

소금
고추
고추 가루
저에게

3. 부탁은 : 거기 소금과 고추 가루 좀 저에게 주시겠습니까?

4. 이 : 네, 여기 있습니다. 네도 소금이 좀 필요합니다.

만

5. 부탁은 : 곳곳 많이 어디섭니까?

6. 이 : 맛(이) 있습니다. 선생의 볼고기는요?

많은 좋으나
고기가 질립니다

7. 부탁은 : 많은 좋으나, 고기가 좀 질립니다.

맴습니다
매운 음식

8. 이 : 선생은 매운 음식이 좋습니까?
UNIT 13. Eating and Drinking (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

1. Ca, òso ti(1l)siysiyo.
   Brown
   well; now
   (Now) Please help yourself.

2. Ne, kathi sicak-hapsita.
   Lee
   let's start
   Thank you. ('Let's begin together.')

3. Këki sokim kwa kochu kalu com
   ce eke cusikessimnikka?
   Brown
   salt
   red pepper
   (pepper powder)
   to me
   May I have the salt and pepper,
   please? ('Will you give me the
   salt and red pepper there?')

4. Ne, yokë issimnità. Na to sokim
   i com philyo-hamnìta.
   Lee
   Here you are! I need a little salt,
   too.

5. Komthang mas i òttëhsimnikka?
   Brown
   taste
   How does the Komthang taste?

6. Mas i issimnità. Sënsëng e
   Pul-koki ñin yo?
   Lee
   It tastes good. ('Taste exists.')
   And how about your Pul-koki?

7. Mas in cohina, koki ka com
   cilkimnìta.
   Brown
   [it]'s good but...
   it's tasty but...
   the meat is tough
   It's tasty but the meat is a little
tough.
실례합니다.


먹은 일, 먹어 본 일, 먹어 본 적
먹어 본 일을(적)이 있습니까?

10. 이: 선생님 중국 음식을 먹어 본 일이 있습니까?

11. 부탁운: 예, 여기 봤다 먹어 본 적이 있습니다.

12. 이: 아니, 그래요? 어디에서요?

13. 부탁운: 미국에도 중국 음식점이 많습니다.

양식
식당
식당 빠져 왔습니다.

14. 이: 나도 중국 음식은 많이 먹었지만, 양식은 별로 많이 먹지 않았습니다.

양식 집

15. 부탁운: 그럼, 내일은 양식 집에 갑시다.

있는지
있는지 아시니가?

16. 이: 그것, 좋습니다. 양식집이 어디에 있는지
아시니가?
8. Sensæng in mun imsik i cohæmnikka?

silhehamnit

9. Ne, kili silhæhacæ anhæmniæta.

mækæn il }  
mækæ pon il }  
mækæ pon cæk

mækæ pon il i issæmniæta

10. Sensæng in Cungkuk imsik il

mækæ pon il i issæmnikka?

11. Ne, yælæ pen mækæ pon cæk i

issæmniæta.

12. A, kilæ yo? sti ese yo?

13. Mikuk æ to Cungkuk imsikæm i

manhæmniæta.

Yangsik
pyælæ
pyælæ mækæcæ anhæmniæta

14. Na to Cungkuk imsik in manhi

mækæsæcæ man, Yangsik in pyælæ

manhi mækæcæ anhæmniæta.

Lee
(food) is spicy
spicy (hot) food
Do you like spicy food? (It's spicy food good for you?)

Brown
[I] dislike
It's all right. ('I don't dislike it so much. ')

Lee
('the experience of eating!')
[I] have an experience of eating
Have you ever eaten Chinese food?

Brown
Yes, I have (eaten) many times.

Lee
Oh, you have? Where?

Brown
There are many Chinese restaurants in the U.S., too.

Lee
Western food
not particularly; not so much
[I] didn't eat so much
I also have eaten Chinese food a lot but I haven't had much Western food.
17. 부탁을 하셔요.

여러 곳에
분할로
이 부분에

18. 어느 곳이 더 좋은지 물어보시다. 이 부분에
두 개 있습니다.
15. Kilea, neul in Yangsik cip e kapsita.  

Brown  
Let's go to a Western restaurant tomorrow, then.

Lee  
if there is; that there is  
do [you] know if there is?  
do [you] know where [it] is?

Fine. Do you know where there is a Western restaurant?

16. Ki kos, cohkimnit. Yangsikcôm i eti e issnin ci asimnikka?

Brown  
Yes, I do (know).

which place  
even though [I] do not know  
in this vicinity

There are two in this area but I don't know which one is better. ('Even though I don't know which place is better, there are two in this vicinity. ')

17. Ne, anmita.

eni kos  
molla to  
i pukin e

18. eni kos i te cohin ci mollâ to,  
i pukin e tu kos issnimnit.

ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY AND PHRASES

1. a. Mom i aphimnitâ.  
b. alkul i aphimnitâ.  
c. Nun i aphimnitâ.  
d. Ppyam i aphimnitâ.  
e. Son i aphimnitâ.  
f. Son-kalak i aphimnitâ.  
g. Pal i aphimnitâ.  
h. Pal-kalak i aphimnitâ.  
i. Tali ka aphimnitâ.  
j. Phal i aphimnitâ.  
k. ekkow ka aphimnitâ.  
l. Ip i aphimnitâ.  
m. Mck i aphimnitâ.  
n. Thak i aphimnitâ.  

I'm sick. ('Body hurts.')  
My face hurts.  
My eyes hurt.  
My cheek hurts.  
My hand hurts.  
My finger aches.  
My foot hurts.  
My toes are aching.  
My leg hurts.  
My arm hurts.  
My shoulder hurts.  
My mouth is sore.  
I have a sore throat.  
My chin hurts.
Additional Vocabulary and Phrases

A. 1. 몸이 아플니다.
2. 입술이 아플닙니다.
3. 눈이 아플닙니다.
4. 백이 아플닙니다.
5. 손이 아플닙니다.
6. 손가락이 아플닙니다.
7. 빗이 아플닙니다.
8. 발가락이 아플닙니다.
9. 다리가 아플닙니다.
10. 팔이 아플닙니다.
11. 어깨가 아플닙니다.
12. 입이 아플닙니다.
13. 목이 아플닙니다.
14. 허리가 아플닙니다.
15. 머리가 아플닙니다.
16. 가슴이 아플닙니다.
17. 귀가 아플닙니다.
18. 코가 아플닙니다.
19. 이(비발)가 아닙니다.
20. 등이 아플닙니다.
21. 허리가 아플닙니다.

B. 1. 조금이 좀 필요합니다.
2. 설량이 좀 필요합니다.
3. (각)장이 좀 필요합니다.
4. 양념이 좀 필요합니다.
5. 물이 좀 필요합니다.
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 13

o. Māli ka aphimnita.
   I have a headache.
p. Kasim i aphimnita.
   I have a pain on my chest.
q. Kwā ka aphimnita.
   My ear aches.
r. Kō ka aphimnita.
   My nose hurts.
s. I ka ṭippal i] 1 aphimnita.
   My teeth ache.
t. Ting i aphimnita.
   I have a backache.
u. Heli ka aphimnita.
   My waist aches.

2. a. Sōkim i com philyo-hamnita.
   I need some salt.
b. Salthang i com philyo-hamnita.
   I need some sugar.
c. (Kan)cang i com philyo-hamnita.
   I need some soy sauce.
d. Yangyam/yangnyam/ i com philyo-
   hamnita.
   I need some seasoning.
e. Mul i com philyo-hamnita.
   I need some water.
f. Kīle i com philyo-hamnita.
   I need some containers.
g. Koppu ka com philyo-hamnita.
   I need some cups.
h. Cho ka com philyo-hamnita.
   I need some vinegar.
i. Huchu kalu ka com philyo-
   hamnita.
   I need some black pepper (powder).
j. Sut-kalak i com philyo-hamnita.
   I need a spoon.
k. Cse-kalak i com philyo-hamnita.
   I need chopsticks.

3. a. (Hong)cha lil hakesimnita.
   I'll have tea.
b. Khephil lil hakesimnita.
   I'll have coffee.
c. Sul il hakesimnita.
   I'll have wine.
d. Pplu lil hakesimnita.
   I'll have beer.
e. Nekou lil hakesimnita.
   I'll have beer.
f. Ycheh lil hakesimnita.
   I'll have vegetables.
g. Choso lil hakesimnita.
   I'll have vegetables.
h. Kwāl il hakesimnita.
   I'll have fruits.
i. Kwāsil il hakesimnita.
   I'll have fruits.
j. Sīkwa lil hakesimnita.
   I'll have fruits.
k. Kokil lil hakesimnita.
   I'll have [some] meat.
l. Sengsōn il hakesimnita.
   I'll have fish.
m. So koki lil hakesimnita.
   I'll have beef (‘cow meat’).
6. 그릇이 좀 필요합니다.
7. 국비가 좀 필요합니다.
8. 초가 좀 필요합니다.
9. 후추가루가 좀 필요합니다.
10. 술가락이 좀 필요합니다.
11. 찬가락이 좀 필요합니다.

C. 1. (홍)차를 하게요.
2. 커피를 하게요.
3. 술을 하게요.
4. 밥추를 하게요.
5. 야채를 하게요.
6. 채소를 하게요.
7. 과일을 하게요.
8. 과실을 하게요.
9. 교기를 하게요.
10. 생선을 하게요.
11. 소고기를 하게요.
12. 닭고기를 하게요.
13. 돼지고기를 하게요.
14. 도야지를 고기를 하게요.
15. 가탄을 하게요.
16. 닭강을 하게요.
17. 국을 하게요.

D. 1. 잎이 옵니다.
2. 잎을 잡니다.
3. 잎 피근합니다.
4. 잎 고란합니다.
5. 잎 피로합니다.
n. Ta(i)k koki lil hakessimnita. I'll have chicken ('chicken meat').
o. Twei koki lil hakessimnita. I'll have pork ('pig meat').
p. Toyac koki lil hakessimnita. I'll have pork.
q. Kyelan il hakessimnita. I'll have eggs.
r. Talkyal il hakessimnita. I'll have eggs.
s. Kuk il hakessimnita. I'll have soup.

4. a. insik i nemu ocannita. [This] food is too salty.
b. insik i nemu tamnita. [This] food is too sweet.
c. insik i nemu singkopsimnita. [This] food is too bland.
d. insik i nemu mepsimnita. [This] food is too hot (spicy).
e. insik i nemu chamnita. [This] food is too cold.
f. insik i nemu simnita. [This] food is too sour.
g. insik i nemu ttikepsimnita. [This] food is too hot (temperature).
h. insik i nemu topsimnita. [This] food is too hot (temperature).
i. insik i nemu ssimnita. [This] food is too bitter.

5. a. (insik) mas i cohimnita. It tastes good. ('(Food) taste is good.')
    It's delicious.
b. (insik) mas i issimnita. It's tasty; It tastes good.
    It's tasteless.
c. (insik) mas i aapsimnita. It tastes all right.
    It tastes very good. ('Taste is excellent.')
d. (insik) mas i kwonchanhsimnita.
e. (insik) mas i hullyunghamnita.

6. a. Kipun i cohimnita. I feel well. ('Feeling is good.')
b. Kipun i com nappimnita. I don't feel very well. ('Feeling is a little bad.')
c. Kipun i attahsimnikka? How are you feeling?

7. a. Pœ ka kophimnita. I'm hungry. ('Stomach is empty.')
b. Pœ ka pullimnita. I'm full.
c. Pœ ka aphimnita. I have a stomach-ache.
d. Pœ ka pulphyonhamnita. My stomach is uncomfortable.

8. a. Cam i omnita. I'm sleepy. ('Sleep comes.')
b. (Cam il) camnita. I'm sleep(ing).
c. (com) phikohnamnita. I'm (a little) tired.
UNIT 13  
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

6. 복이 마릅니다.
7. 음식이 너무합니다.
8. 음식이 충분 않습니다.
9. 음식이 부족 합니다.
10. 음식이 모자랍니다.
11. 음식이 많습니다.

E.  1. 음식이 너무 짜집니다.
2. 음식이 너무 닭니다.
3. 음식이 너무 심겁습니다.
4. 음식이 너무 밥습니다.
5. 음식이 너무 �                                                                                            2
6. 음식이 너무 심니다.
7. 음식이 너무 또겁습니다.
8. 음식이 너무 덥습니다.
9. 음식이 너무 습니다.

F.  1. (음식)맛이 좋습니다.
2. (음식)맛이 있음니다.
3. (음식)맛이 없음니다.
4. (음식)맛이 괜찮습니다.
5. (음식)맛이 훌륭합니다.

G.  1. 기본이 좋습니다.
2. 기본이 좀 나쁘습니다.
3. 기본이 어떻게습니까?

H.  1. 배가 고프릅니다.
2. 배가 부릅니다.
3. 배가 아닙니다.
4. 배가 붓습니다.
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 13

d. (com) kotanhmnita.  I'm (a little) tired.
e. (com) philohamnita.  I'm (rather) fatigued.
f. Mok i malimnita.  I'm thirsty. ('Throat dries.')

9. a. 1msik i /neknekhmnita/.
    "nangnekhmnita/.
    The food is sufficient.

b. 1msik i chungpun-hamnita.
    The food is enough.

c. 1msik i pucok-hamnita.
    The food is not enough.

d. 1msik i mocalamnita.
    ('The food is not enough.
    'We are short of food.'

e. 1msik i manhsimnita.
    The food is plenty.
NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1.2. *Ca, ese ti(l)ipsiyo.* ('Well, lift [it] please.', 'Well, please have [it].') is a fixed expression in the eating or drinking situation to have your guest or company start eating or drinking. The usual response to *Ca, ese ti(l)ipsiyo.* is *Ne, kahi sicak-hapsita.* ('Yes, let's begin together.')

6. *Mas i iss-ta.* ('Taste exists.') and *Mas i coh-ta.* ('Taste is good.') are the two common fixed expressions; both of which are used as the Korean equivalents of 'It's tasty.' or 'It's delicious.'

10. *Makte pon il* (or *makte pon cak*) ('The experience of having eaten') and *makin il* (or *makin cak*) can be interchangeably used (See Grammar Note 3.)

12. In *Kile yo?* ('Is that so?') *kile* is the infinitive form of the verb *kile-h* 'to be so'. Thus, *Kile yo?* is the informal polite equivalent of the formal polite *Kilehaimnikka?; Kile yo.* of the formal polite *Kilehaimnita.*

13. *Cungkuk insikcam* 'Chinese restaurant' is often substituted by *Cungkuk cip* ('Chinese house'). In Korea, *Cungkuk cip* is usually referred to *Cungkuk insikcam.*

14. *Pyallo* '(not) particularly', is an adverb which occurs before an negative inflected expression, and denotes *mildness* or *less being positive* in negating the following expression.

15. *Yangsik cip* ('Western food house.') is a substitute for *Yangsikcam.*
1. -\(1\)na

The inflected form ending in -\(1\)na (or simply the -\(1\)na form) which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression. The honorific and/or tense suffixes may occur in the -\(1\)na form: -na is added to a vowel stem; -\(1\)na to a consonant stem. The -\(1\)na form denotes that some contradictory further explanation or remark will follow in the following inflected expression.

(Compare the -\(1\)na form with -\(1\)+ man, Grammar Note 2, Unit 9.) Examples:

Mas in ochina, koki ka com  
ciliknnita.  
"It's tasty, but the meat is a little tough."

Hankuk mal i eyauna, cami issyo.  
"Korean is difficult but is interesting."

Kim Ryenhosa e elkul in molina,  
illum in tileissinnita.  
"I don't know Lawyer Kim's face, but I've heard of his name."

2. -n/in

Infinitive + pon\(\{\text{\(1\)}}\)\(\{\text{cek}\}\) i + iss- 'has an experience of having done something'

The construction -n/in il i issinnita is used to mean 'have, sometime up to the present, done so-and-so'. The question form, -n/in il i issinnikka?, is the Korean equivalent of 'Have [you] ever done so-and-so?'. In the above construction il meaning 'work' or 'act' or 'experience' is synonymous with cek and they are interchangeable with each other. The first word in the construction ending in -n/in (-n is added to a vowel stem; -in to a consonant stem) can be substituted by the verb phrase Infinitive + pon. The negation for the whole expression is made by replacing aps- 'not exist' in place of iss-. Thus, -n/in il i apssinnita means 'Someone has, some time up to the present, never done so-and-so.' and -n/in il i apssinnikka? 'Haven't [you] ever done so-and-so?'. Examples:

Cungkuk imnik il mokin il i  
issinnikka?  
"Have you ever eaten Chinese food?"

Hankuk e kasin cek i issna yo?  
"Have you ever been ('gone') to Korea?"

Cenin Nyuyok ese cihachalto lil  
than il i issci yo.  
"I have an experience of riding a subway in New York."

Con e catongcha lil uncenwo pon  
il i issci man, cilin in  
uncenhanin kss il ice polissinnita.  
"I drove an automobile before, but I have forgotten how to drive (now)."
Ne, Hankuk e olsan e kan seok i issinnita.  'Yes, I've gone to Korea long time ago.'

Note that the ending -n/in is distinguished from the present noun-modifier ending -n/in/nin since -n/in which is added only to an action verb stem indicates the past action of the following nominal. We shall call the ending -n/in Past Noun- Modifier Ending. We will learn more about the ending -n/in as well as the description verb past noun-modifier forms in the further units. For the time being, observe the following examples:

a. kanin salam  
   kan salam  
   'the person who (is) go(ing).'
   'the person who has gone'

b. raw ka mannain yeoa  
   raw ka mann yoea  
   'the woman (or girl) whom I'll meet(ing)'
   'the woman whom I've met'

c. atil sanin chak  
   atil i san cheok  
   'the book that my son is buying'
   'the book that my son bought'

d. meknin imnik  
   meknin imnik  
   'the food that [we] eat'
   'the food that [we] ate'

3. Interrogative + -n/in/nin ci

An interrogative (i.e. what, who, where, why, etc.) followed by a present noun-modifier word + ci, occurs as a nominal expression with or without a particle after it before another inflected expression, and denotes the present action or description of the verb for the subject or topic in the same nominal expression. When the phrase interrogative + -n/in/nin ci is followed by the verb a(l)- 'know' or moli- 'not know', it is always the object of the verb.

Examples:

Sor salan i nuku in ci ase yo.  'I know who that man is.'
I chak i alma in ci alko siphe yo?  'Do you want to know how much this book is?'
Kim Senseang i eti e sanin ci asici yo?  'You know where Mr. Kim lives, don't you?'
Senseang i muas il wanhaniin ci molimnita.  'I don't know what you want.'

Note that the present noun-modifier word in the same construction may be replaced by the form -(a,e)sanin for the past and the form -(i)l for the future, if the equivalent English noun clause is in the past or future tense respectively.
Observe the following:

GROUP 1

Ki salam i eti e kassnin ci amnita.
Hakkyo ka ence aicak-kassnin ci molla yo.
Ne ka Yenge lil ettehke pawsnin ci ase yo?

'I know where he went.'
'I don't know when the school began.'
'Do you know how I have learned English?'

GROUP 2

Sip nyen hu e mues il hal ci acik molimnita.
Sikan i alma na kollil ci alki alyapsinmita.
Ki i alma tongan Soul eso kimnu-hal ci molla yo?

'I don't know what [I] will do after ten years from now.'
'It's difficult to know how long it will take.'
'Don't you know how long he will work in Seoul?'

4. Particles eke 'to' and ekesa 'from'

A personal nominal + eke and a personal nominal + ekesa before an inflected expression mean 'to + P.N.' and 'from + P.N.' respectively. Remember that the particles e and esa preceded by a place name before an inflected expression mean also 'to' and 'from' respectively (Units 2 and 3). Do not use e and esa after a personal nominal to mean the same. Examples:

GROUP 1 (eke)

I chëk il Kim Sënsëng eke tilisipsiyo.
Halapoci eke mule pwassoc man, mollasse yo.
Onil in chinku eke phyënci lil së ya hakesse yo.

'Please give this book to Mr. Kim.'
'I asked (to) my grandfather but he didn't know.'
'[I think] I've got to write a letter to my friend today.'

GROUP 2 (ekesa)

Pak Sënsëng ekesa ki mal il titko, nollassimnita.

'emëni ekesa sëngil sënmul il pasëssimnita.

'I was surprised to hear that from Mr. Park. ([I heard that word from Mr. Park and was surprised.])'
'I have received a birthday present from my mother.'

345
5. Dependent Nouns

There is a small class of Korean nouns which occur only as bound forms in certain constructions but are neither Determinatives nor Post-Nouns (Unit 3). We shall call the words of this class Dependent Nouns. Remember that a determinative is a word which occurs before another noun (free or bound), and that a post-noun occurs either after other nouns or after modifier categories of inflected words. In both cases, they form nominal phrases. However, a dependent noun also occurs after the modifier categories of inflected words, but is followed by a certain expression to form a phrase. Thus, it is not necessary to learn the meaning of an individual dependent noun separately. Instead, you should learn the meaning of the whole phrase where such a dependent noun is included as if it were one word. For example, in Kal kka yo? 'Shall [we] go?’, Ttonal kka hamnita. ‘[I]’m thinking of leaving.’, Anin ka yo? ‘Do [you] know?’, Kal su issamnita. ‘[I] can go.’, Muaw in ci amnita. ‘[I] know what [it] is.’, Ate e sanin ci molamnita. ‘I don’t know where [he] lives.’, Pi ka ol tit hamnita. ‘It looks like rain.’, Kek̖i kan cek i isŝe yo? ‘Have you ever been there?’, Kka, ka, su, ci, tit, cek, etc. are Dependent Nouns.
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 13

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

1. C'e nin pe ka kophimnita. I'm hungry.
2. C'e nin pe ka pulimnita. I'm full.
3. C'e nin mok i malimnita. I'm thirsty.
4. C'e nin (com) phikonhamnitita. I'm (a little) tired.
5. C'e nin (com) kotanhamnitita. I'm (rather) fatigued.
6. C'e nin cam i omnitita. I'm sleepy.
7. C'e nin mom i aphimnitita. I'm sick.
8. C'e nin kipun i cohainnitita. I'm feeling well.
9. C'e nin kipun i nappimnitita. I'm not feeling well.

B. Substitution Drill

1. Na nin mom i com aphimnita. I'm a little sick. ("My body aches a little.")
2. Na nin meli ka com aphimnita. I have a little headache.
4. Na nin nun i com aphimnita. My eyes hurt a little.
5. Na nin pal i com aphimnita. My foot hurts a little.
7. Na nin i ka com aphimnita. My tooth aches a little.
8. Na nin ip i com aphimnita. My mouth is a little sore.
10. Na nin mok i com aphimnita. I have a little sore throat. ("My throat is a little sore.")

C. Substitution Drill

1. Kaki sokim com (ce eke) Please pass me the salt. ("Will you give me the salt there?")
    cusikessiminikka?
2. Kaki salthang com (ce eke) Please pass me the sugar.
    cusikessiminikka?
3. Kaki kochu kalu com (ce eke) Please pass me the pepper. ("red-
    cusikessiminikka?
    pepper powder")
4. Kaki huchu kalu com (ce eke) Please pass me the pepper. ("black-
    cusikessiminikka?
    pepper powder")

347
UNIT 13

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

5. Kaki (kan)cang com (ce eke) cusikessimnikka? Please pass me the soy sauce.
*6. Kaki com com (ce eke) cusikessimnikka? Please pass me the jam.
*7. Kaki oppa com (ce eke) cusikessimnikka? Please pass me the butter.
*8. Kaki ppaeng com (ce eke) cusikessimnikka? Please pass me the bread.
*10. Kaki naphikhin com (ce eke) cusikessimnikka? Please pass me the napkins.

D. Substitution Drill

1. Ki ch awk il na eke cusipsiyo. Give me that book.
5. Ki ch awk il sa haksawng eke cusipsiyo. Give that book to the student.

E. Substitution Drill

1. Chinku ekese sikye lil patassiminita. I received a watch from a friend.
2. Geimsi ekese moac lil patassiminita. I received a hat from James.
3. Kim Sansawng ekese kapang lil patassiminita. I received a briefcase from Mr. Kim.
*4. aman ekese phyanci lil patassiminita. I received a letter from my mother.
*5. Tesa ekese senhwa lil patassiminita. I received a telephone call from the ambassador.
*6.  أضِصِيِّتِ ٰكَّسِهِ ُسْنِمُتُ ٰل ٰپَتُّسٰسْنِمِتِتُ َٰ.
I received a present from my father.

*7.  هَنْكٰعَكِ ٰكَّسِهِ ُسْنِمُتُ ٰیَّصُقِ رْهِٰنِ ٰپَتُّسٰسْنِمِتِتُ َٰ.
I received an English-Korean dictionary from the Korean instructor.

*8.  يُنْغِسُ ٰكَّسِهِ ُسْنِمُتُ ٰسْنِمِتِتُ َٰ.
I received a telegram from the consul.

*9.  سَنْگٰکْواِنِ ٰكَّسِهِ ُشْنِمُتُ ٰیَّلِ ٰپَتُّسٰسْنِمِتِتُ َٰ.
I received an order from [my] boss.

*10.  سُنْنِنِ ٰكَّسِهِ ُسْنِمُتُ ٰسْنِمِتِتُ َٰ.
I received an order from [my] customer.

*11.  تَثْحٰنْقٰقُ ٰكَّسِهِ ُسْنِمُتُ ٰچُوْطُ سْلِ ٰپَتُّسٰسْنِمِتِتُ َٰ.
I received an invitation from the President.

*12.  هَاكْسٰنِن سْلِ ٰكَّسِهِ ُسْنِمُتُ ٰقُلٰ مْنٰنِ ٰپَتُّسٰسْنِمِتِتُ َٰ.
I received questions from the students.

*13.  تَنْصٰوِ ٰكَّسِهِ ُسْنِمُتُ ٰپُثْحٰک ٰپَتُّسٰسْنِمِتِتُ َٰ.
I was asked of a favor from a colleague.

*14.  سُچُگٰنِ ٰكَّسِهِ ُسْنِمُتُ ٰسْنِگٰکِ ٰپَتُّسٰسْنِمِتِتُ َٰ.
I received a promotion from the president (of the company).

*15.  إِنْسُاکْوْجٰدُّ ٰكَّسِهِ ُسْنِمُتُ ٰپُونْکِ ٰپَتُّسٰسْنِمِتِتُ َٰ.
I've got my pay from the personnel officer.

F. Substitution Drill

1.  سِنْسٰنِن ٰمُنْعِن سْیَسٰکِ ٰیَّهُسْنِمٰنِنِكْکا َٰ?
Do you like hot (spicy) food?

2.  سِنْسٰنِن ٰنُاٰقْکُعِن سْیَسٰکِ ٰیَّهُسْنِمٰنِنْکا َٰ?
Do you like Chinese food?

3.  سِنْسٰنِن ٰیَّنْجُسٰکِ ٰیَّهُسْنِمٰنِنْکا َٰ?
Do you like Western food?

4.  سِنْسٰنِن ٰنِسْسٰیَسٰکِ ٰیَّهُسْنِمٰنِنْکا َٰ?
Do you like Japanese food?

5.  سِنْسٰنِن ٰهَنْکٰعٰکُوٰقُعِن ٰیَّهُسْنِمٰنِنْکا َٰ?
Do you like Korean beer?

6.  سِنْسٰنِن ٰمُسْسٰیَسٰکِ ٰیَّهُسْنِمٰنِنْکا َٰ?
What kind of food do you like?

7.  سِنْسٰنِن ٰنِنٰسْیَسٰکِ ٰیَّهُسْنِمٰنِنْکا َٰ?
Which restaurant do you like?

8.  سِنْسٰنِن ٰنِنٰسْسٰسْنِنِنٰسْنِن ٰیَّهُسْنِمٰنِنْکا َٰ?
Which teacher do you prefer?
G. Substitution Drill

1. I imsik in com mapsimnita.  
   This food is a little spicy.
2. I imsik in com ceamnita.  
   This food is a little salty.
3. I imsik in com chamnita.  
   This food is a little cold.
4. I imsik in com toppsimnita.  
   This food is a little warm.
5. I imsik in com simnita.  
   This food is a little sour.
6. I imsik in com tanmita.  
   This food is a little sweet.
7. I imsik in com ssimnita.  
   This food is a little bitter.

H. Substitution Drill

1. I koki nin com cilkimnita.  
   This meat is a little tough.
2. I Pul-koki nin com cilkimnita.  
   This Pul-koki is a little tough.
3. I sangoen in com cilkimnita.  
   This fish is a little tough.
4. I ta(1)k koki nin com cilkimnita.  
   This chicken is a little tough.
5. I so koki nin com cilkimnita.  
   This beef is a little tough.
6. I toyaki koki nin com cilkimnita.  
   This pork is a little tough.
7. I tweci koki nin cilkimnita.  
   This pork is a little tough.
8. I tweci koki nin putilepsimnita.  
   This pork is tender. (soft.)
9. I tweci koki nin yenhamnita.  
   This pork is tender (for meat).

I. Substitution Drill

1. Yangsikcom i eti e issnin ci asimnikka?  
   Do you know where a restaurant for Western food is.
2. Hansikcom i eti e issnin ci asimnikka?  
   Do you know where a Korean restaurant is?
3. Woeisikcom i eti e issnin ci asimnikka?  
   Do you know where a Japanese restaurant is?
4. Cungkuk imsikcom i eti e issnin ci asimnikka?  
   Do you know where a Chinese restaurant is?
5. Pakmulkwan i eti e issnin ci asimnikka?  
   Do you know where the museum is?
6. Tongmulwan i eti e issnin ci asimnikka?  
   Do you know where the zoo is?
*7. Kukhwe ka etsi e issin etsi asimnikka?

*8. Wemupu ka etsi e issin etsi asimnikka?

*9. Sopangse ka etsi e issin etsi asimnikka?

*10. Kukmiiseng etsi e issin etsi asimnikka?

*11. Kukpangpu ka etsi e issin etsi asimnikka?

*12. Kukpanseeng etsi e issin etsi asimnikka?

*13. Kisuuka ka etsi e issin etsi asimnikka?

Do you know where the
(National Assembly) is?
(Congress)

Do you know where the Ministry of
Foreign Affairs is?

Do you know where the fire station
is?

Do you know where the State Depart-
ment is?

Do you know where the Ministry of
Defense is?

Do you know where the Defense
Department is?

Do you know where the dormitory
is?

J. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Sensæng in cen e Hankuk e
kassimnikka?

Student: Sensæng in cen e Hankuk e
kan il i issimnikka?

1. Sensæng in cen e Ilpon mal il
pawössimnikka?

2. Sensæng in cen e Yënga lil
kalichiissimnikka?

3. Sensæng in cen e wekuk tæhakkyo
e tanissimnikka?

4. Sensæng in cen e Mikuk tæsa lil
manassimnikka?

5. Sensæng in cen e Sœul ese
il-hæssimnikka?

6. Sensæng in cen e pihaengki lil
thassimnikka?

7. Sensæng in cen e Hankuk ese phyænci
lil patæssimnikka?

8. Sensæng in cen e Mikuk chinku eke
sacen il puchiessimnikka?

'Did you go to Korea before?'

'Have you ever been to Korea before?'

'Sensæng in cen e Ilpon mal il pœun
il i issimnikka?'

'Sensæng in cen e Yënga lil kalichiin
il i issimnikka?'

'Sensæng in cen e wekuk tæhakkyo e
tanin il i issimnikka?'

'Sensæng in cen e Mikuk tæsa lil
mannan il i issimnikka?'

'Sensæng in cen e Sœul ese il-han
il i issimnikka?'

'Sensæng in cen e pihaengki lil than
il i issimnikka?'

'Sensæng in cen e Hankuk ese phyænci
lil patin il i issimnikka?'

'Sensæng in cen e Mikuk chinku eke
sacen il puchin il i issimnikka?'
9. Sensæng in cæn e Hankuk imsik il mokøsimmnikka?
10. Sensæng in cæn e ki yëca lil kitaliøsimmnikka?

K. Response Drill

Tutor: Cæn e Hankuk imsik il makin il i issimnikka?
Student: Ne, mæøe pon ñek i issimnita.

1. Cæn e Ilpon mal il ñøøn il i issimnikka?
2. Cæn e Yækgæ lil kalichin il i issimnikka?
3. Cæn e Hankuk mækcæ lil masin il i issimnikka?
4. Cæn e kunike e kan il i issimnikka?
5. Talin salam eke i chæmk il poeye çun il i issimnikka?
6. Cæn e mok il ahpæn il i issimnikka?
7. Hankuk salam chinku ekese phyeçı lil patin il i issimnita.
8. Welyoil e cip eșe swiæ il i issimnikka?
9. Cip eșe hakkyø kkaci tu sikan i kællin il i issimnikka?

'Shave you ever eaten Korean food before?'
'Yes, I have (eaten).'

Ne, pæøe pon ñek i issimnita.
Ne, kalichie pon ñek i issimnita.
Ne, masyøe pon ñek i issimnita.
Ne, ka pon ñek i issimnita.
Ne, poye çuse pon ñek i issimnita.
Ne, aphpæ pon ñek i issimnita.
Ne, pate pon ñek i issimnita.
Ne, (Welyoil e) swiæe pon ñek i issimnita.
Ne, tu sikan i kællie pon ñek i issimnikka.
L. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Siktang i ेti e issinakkia?
Student: Siktang i ेti e issin ci asimnikka?

1. Kim Sensæng i mues il hamnikka?

2. Ki sikye ka ेlma impannikka?

3. Ce Mikuk yeoa ka nuku imnikka?

4. Hakkyo ka myœch-si e sicak-hannikka?

5. Cungkuk mal i ेlma na ेlyœpimnikka?

6. Onil i myœchil imnikka?

7. I catongcha lil ेlma e phannikka?

8. Ṣence ppœsi ka ttenamnikka?

9. Ce Mikuk kunin i mues il wenhamnikka?

10. Ceimsi Sensæng i musin yoil e hyuka lil patsimnikka?

"Where is the restaurant?"
"Do you know where the restaurant is?"

Kim Sensæng i mues il hanin ci asimnikka?
Ki sikye ka elma in ci asimnikka?
Ce Mikuk yeoa ka nuku in ci asimnikka?
Hakkyo ka myœch-si e sicak-hanin ci asimnikka?
Cungkuk mal i elma na eleyœun ci asimnikka?
Onil i myœchil in ci asimnikka?
I catongcha lil elma e pha(ll)n in ci asimnikka?
ience ppœsi ka ttenanin ci asimnikka?
Ce Mikuk kunin i mues il wenhanin ci asimnikka?
Ceimsi Sensæng i musin yoil e hyuka lil patninin ci asimnikka?

M. Response Drill

Tutor: Siktang i ेti e issnin ci asimnikka?
Student: Ne, (siktang i) ेti e issnin ci ale yo.

1. I catongcha ka ेlma in ci asimnikka?

2. Simisim Sensæng i ेti ese il-hanin ci asimnikka?

3. Kicha ka myœch-si e ttenanin ci asimnikka?

4. Ṣence Hankuk ilo kanin ci asimnikka?

"Do you know where the restaurant is?"
"Yes, I know where it is."

Ne, (i catongcakh ka) ेlma in ci ale yo.
Ne, (Simisim Sensæng i) ेti ese il-hanin ci ale yo.
Ne, (kichakah ka) myœch-si e ttenanin ci ale yo.
Ne, Ṣence (Hankuk ilo) kanin ci ale yo.
5. Ce salam i alma na Hankuk mal il cal hal su issnin ci asimmikka?

6. Ppesi ka ence ttænassnin ci asimmikka?

7. Ceimsi Sensæng i myeoh sal e Hankuk e wassnin ci asimmikka?

8. Ne ka tæhakkyo ese mues il kongpu-hœssnin ci asimmikka?

9. Cip ese cœngkœcang kkaci alma na men ci asimmikka?

10. Soul e mulken kaps i alma na pissan ci asimmikka?

11. Ne ka nuku lîl mannako siphin ci asimmikka?

12. Mikuk ese Hankuk kkaci myeohil i kellinin ci asimmikka?

Ne, (ce salam 1) alma na (Hankuk mal il) cal hal su issnin ci ale yo.
Ne, (ppesi ka) ence ttænassnin ci ale yo.
Ne, (Ceimsi Sensæng 1) myeoh sal e Hankuk e wassnin ci ale yo.
Ne, (tæhakkyo ese) mues il kongpu-hœssnin ci ale yo.
Ne, (cip ese cœngkœcang kkaci) alma na men ci ale yo.
Ne, (Soul e mulken kaps i) alma na pissan ci ale yo.
Ne, (Sensæng 1) nuku lîl mannako siphin ci ale yo.
Ne, (Mikuk ese Hankuk kkaci) myeohil i kellinin ci ale yo.

N. Response Drill

Tutor: I kos i mues in ci ase yo?
Student: Aniyo, (mues in ci) molimnitna.

1. Pak Sensæng i musin imsik il cohahanin ci ase yo?

2. Hwesa samu ka myeoh-si e sicak-hanin ci ase yo?

3. Ne ka hwesa ese han tal e ælma patnin ci ase yo?

4. Ælma tongan Yœngœ lîl pœwœssnin ci ase yo?

5. Mikuk tæsa ka ælma cen e yeki e wassnin ci ase yo?

6. Nuka na eke Hankuk mal il kalichæ cuassnin ci ase yo?

7. Kim Sensæng i myeoh-si e samusil e tola onin ci ase yo?

'Do you know what this is?'
'No, I don't know (what is it).'

Aniyo, (musin imsik il cohahanin ci) molimnitna.
Aniyo, (myeoh-si e sicak-hanin ci) molimnitna.
Aniyo, (aelma patnin ci) molimnitna.
Aniyo, (aelma tongan Yœngœ lîl pœwœssnin ci) molimnitna.
Aniyo, (aelma cen e yeki e wassnin ci) molimnitna.
Aniyo, (nuka kalichæ cuassnin ci) molimnitna.
Aniyo, (myeoh-si e tola onin ci) molimnitna.
8. Ce yaca ka nuku lil salang-han' in ci ase yo?
   Aniyo, (nuku lil salang-han' in ci) molimnita.
   Aniyo, (myech salam i issnin ci) molimnita.

9. Seoul e Mikuk salam i myech salam i issnin ci ase yo?

0. Response Drill

Tutor: Pë ka kophimnikka?
Student: Ne, (pë ka) com kophimnita.

1. Mok i malimnìkkìa?
2. (Mom i) phikon-hamnikka?
3. Cam i omnikka?
4. Kipun i cohsimnikka?
5. Mom i aphimnikka?
6. Kotanhamnikka?
7. Pë ka pulimnikka?
8. Mas i issimnikka?
9. Koki ka ciklimnikka?

1. Ne, (mok i) com malimnìta.
2. Ne, com phikon-hamnìta.
3. Ne, (cam i) com omnìta.
4. Ne, (kipun i) com cohsimnìta.
5. Ne, (mom i) com aphìmnìta.
6. Ne, com kotanhamnìta.
7. Ne, (pë ka) com pulimnìta.
8. Ne, (mas i) com issimnìta.
9. Ne, (koki ka) com ciklimnìta.

P. Response Drill

Tutor: Pë ka kophimnikka?
Student: Aniyo, kili kophici anhe yo.

1. Mok i malimnikka?
2. Phikon-hamnikka?
3. Cam i omnikka?
4. Kipun i cohsimnikka?
5. Kipun i nappimnikka?
6. Mom i aphimnikka?
7. Kotanhamnikka?
8. Pë ka pulimnikka?
9. Mas i issimnikka?
10. Mas i cohsimnikka?
11. Koki ka ciklimnikka?

1. Aniyo, kili malici anhe yo.
2. Aniyo, kili phikon-haci anhe yo.
3. Aniyo, kili oci anhe yo.
4. Aniyo, kili cohici anhe yo.
5. Aniyo, kili nappici anhe yo.
6. Aniyo, kili aphici anhe yo.
7. Aniyo, kili kotanhaici anhe yo.
8. Aniyo, kili pulici anhe yo.
10. Aniyo, kili cohocici anhe yo.
11. Aniyo, kili ciklici anhe yo?
Q. Response Drill

Tutor: Pwe ka kophimnikka?
Student: Aniyo, pyello kophici anhsimnita.

1. Mom i aphimnikka?
2. Sokim i philyo-hamnita.
3. imsik i ccamnikka?
4. (imsik) mas i issimnikka?
5. Kipun i cohsimnikka?
6. Cam i omnikka?
7. Mok i malimnikka?
8. Phikon-hamnikka?
9. Kotanhmnikka?
10. Koki ka cilkimnikka?
11. Hankuk mal il cal hamnikka?

'Are you hungry?'
'No, not particularly. ('I'm not particularly hungry.')</n
Aniyo, pyello aphici anhsimnita.
Aniyo, phello philyo-haci anhsimnita.
Aniyo, pyello ccamci anhsimnita.
Aniyo, pyello isscci anhsimnita.
Aniyo, pyello cohci anhsimnita.
Aniyo, pyello cci anhsimnita.
Aniyo, pyello malici anhsimnita.
Aniyo, pyello phikon-haci anhsimnita.
Aniyo, pyello kotanhcici anhsimnita.
Aniyo, pyello cilkici anhsimnita.
Aniyo, pyello cal haci anhsimnita.
EXERCISES

A. Ask Kim Sansaeng the following questions: (Mr. Kim answers beginning once with Ne, and once with Aniyo, both in Informal Polite Speech.)

1. if he is hungry.
2. if he is tired.
3. if he is sleepy.
4. if he is sick.
5. if he is feeling well.
6. if he is not feeling well.
7. if his stomach is uncomfortable.
8. if the meat is too tough.
9. if the pork is tender.
10. if the chicken is delicious.
11. if the food is spicy (hot).
12. if the soup is too salty.
13. if the coffee is too sweet (sugary).
14. if he needs salt and pepper.
15. if he has ever eaten Chinese food.
16. if he has ever taught Korean before.
17. if he knows what time the school ends.
18. if he knows who taught you Korean.
19. if he knows how you have studied Korean.
20. if he doesn't like Chinese food.
21. if the food is enough.
22. if the food is insufficient.
23. if the food is plenty.

B. Tell the waitress to bring the following:

1. two bottles of O.B. beer
2. wine (or liquor)
3. vegetables
4. fruits
5. fish
6. seasoning
7. salt and pepper
8. spoon and chop sticks
9. soy sauce and a bowl
10. bread, butter and jam.
11. chicken and eggs.
12. three bowls of beef soup.
13. Pul-koki for two people.

C. Ask Pak Sansang whether he likes the following kinds of food:
1. salty food
2. sweet food
3. bland food
4. spicy (hot) food
5. cold food
6. sour food
7. bitter food
8. dry food
9. western food
10. hot (in temperature) food

D. Make a short simple statement using each of the following words:

1. face 13. shoulder
2. head 14. arm
3. neck 15. hand
4. throat 16. finger
5. eye 17. foot
6. nose 18. toe
7. cheek 19. leg
8. chin 20. knee/mulip/
9. mouth 21. waist
10. tooth 22. chest
11. hair 23. back
12. ear 24. wrist/son-mok/
E. **Pak Sensung** wants to know what have happened to you; answer as follows:

1. that you received a letter from your mother.
2. that you received questions from the student.
3. that you received a promotion from your boss.
4. that you received your pay from the personnel officer /insa kwacang/.
5. that your bookstore received an order from the customers.
6. that your colleague asked a favor of you.
7. that you have received an order from the Ambassador.
8. that you've received a dinner invitation from the (company) president.
9. that you've received a birthday present from your girl friend.
10. that you received a telephone call from your father.
제 14 과	개인의 일상과 가족 이야기

고항

1. 제임스 : 밥 선생은 교향이 어디이세요?

처음

거의

2. 밥 : 제 교향은 손택 인적이었으나 거의 서울에서 살았습니다.

어리분이다

어린 때에, 어렸을 때에

3. 제임스 : 그럼, 어렸을 때에 서울로 왔으니까?

세 살

세 살 때에

이사

이사한 날이에요

4. 밥 : 예, 그렇습니다. 제가 세 살 때에 우리 가족이 서울로 이사했습니다.

结

결혼

결혼하셨습니다

결혼 하셔서

아내, 처

아이들

360
UNIT 14. Talking About One's Life and Family

BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

James

kohyang
1. Pak Sensang in, kohyang i sti ise yo?

native place; home town
Where do you come from, Mr. Park?

Park

wellae
kai
2. Ce kohyang in wellae Inchon iessina,
   kai Seoul ese salessimnita.

originally; formerly
almost; mostly
I am originally from Inchon but I have lived mostly in Seoul.

James

alimnita
alil ttæ (e)
elyessil ttæ (e)
3. Kilam, elyessil ttæ e Seoul lo wassimnikka?

[I]'m young
when [I] was young ('at the time of being young')
Then, did you come to Seoul when you were young?

Park

se sal
se sal ttæ e
ulii kacock
isa
isa-hassimnita
4. Ne, kilensimnita. Ce ka se sal
ttæ e ulii kacock i Seoul lo isa-hassimnita.

three years old
at the age of three
my family ('our family!')
moving (house, office, etc.)
[we] moved
That's right. When I was three years old, my family moved to Seoul.

James

kyesimnikka
5. Cikum, kacock in myeoh pun ina kyesimnikka?

do you have?; are there? (H)
How many are there in your family now?
6. 밥 : 지금은 결혼해서 아내와 아이들이 들 있습니다.

아들

7. 제임스 : 아이들은 다 아들인가요?

큰 아이

딸

8. 밥 : 아닙니다. 큰 아이는 딸이고 돌 제2 아이가 아들입니다.

부모, 부모님

 살아 계십니다

9. 제임스 : 부모님도 살아 계십니까?

아버지

어머니

형님, 형

동아가셨습니다

댁

10. 밥 : 아버지는 돌아가셨고, 어머니는 형님댁에서 삶니다.

형제

부부, 진부

11. 제임스 : 형제는 모두 몇 분이냐 했니가?

형님 외에

누이 (동생)
Park

kyalhon
kyalhon-hæssimnita
kyalhon-hæ se

ane
ai til

6. Cikin in kyalhon-hæ se, ane wa
ai til i tul issimnita.

atil

7. Ai til in ta atil in ka yo?

khin ai
ttal

8. An imnita. Khin ai nin ttal lko,
tul cœ ai ka atil imnita.

pumo
pumo nim}
sala issimnita
sala kyesimnita

9. Pumo nim to sala kyesimnikka?

Park

marriage
[I]‘m married; [I] got married
[I]‘m married and...; [I] got
married and...

wife
children; babies
I‘m married now and have a wife
and two children.

James

son
Are your children both sons?

Park

the eldest child (‘big child’)
daughter
No. The elder child is a daughter,
and the second is a son.

James

parents
[he] is alive; [he] is living
Are your parents still living?

Park

father
mother

(man’s) older brother
[they] passed away (‘went back!’)
house; home (H)
My father is dead but my mother
lives at my older brother’s
home.

363
(남) 동생

하나 써

12. 박 : 청님 할복 외에 누이 동생과 남 동생이

하나 써 있습니다.

다들

13. 제임스 : 다들 결혼했나요?

살마 전에

혼자

14. 박 : 누이 동생은 살마 전에 결혼했지만, 남 동생은

아직 혼자입니다.

(now)

15. 제임스 : 남 동생은 now 살입니까?

나이

나이가 많습니다

나이가 작습니다

16. 박 : 아직 나이가 그렇게 많지 않습니다. 제

근년에 스스로 살입니다.

17. 제임스 : 학교에 다니는가요?

고등학교

대학교

جامعة

卒業

卒業하고

삼학년
11. Hyangce nin motu myeok pun ina twemnikka?

James

James

brothers and sisters; siblings 

in all; all together

How many brothers and sisters do you 

have in all? ('As for your siblings 

how many persons do they become 

in all?)

Park

beside an older brother 

(younger) sister 

younger brother 

one each; one at one time

Besides an older brother, I have a 

younger sister and a younger 

brother.

Park

beside an older brother 

(younger) sister 

younger brother 

one each; one at one time

Besides an older brother, I have a 

younger sister and a younger 

brother.

James

all; everybody 

did [he] get married?

Are they all married? ('Did they all 

get married?)

Park

sometime ago 

single; alone

My younger sister got married some-

time ago, but my younger brother 

is still single.

James

how old?; what age?

How old is your younger brother?

14. Nui tongsaeng in elma cen e 

kyelhon-haesnayi man, nam tongsaeng 
in acik honca issamita.

Park

sometime ago 

single; alone

My younger sister got married some-

time ago, but my younger brother 

is still single.

James

how old?; what age?

How old is your younger brother?

15. Nam tongsaeng in myeok sal issamita?

James

how old?; what age?

How old is your younger brother?
18. 박: 에, 삼년 전에 고등 학교를 졸업하고,
지금은 서울 대학교 삼학년에 다닙니다.

Park

nai
nai ka manhsimnita
nai ka coksimnita
age
[he] is old ('age is much!')
[he] is young ('age is little!')
He is still quite young. He is twenty years old (this year).

James

Does he go to school?

17. Hakkyo e taninin ka yo?

Park

koting hakkyo
[he] skipped

James

Does he go to school?

tanen
[he] went

18. Ne, sam nyen cen e koting hakkyo
lil colep-hako, cikin in Sool
colep
[he] graduated and...

Park

sam haknyen/hangnyen/
3rd grade

University

Yes, he finished high school three years ago and is attending Seoul University in the junior class.

Sam

haknyen
[he] went

Colep-hako
[he] graduated and...
NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. (SensÚng in) kohang 1 ati 1(s1)mnikka? ('What place is your native place?') is the fixed expression of which English equivalent is 'Where do you come from?' or 'Where are you from?'. The noun kohyang refers to either 'one's birth-place' or 'the place of his family origin'.

3. ali- 'to be young' is a description verb which usually means someone 'is in or before his boyhood'. It is also used to the grownups in somewhat cynical sense, implying 'immaturity' for the age. Tae 'time', 'occasion', 'when', is a noun. (See Grammate Note 1.)

4. lsa 'moving' is a noun which refers to only moving one's residence and/or office from one place to another, and lsa-ha- 'to move' is its verb. For 'moving something' other than one's residence, the verb o(l)mke- (transitive verb) is used. Ul 'we' which includes the speaker is a personal noun which occurs in the nominal positions: uli ka 'we (as subject)', uli lli 'us (as object)', uli ske 'to us', uli e 'our', uli nén 'we (as topic)', etc. However, before certain nouns uli occurs without accompanying any particle to make up noun phrases: uli kacok 'my family', uli amoni 'my mother', uli apaci 'my father', uli nala 'my country', uli cip 'my home', uli hakkyo 'our school', uli cip salam 'my wife ('our house person')', etc.

5. Kacok means either 'family' or 'a family member'. So, Kacok i manhainnità, means '[I] have a large family.' but not '[I] have many families.'

6. Kyoelekon means either 'marriage' or 'wedding'; Kyoelekon-haassimnikka? means either 'Are [you] married?' or 'Did [you] get married?'

8. Khin atil ('big son') refers to 'the first son', and khin ttal 'the first daughter'. Mat atil and khin atil are synonymous, so are mat ttal and khin ttal. Regardless of sex, the last child is called mangan. Mangan + atil (or ttal) = the last child who is a son (or daughter). An iimmia. ('No, [it]'s not.') is synonymous with aniyoo.
9. Pumo refers always to 'both parents'. Nim is either a free noun or a post-noun. As a free noun it is a poetic word, meaning 'sweetheart' or 'lover'. As a post-noun occurring after a title or kinship name, nim makes up a noun phrase: Title (or kinship name) + nim = Title or kinship name (honored).
Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regular</th>
<th>Honored</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sensæng</td>
<td>sensæng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pak Sønsæng</td>
<td>Pak Sønsæng nim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pumo</td>
<td>pumo nim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyæng</td>
<td>hyæng nim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tæsa</td>
<td>tæsa nim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacang</td>
<td>sacang nim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apæcì</td>
<td>apænim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ønænì</td>
<td>ønænim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nui</td>
<td>nunim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atil</td>
<td>atinim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ttal</td>
<td>ttanim</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: apænim, ønænim, nunim, atinim, ttanim are irregular one-word expressions.

10. Tola ka(sia)simnita. ([They] went back.!, [They] returned.!) is a Korean euphemism for 'died'. Tek is the polite equivalent of sip 'house', 'home'. Used directly to the addressee tek also means 'your home' or sometimes 'you'.

11. Motu and its synonym canpu 'in all', 'all' occurs either as an adverb or as a noun.

12. Nui means 'female sibling' which is used by a male sibling. Nunim is one-word term specifically for 'older sister' and nui tongsæng is a noun phrase which means 'younger sister'. Tongsæng is used for any 'younger sibling' of either sex. Nui, nunim, nui tongsæng are words for males only.

14. Honoa 'single', 'alone' occurs either as a noun or as an adverb. As a noun it denotes 'a single person with no family' which is often the synonym of toksin 'an unmarried single person'.
16. Nai ka manh-ta. ('Age is plenty.') and Nai ka cek-ta. ('Age is little.') are most commonly used for the single verb expressions nilkess-ta 'is aged'; cel(l)mass-ta 'is young', 'is youthful'. The stems of nilkess-ta and calsmass-ta, both of which occur usually in the past tense to describe the present state, are nilk- and cals- respectively. Sal ('the age counter') never occurs with the numerals of Chinese character origin, but always preceded by the numerals of Korean origin.

18. Haknyen/hangnyen/ ('learning year') is a counter which occurs only after the numerals of Chinese character origin, and means either 'grader' or 'school grade':

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>il haknyen</td>
<td>'1st grader' or '1st grade'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i haknyen</td>
<td>'2nd grader' or '2nd grade'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sam haknyen</td>
<td>'3rd grader' or '3rd grade'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. tte 'time', 'occasion', 'when'

The noun tte bound to other forms occurs in the following constructions:

(a.1.) A (certain) nominal + tte = a nominal phrase 'such-and-such time'

Examples:

- hakkyo tte 'the school days'
- cemsim tte 'the lunch time'
- se sal tte 'the age of three'
- kunte tte 'the time of military service'
- ai tte 'childhood'

(a.2.) A nominal + tte + e = an adverbial phrase

- hakkyo tte e 'in the school days'
- cemsim tte e 'during the lunch time'
- ai tte e 'in [my] childhood', 'when I was child'
- se sal tte e 'at the age of three'
(b.1.) -(i)l + ttə = a nominal phrase 'the time of doing so-and-so'

The honorific and/or the past tense suffixes may occur in the -(i)l form. Examples:

Cal ttə lil kitalimnita. 'I'm waiting for the bed-time ('sleeping time').'
Selo saaul ttə ka issimnita. 'There are times of fighting each other.'
Thipi lil pol ttə ka cell cəmi issin nin sikan ići yo. 'When I watch TV is the most interesting time.' ('The time of watching TV is the most interesting time. ')

(b.2.) -(i)l + ttə + e = an adverbial phrase 'at the time of doing so-and-so', 'when [someone] does so-and-so'

The construction -(i)l ttə e which may be followed by a pause occurs as a time adverbial expression before another inflected expression to indicate that the second action/description takes place at the time of the first action/description. Examples:

Hakkyo e kal ttə e, täkə ttwilė kamnita. 'When [we] go to school, [we] usually run.'
Təhak e tanil ttə e, cikim anə wa kyələhən-həssci yo. 'When [I] was in college, [I] married my present wife.'
Achim e ilenassil ttə e, πi ka oko ississimnita. 'When [I] got up in the morning, it was raining.'
Cheim Hankuk e wassil ttə e, cə nən chongkak iesses yo. 'When [I] first came to Korea, I was a bachelor.'

2. Infinitive + se, 'and...', 'and so...'

Se like the particles to (Unit 10) and ya (Unit 11), belongs to a small class of particles which occur after inflected words. Infinitive + se which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression, and denotes the cause, reason or sequence of the first action or description for which the following inflected expression follows. Examples:

Cikim in kyələhən-həe se, anə wa ai til i tul issimnita. 'Now, I'm married, and have a wife and two children.'
Se nən mom ɨ apa se, il-hale kaci anhesse yo. 'I was sick yesterday, so I didn't go to work.'
Pı ka wa se, kil ɨ nappikun yo. 'Because it rained, the roads are bad.'
Tosekwan e ka se, tasee sikan tongan kongpu-haesimmnita. 'I went to the library and studied for five hours.'

3. A nominal + \{we \} e 'beside + the nominal', 'except the nominal'

We ('outside') is a noun which with the preceding nominal makes up a nominal phrase. A nominal + we + e which may be followed by a pause occurs as an adverbial phrase for the following inflected affirmative expression, meaning 'beside the nominal' or 'except the nominal'.

We and pakk are synonymous and are interchangeable each other. Examples:

Hyang nim han salam we e, nui tongsang 1 isse yo. 'Beside one older brother, [I] have a sister.'

Seul we e Pusan ese to kimmu-haesse yo. 'Not only in Seoul, [I] also worked in Pusan.'

Note that a nominal \{we \} e + negative inflected expression means either 'only the nominal + affirmative inflected expression' or 'except the nominal + negative expression'. Observe the following:

Na nin Hankuk mal pakk e molimnita. 'I know only Korean.' ('Except Korean, I don’t know.')

Yenge pakk e paeuci anhaesimmnita. 'I learned only English.' ('Except English, I didn’t learn.')

Phyo lil tu cang pakk e saci mot haesse yo. 'I could buy only two tickets.' ('Except two tickets, I couldn’t buy.')

Also note that ki we e, (or ki pakk e) 'Besides', 'Beside that' followed by a pause at the beginning of a sentence occurs as a sentence adverbial.

4. ssik 'each', 'at one time'

A numeral expression + ssik occurs as an adverbial phrase for the following inflected expression, denoting distribution for each separate action. Examples:

Nunim kwa nui tongsang 1 hana ssik isse yo. 'I have one older sister and one younger sister each.'

Tu salam ssik tile osipsiyo. 'Please come in, two at a time.'

Hankuk imsiik il han kaci ssik mae pokesse yo. 'I will try (eating) Korean food one by one.'

Han tal e han pen ssik omeni eke phyenci-haci yo. 'I write my mother once a month.'
5. Infinitive + iss-

The verb *iss-* preceded by a small class of action verbs in the infinitive form, occurs as an auxiliary verb. It denotes the state of being. Compare the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Infinitive + iss-nita</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sal- 'to live'</td>
<td>sale issimnita</td>
<td>'is alive'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sale kyesimnita</td>
<td>'is living'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anc- 'to sit'</td>
<td>ance issimnita</td>
<td>'is seated'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kac- 'to possess'</td>
<td>kace issimnita</td>
<td>'has'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>se issimnita</td>
<td>'possess'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se- 'to stand'</td>
<td>seu susimnita</td>
<td>'is standing'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seu- 'to erect'</td>
<td>seu issimnita</td>
<td>'is being erected'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'to park'</td>
<td>'is being parked'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu- 'to put'</td>
<td>tu susimnita</td>
<td>'is being placed'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'to place'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noh- 'to put'</td>
<td>noha susimnita</td>
<td>'is being left'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'to place'</td>
<td>'is being placed'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yell- 'to be open'</td>
<td>yellie susimnita</td>
<td>'is being open'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>'is left open'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
UNIT 14  
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

1. Pak sensæng in kohyang i eti ise yo?  
   Where is Mr. Park from?
2. Geimsi sensæng in kohyang i eti ise yo?  
   Where's Mr. James from?
3. Sensæng puin in kohyang i eti ise yo?  
   Where's your wife from?
4. Sensæng amani nin kohyang i eti ise yo?  
   Where was your mother born?
5. Mikuk tessa nin kohyang i eti ise yo?  
   Where's the U.S. Ambassador from?
6. Hankuk mal sensæng in kohyang i eti ise yo?  
   Where's the Korean teacher from?
7. Yange sensæng in kohyang i eti ise yo?  
   Where's the English teacher from?
8. Yange sensæng in kohyang i eti isinnikka?  
   Where's the English teacher from?
9. Yange sensæng in kohyang i eti imnikka?  
   Where's the English teacher from?
10. Yange sensæng in kohyang i eti lye yo?  
    Where's the English teacher from?

B. Substitution Drill

1. Ce ka se sal ttæ Seoul lo isa-næssimminti.  
   [We] moved to Seoul when I was 3 years old.
2. Ce ka se sal ttæ (e) Seoul lo wassimminti.  
   [We] came to Seoul when I was 3 years old.
3. Ce ka tasæ sal ttæ (e) Seoul lo wassimminti.  
   [We] came to Seoul when I was 5 years old.
4. Ce ka ilkop sal ttæ (e) Seoul lo wassimminti.  
   [We] came to Seoul when I was 7 years old.
5. Ce ka ahop sal ttæ (e) Seoul lo wassimminti.  
   [We] came to Seoul when I was 9 years old.
6. Ce ka vol sal ttaw (e) Seoul lo wassimnita. [We] came to Seoul when I was 10 years old.

7. Ce ka vol han sal ttaw (e) Seoul lo wassimnita. [We] came to Seoul when I was 11 years old.

8. Ce ka simul tu sal ttaw (e) Seoul lo wassimnita. [We] came to Seoul when I was 22 years old.

9. Ce ka sehin se sal ttaw (e) Seoul lo wassimnita. [We] came to Seoul when I was 33 years old.

10. Ce ka mahin ne sal ttaw (e) Seoul lo wassimnita. [We] came to Seoul when I was 44 years old.

C. Substitution Drill

1. Ce nin kei Seoul ese salesimnita. I have lived mostly in Seoul.

2. Ce nin kei Seoul ese il-hessimnita. I have worked mostly in Seoul.

3. Ce nin kei Seoul ese kongpu-hessimnita. I have studied mostly in Seoul.


5. Ce nin kei Seoul ese issessimnita. I have stayed mostly in Seoul.


7. Ce nin kei Seoul ese hakkyo lil colep-hessimnita. I graduated most of schools in Seoul.

*8. Ce nin kei Seoul ese salassimnita. I have grown up mostly in Seoul.

9. Ce nin kei Seoul ese Hankuk mal il pawessimnita. I have learned Korean mostly in Seoul.

D. Substitution Drill

1. Hyung nin i kyessimnakk? Do you have an older brother? (to male)

*2. Nuna in i kyessimnakk? Do you have an older sister? (to male)

*3. Oppa ka kyessimnakk? Do you have an older brother? (to female)

*4. anni ka kyessimnakk? Do you have an older sister? (to female)
UNIT 14

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

*5. Aoessi ka kyesimnikka?  Do you have an uncle?
*6. Acumeni ka kyesimnikka?  Do you have an aunt?
*7. Ttanim i kyesimnikka?  Do you have a daughter (H)?
*8. Chincheh i kyesimnikka?  Do you have relatives?
9. Hyenge (til) i kyesimnikka?  Do you have brothers and sisters?
10. Puin i kyesimnikka?  Do you have a wife?
*11. Gangmo (nim) i' kyesimnikka?  Do you have mother-in-law ('wife's
               mother')?
*12. Gangin i kyesimnikka?  Do you have father-in-law ('wife's
               father')?
*13. Sipum (nim) i kyesimnikka?  Do you have your husband's parents?

E. Substitution Drill

1. Ce e ame nin Mikuk e issimnita.  My wife is in America.
2. Ce e kacok in Mikuk e issimnita.  My family is in America.
3. Ce e atil in Mikuk e issimnita.  My son is in America.
4. Ce e ttal in Mikuk e issimnita.  My daughter is in America.
5. Ce e (nam) tongseung in Mikuk e issimnita.  My younger brother is in America.
*6. Ce e sachon in Mikuk e issimnita.  My cousin is in America.
*7. Ce e cokha nin Mikuk e issimnita.  My nephew is in America.
*8. Ce e cokha ttal in Mikuk e issimnita.  My niece is in America.
*9. Ce e chincheh in Mikuk e issimnita.  My relatives are in America.
10. Uli cuin in Mikuk e issimnita.  My husband ('our master') is in America.
*11. Ce e namphan in Mikuk e issimnita.  My husband is in America (to older
               people).
*12. Uli sawi nin Mikuk e issimnita.  My son-in-law is in America.
*13. Uli myanuli nin Mikuk e issimnita.  My daughter-in-law is in America.

F. Substitution Drill

1. Pumo nim i sala kyesimnikka?  Are [your] parents living?
2. Apeci ka sala kyesimnikka?  Is [your] father living?
3. Ameni ka sala kyesimnikka?  Is [your] mother living?
*4. Halapoci ka sala kyesimnikka?  Is [your] grandfather living?
*5. **Halmeni ka sala kyessinikka?**  
6. **Acessi ka sala kyessinikka?**  
7. **Acumeni ka sala kyessinikka?**  
8. **Nunim i sala kyessinikka?**  
9. **Cangno (nim) i sala kyessinikka?**  
10. **Cangin i sala kyessinikka?**  

Is [your] grandmother living?  
Is [your] uncle living?  
Is [your] aunt living?  
Is [your] older sister living? (to male)  
Is [your] mother-in-law ('wife's mother') living?  
Is [your] father-in-law ('wife's father') living?

**G. Substitution Drill**

2. Uli kacock i Sæul lo kassimnita.  
5. Uli kacock i Sæul lo olla wassimnita.  
6. Uli kacock i Sæul lo olla kassimnita.  
8. Uli kacock i Sæul lo kele kassimnita.  

My family moved to Seoul.  
My family went to Seoul.  
My family left for Seoul.  
My family came to Seoul.  
My family came up to Seoul.  
My family went up to Seoul.  
My family went down to Seoul.  
My family walked to Seoul.  
My family rode to Seoul.

**H. Substitution Drill**

1. Kacock in myëch pun ina kyessinikka?  
2. Sensang in myëch pun ina kyessinikka?  
3. Hyëng nim in myëch pun ina kyessinikka?  
4. Nunim in myëch pun ina kyessinikka?  
5. Acessi një myëch pun ina kyessinikka?  
6. Acumeni një myëch pun ina kyessinikka?  

How many are there in your family?  
How many teachers are there?  
How many older brothers do you have? (to male)  
How many older sisters do you have? (to male)  
How many uncles do you have?  
How many aunts do you have?
UNIT 14

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

7. **Mikuk chinku nin myeok pun ina kyesimnikka?** How many American friends do you have?
8. **Hyengoe nin myeok pun ina kyesimnikka?** How many brothers and sisters do you have?
9. **Ttanim in myeok pun ina kyesimnikka?** How many daughters do you have?
10. **enne nin myeok pun ina kyesimnikka?** How many older sisters do you have? (to female)
11. **Oppa nin myeok pun ina kyesimnikka?** How many older brothers do you have? (to female)
12. **Oppa nin myeok pun ina twesimnikka?** How many older brothers do you have? *(As for your older brothers, how many do they become?)*

I. Substitution Drill

1. **Apeci nin tola kasyussimnita.** My father passed away.
2. **enne nin tola kasyussimnita.** My mother passed away.
3. **Halapeci nin tola kasyussimnita.** My grandfather passed away.
4. **Halmeni nin tola kasyussimnita.** My grandmother passed away.
5. **Acassi nin tola kasyussimnita.** My uncle passed away.
6. **Acumeni nin tola kasyussimnita.** My aunt passed away.
*7. **Khin hyang nin in tola kasyussimnita.** My oldest brother passed away.
*8. **Khin nunim in tola kasyussimnita.** My oldest sister passed away.
*9. **Khin nunim in cukeussimnita.** My oldest sister is dead.
10. **Khin nunim in kyeolhon-hoessimnita.** My oldest sister is married.
11. **Khin nunim in honca immnita.** My oldest sister is single.
12. **Khin nunim in honca samnita.** My oldest sister lives alone.
13. **Khin nunim in naik manhssimnita.** My oldest sister is old.
14. **Khin nunim in naik caeksimnita.** My oldest sister is young.

J. Substitution Drill

1. **enne nin hyang nin tek eso samnita.** [My] mother lives at my older brother's home.
2. **Ceimni nin Kim Sansang tek eso samnita.** James lives at Mr. Kim's home.
3. Apeul nin Mikuk ese samnita.
4. Halapæl nin kohyang ese samnita.
5. Aeese ni Kulae esa samnita.
6. Høye ng ni Incheun pyinit ese samnita.
7. Nuni ni Pusan side esa samnita.
8. Gægel kwa canngæ nin sikol ese samnita.
9. Spææl wæ siæmænæ nin kohyang ese samnita.

[My] father lives in America.
[My] grandfather lives in the home town.
[My] uncle lives in Europe.
[My] older brother lives in the vicinity of Incheon.
[My] older sister lives in downtown Pusan.
[My] wife's father and mother live in the country.
[My] husband's father and mother live in the home town.

K. Substitution Drill
1. Ai ka tul issimnita.
2. Ati l hæna issimnita.
3. Tæl i sea issimnita.
*4. Sonca ka tul issimnita.
*5. Sonnya ka nes issimnita.
6. Hæng ntm i ne(n) (salam) issimnita.
7. Nuni ni tæsæ (salam) issimnita.
8. Aeæsæi ka yesæ pun issimnita.
10. Oppa ka hansë issimnita.
11. Yeæongæø ngi tul issimnita.
*12. Chæænæ i yælaa issimnita.
*13. Chææeæ ka myææh issimnita.
*14. Chehyæø ng i tu-se-næs issimnita.

I have two children.
I have one son.
I have three daughters.
I have two grandsons.
I have four granddaughters.
I have four older brothers.
I (male) have five older sisters.
I have six uncles.
I have seven aunts.
I (female) have one older brother.
I have two younger sisters.
I have several brothers-in-law ('wife's brothers').
I have some wife's younger sisters.
I have a couple of wife's older sisters.

L. Substitution Drill
1. Tonghøøng in myøøch sal imnikka?
2. Sonæøæg in myøøch sal imnikka?
3. Punæø in myøøch sal imnikka?
4. Nuni in myøøch sal imnikka?

How old is your younger brother?
How old is the teacher?
How old is your wife?
How old is your older sister?
5. Hyŏng nim in myŏch sal imnikka? How old is your older brother? (to male)
6. Ttanim in myŏch sal imnikka? How old is your daughter?
7. Atil in myŏch sal imnikka? How old is your son?
8. Khin si nin myŏch sal imnikka? How old is your first child?
9. Ches coe atil in myŏch sal imnikka? How old is your first son?
10. Chenam in myŏch sal imnikka? How old is your wife's brother?
11. Chece in myŏch sal imnikka? How old is your wife's younger sister?
12. Sitongsaeng in myŏch sal imnikka? How old is your husband's younger brother?

M. Substitution Drill
1. Hyŏng nim we e nunim to issimnita. I have an older sister as well as an older brother.
2. Namtongsaeng we e yatongsaeng to issimnita. I have a younger sister as well as a younger brother.
3. Seul Tewakkyo we e Kolye Tewakkyo to issimnita. There is Korea University as well as Seoul University.
4. Panto Hothel we e Cosan Hothel to issimnita. There is Chosen Hotel as well as Bando Hotel.
5. Mikuk Tasakwan we e Yangkuk Yengaekwan to issimnita. There is British Consulate as well as American Embassy.
6. Ilpon chinku we e Cungkuk chinku to issimnita. I have a Chinese friend as well as a Japanese friend.
7. Atil hana we e ttal tul to issimnita. I have two daughters as well as a son.
8. Kicha wa ppegi we e pihwongki wa pe to issimnita. There are airplanes and ships as well as trains and buses.
9. Kukce Kikcang we e Cungang Kikcang to issimnita. There is Central Theatre as well as International Theatre.
N. Expansion Drill

Tutor:  Hyang nim i issimnita. /nunim/

Student:  Hyang nim we e nunim to issimnita.

1. Pullanse mal il pœweessimnita. /Tokil mal/

2. Na nin Sœul ese salassimnita. /Pusan/

3. Uli hakkyo ese Hankuk mal il kalichimnita. /Saolyen mal/

4. Sœul sinœ lil kuyœngœ-hœessimnita. /Cungang Pakmulkwan/

5. Kicha wa pœsi lo kal su issimnita. /pœhangki/

6. K i yeœa wa kathi kako siphœssimnita. /Kim Kisu/

7. Sœul pœkin il kuyœngœ-halyœko hannita. /Pusan/

8. Kacok til il pwa ya hakessimnita. /yeœa chinku/

9. Hankuk inhœœng e kal il il i issimnita. /Cungang Sicang/

'I have an older brother.' /older sister/

'Beside an older brother I also have an older sister.'

Pullanse mal we e Tokil mal to pœweessimnita.

Na nin Sœul we e Pusan ese to salassimnita.

Uli hakkyo ese Hankuk mal we e Saolyen mal to kalichimnita.

Sœul sinœ we e Cungang Pakmulkwan to kuyœngœ-hœessimnita.

Kicha wa pœsi we e pœhangki lo to kal su issimnita.

Ki yeœa we e Kim Kisu wa to kathi kako siphœssimnita.

Sœul pœkin we e Pusan to kuyœngœ-halyœko hannita.

Kacok til we e yeœa chinku to pwa ya hakessimnita.

Hankuk inhœœng we e Cungang Sicang e to kal il il i issimnita.

0. Substitution Drill

1. Cœ nœnin cangœnyœn e kœting hakkyo lil colœpœ-hœessimnita.

2. Cœ nœnin cangœnyœn e cœnghakkyœo lil colœpœ-hœessimnita.

3. Cœ nœnin cangœnyœn e tœhakkyœo lil colœpœ-hœessimnita.

4. Cœ nœnin cangœnyœn e sœhakkyœo lil colœpœ-hœessimnita.

5. Cœ nœnin cangœnyœn e Sœul Tœhak il colœpœ-hœessimnita.

I graduated from the high school last year.

I graduated from the junior high school ('middle school') last year.

I graduated from the university last year.

I graduated from the elementary school last year.

I graduated from Seoul University last year.
6. 쓰 민 쌍여온 죽 서울 태 hak il na wassimmnita.  
I graduated from Seoul University last year.

7. 쓰 민 쌍여온 죽 서울 태 hak il tanlesimmnita.  
I attended Seoul University last year.

*8. 쓰 민 쌍여온 죽 서울 태 hak il tile kassimmnita. 
I entered Seoul University last year.

*9. 쓰 민 쌍여온 죽 서울 태 hak il kkith-machiossimnita. 
I finished Seoul University last year.

10. 쓰 민 쌍여온 서울 태 hak il kimantuessimmnita. 
I quit Seoul University last year.

11. 쓰 민 쌍여온 서울 태 hak il sicak-hassimmnita. 
I began Seoul University last year.

P. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo e kamnita. Ppese lil thamnita.

'I go to school. [I] take the bus.'

Student: Hakkyo e kal ttə (e), ppese lil thamnita.

'When I go to school I take the bus.'

1. Mok i malimnita. Mul il masimmnita.
Mok i malil ttə (e), mul il masimmnita.

Pəe ka kophil ttə (e), cemsim il meksimmnita.

3. Catongcha lil samnita. Ton i philyo-hamnita.
Catongcha lil sal ttə (e), ton i philyo-hamnita.

Phyəenci lil puchil ttə (e), uphyənkuk e ka ya hamnita.

5. Hankuk yənghwa lil sangyənghamnita. 
Hangsang pole kamnita.
Hankuk yənghwə lil sangyənghal ttə (e), hangsang pole kamnita.

Seoul esə il-hal ttə (e), kukyəng-hakessimnita.

Kələ se hwesə e kal ttə (e), Kim Sənseəng cip e tillikessimmnita.

8. Isa-hamnita. Səe cha lil sakessimmnita.
Isa-hal ttə (e), səe cha lil sakessimmnita.

Na nin pappi ttə (e), məkile na kal su apsimnita.
12. Hankuk mal il sîak-haesimnita.
   Cheim e nin elyeossimnita.
14. Tewak il kkith-machieossimnita.
   Cikim ane lil mannassimnita.

Q. Grammar Drill

Tutor: ᄎeçe ᄜpesi lil thamnikka?
       /Hakkyø e kamnита./
Student: Hakkyø e kal ttø (e), ᄜpesi lil thamnita.

1. ᄎeçe phyønci lil ssimmikka?
   /Sikan i issimnita./
2. ᄎeçe mëcøu lil masimnikka? /Mok i malimnita./
3. ᄎeçe hapsøng il thamnikka? /Salam i manhci anhssimnita./
4. ᄎeçe Yøngø lil kalichikeossimnita?
   /Yøngø sensøng i epsimnita./
5. ᄎeçe ttøk e kyesikeossimnita? /Cenyøk il maksimnita./
6. ᄎeçe kyøhlon-hakessimnita?
   /Cohahalin yøca lil mannamnita./
7. ᄎeçe halapøci ka tola kasyessimnikka?
   /Nø ka yøl sal twessimnita./
8. ᄎeçe kkacìi honca salessimnikka?
   /Tewak il colep-esqueossimnita./
9. ᄎeçe Yøngø lil pøwessimnikka?
   /Gunghakyø e tanissimnita./

Tewak e tanissil ttø (e), Hankuk mal il pøwessimnita.
Hankuk mal il sîak-haesil ttø (e), cheim e nin elyeossimnita.
Ki yeca ekese phyønci lil patessil ttø (e), na to kot ssessimnita.
Tewak il kkith-machieossil ttø (e), cikim ane lil mannassimnita.
Ppesi ese nëlissil ttø (e), anø ka kitaliko issessimnita.

"When do you take the bus?" /[I] go to school./
"When I go to school, I take the bus."
Sikan i issil ttø (e), phyønci lil ssimnita.
Mok i malil ttø (e), mëcøu lil masimnita.
Salam i manhci anhil ttø (e), hapsøng il thamnita.
Yøngø sensøng i epsil ttø (e), yøngø lil kalichikeossimnita.
Cenyøk il maksil ttø (e), cip e isskessimnita.
Cohahalin yøca lil mannal ttø (e), kyøhlon-hakessimnita.
Nø ka yøl sal twessil ttø (e), halapøci ka tola kasyessimnita.
Tewak il colep-keesil ttø kkacìi, honca salessimnita.
Gunghakyø e tanissil ttø (e), Yøngø lil pøwessimnita.

383
UNIT 14

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

R. Response Exercise

Tutor: Hakkyo e kal ttae (e), mues ilo kase yo?
Student: Hakkyo e kal ttae e, ppesi lo kamnita.

'What do you ride when you go to school?'
'I take the bus when I go to school.'

1. Camsim il mekil ttae e, nuku wa kathi kase yo?
2. Cip e issil ttae e, mues il hase yo?
3. Sikam i issil ttae e, tteok mues (il) hase yo?
4. Hankuk il ttenal ttae e, mues ilokesse yo?
5. Seoul ese salesil ttae e, musin cip e salesse yo?
6. Mom i aphil ttae e, mues il capsuse yo?
7. Ttechakkyo e tanesil ttae e, mues il kongpu-hesse yo?
8. Koting hakkyo lil colep-hesseil ttae e, myech sal iyesse yo?
9. Khephi lil masiko siphil ttae e, eti e kase yo?
10. Mok i malil ttae e, mues il masise yo?
11. Mikuk e tola kal ttae e, nuku wa kathi hakesse yo?
12. Phyenci lil puchil ttae e, mues i philyo-hoe yo?

EXERCISES

A. Tell the following story to the class that:

You are originally from Inchon but you have lived most of your life in Seoul. When you were three years old, your family moved to Seoul, and you began elementary school there at six. You went to junior high, senior high and college, all in Seoul. You are employed by a big company. You are married and have a wife and two children. Your first child is a daughter but the second one is a son. Your parents are not with your family. Your mother is still living but your father passed away a few years ago, and your mother lives at your brother’s home. Besides one older brother, you have one (each) younger sister and one younger brother but you don’t have any older sisters. Your sister got married sometime ago, but your younger brother is still single. He is now 20 years old and is still too young to get married. After finishing high school 3 years ago, he entered Seoul University. Since he is a junior this year he will be graduated in a year and a half, but probably he will have to go into military service for two years after that.
B. Prepare a short biography of yourself and tell the class. The information in your autobiography may include your home town, your schools, your immediate family, your parents, brothers and sisters if any; what they are doing; their ages; their marital status, and so forth.

C. Make a short statement or question using each of the following kinship terms:

1. grandfather
2. grandmother
3. parents
4. father
5. mother
6. uncle
7. aunt
8. older sister (for male and female)
9. older brother (for male and female)
10. daughter
11. son
12. cousin (male, female)
13. nephew
14. niece
15. grandson
16. granddaughter
17. my wife
18. my husband
19. your wife
20. your husband
21. your daughter
22. relatives
23. parents-in-law ('husband's parents')
24. father-in-law ('husband's father')
25. mother-in-law ('husband's mother')
26. father-in-law ('wife's father')
27. mother-in-law ('wife's mother')
28. sister-in-law ('wife's older sister')
29. sister-in-law ('wife's younger sister')
30. sister(s)-in-law ('husband's sister(s)')
31. brother(s)-in-law ('wife's brother(s)') /ch'okam/
32. son-in-law /saw1/
33. daughter-in-law
34. brother-in-law ('male's sister's husband') /me'pu/
35. brother-in-law ('female's older sister's husband') /nyeongpu/
제 15 과

개인의 일상과 가족 이야기 (계속)

1. 이: 제임스 선생은 미국 어디에서 오셨습니까?

   뉴욕 주
   남았습니다.
   아이들이 남았습니다.
   아이가 남았습니다.
   자랐습니다.

2. 제임스: 저의 집은 시카고에 있습니다. 그러나, 저는
   뉴욕 주에서 남아서 거기에서 자랐습니다.

3. 이: 그럼, 학교도 뉴욕 주에서 다녔습니까?

   대학

4. 제임스: 대학 맞입니다. 대학은 보스턴에서
   다녔습니다.

   나 왔습니다.

5. 이: 언제 대학은 나 왔습니까?

   팔년 전에

6. 제임스: 팔년 전에 나 왔습니다.

   그 후에

7. 이: 그 후에는 무엇을 했습니까?

   졸업합니다.
   졸업한 후에
UNIT 15. Talking About One’s Life and Family (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

Lee

1. Ceimsi sensaing in Mikuk eti ese osyassimnika? Where in America are you from, Mr. James?

James

Nyuyok Cu
nahassimnita
ai lil nahassimnita
ai ka nahassimnita
calassimnita

New York State
[I] was born
[she] gave birth to a child
a child was born
[I] grew up

My home is in Chicago. But I was born in New York State and grew up there.

2. Cë e cip in Sikhako e issimnita. Kilëna, cë nin Nyuyok Cu ese nana se këki ese calassimnita.

Lee

Well, did you go to school in New York State, too?

James

tëhak
college

You mean college? I went to college in Boston.


na wassimnikka

Lee

(‘did you come out?!’)

When did you graduate from college?

5. Ònce tëhak in na wassimnikka?

James

8 years ago

I graduated about eight years ago.

phal nyën cën e

6. Han phal nyën cën e na wassimnita.
8. 제임스: 대학을 졸업한 후에 얼마나 동안 어디 회사에서 일하셨습니까?

언제부터
의료관이 되었어요

9. 이: 그럼, 언제부터 의료관이 되었어요?

들어 옵니다
들어 온지
국무성

10. 제임스: 국무성에 들어온지 곧 올 년 되었습니다.

오기 전에
여러 나라에서

11. 이: 한국에 오기 전에 여러 나라에서 일했습니다?

12. 제임스:네, 서울에 오기 전에(는) 국무부 여러 나라에서 한 해 년 동안 근무하였습니다.

있는 동안
국무부에 있는 동안
여행
여행(은) 했습니까?

13. 이: 국무부에 있는 동안 여행 많이 했습니까?
ki hu e

7. Ki hu e nin mues il hæsminnikka?
Lee
after that
What did you do after that?

James
colæp
colæp-hamnitæ
colæphæn hu e
dæma tongan
eni hwesa
graduation
[I] graduate
for some time
a certain firm
After I graduated from college, I worked with a business firm for some time.

8. Taehak il colæp-han hu e, dæma tongan eni hwesa ese il-hæsminnitæ.
since when
have [you] become a diplomat?
Then, when did you join the foreign service? ('Since when have you become a diplomat?')

Lee
once puthæ
wekyokwan i tæesse yo

9. Kilæm, once puthæ wekyokwan i tæesse yo?
James
tile omnita
tile on ci
Kukmusæng/kungmusæng/
kkok
('I come in'); [I] join
since I joined
State Department
just; without fail; exactly
It has been exactly six years since I came into the State Department.

Dialogue B

Lee
okи cæn e
yæle nala esse
before coming
in many countries
Have you worked in many countries before coming to Korea?

10. Kukmusæng e tile on ci, kkok yun
nyen tæesseminnitæ.

Dialogue B

Lee
okи cæn e
yæle nala esse
before coming
in many countries
Have you worked in many countries before coming to Korea?
14. 제임스 : 에, 많이 (역할)하겠습니다.

기후

비슷하지가

15. 이 : 거기에 기후는 한국과 비슷했습니까?

생각합니다

16. 제임스 : 에, 그렇게 생각합니다.

기후에 대해(서)

많습니다 해주십시오.

17. 이 : 그 꽃, 기후에 대해서 좀 말씀해 주십시오.

봄

남습니다

따뜻하지만

비

비가 옵니다

여름

덥지 않습니다

18. 제임스 : 봄 날씨는 따뜻하지만, 비가 좀 많이 오지요. 여름에는 그 비 덥지 않어요.

가을

겨울

갑니다

19. 이 : 가을과 겨울 날씨도 한국과 같습니까?
12. Ne, Saol e oki cen e (nin),
Kulapha yele nala eso han sa
nyon tongan kinmu-hoessimnita.

James
Yes, I worked in several countries
in Europe for about four years
before I came to Seoul.

Lee
issnin/innin/ tongan
Kulapha e issnin tongan
yёёнг
yёёнг (il) hoessimnikka
while [I] stay; while [I] was
(tthere)
while [you] were in Europe
travelling; trip
have you travelled?
Did you travel a lot while in Europe?

13. Kulapha e issnin tongan, yёёнг
mahi hoessimnikka?

James
14. Ne, mahi (yёёнг-)hoessimnita.

Lee
kihu
pisithamnikka
climate; weather
is [it] similar?
Was the weather there similar to
that of Korea?

15. Kёёk e kihu nin Hankuk kwa
pisithhoessimnikka?

James
sёёgak-hamnita
[I] think
Yes, I think so.

Lee
16. Ne, kilehke sёёgak-hamnita.

kihu e taёёв (se)
malssim-hoe cusipsiyo
about the weather; concerning
the weather
please tell me
Please tell me a little about the
climate there.

James
sёёngkak-hamnita
17. Ki kos kihu e taёёв (se) com
malssim-hoe cusipsiyo.

Lee
malssim-hoe cusipsiyo
spring
weather
[It]'s warm but

James
pom
nalssi
ttattithaci man

391
눈
눈이 오고
바람
바람이 불니다

20. 제임스: 예, 데깨가음 날씨는 깔끔합니다. 그러나,
겨울에는 한국보다 눈이 많이 오고, 바람이
많이 불니다.
pi
pi ka omnita
yelim
tepol anhsimnit

18. Pom naissi nin ttattithaci man,
pi ka com manhi oci yo. Yelim
 e nin kili tepol anhe yo.

Spring weather is warm but it rains
a lot. It's not so hot in the
summer.

Lee
kail
kyaül
kathsimnikka/kassimnikka/

19. Kail kwa kyaül naissi to Hankuk
kwa kathsimnikka?

Is the weather in the autumn and
winter the same as in Korea?

James
nun
nun i oko
palam
palam i pu(l1)mnit

20. Ne, jeok kail naissi nin kathsimnit.
Kilona, kyaül e nin Hankuk pota
nun i mahhi oko, palam i manhi
pumnit.

Yes, the weather in the fall is about
the same, but in the winter it is
more snowy and windy than in Korea.
NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

5. (Hakkyo lil) na-o- ('to come out (of school)') is more colloquial than colep-ha- 'to graduate'

8. eni hwesa and alma tongan in the statement sentences mean 'a (certain) company' and 'for some time' respectively. Some of the interrogative expressions in the sentences other than question sentences mean 'certain-' or 'some-': eni hakkyo 'some school', nuku 'somebody', ati 'some place', eni nal 'one-day' or 'someday', sone 'sometime', myeol pan 'several times', myeolil tongan 'for some days', etc. (See Grammar Note 4b, Unit 10.)

10. Kkok 'exactly', 'just', 'without fail' is an adverb which occurs either before another adverbial expression or before an inflected expression. When it occurs before another adverbial expression kkok means 'exactly' or 'just'; before an inflected expression it means 'without fail'. Compare the following:

GROUP 1 'exactly'

Kkok han-si e ttanakessinnita.
'I will leave at 1 o'clock sharp.'

Kkok kalahhe hasipsiyoy.
'Do [it] exactly like that.'

Na nin kkok han tal tongan Hankuke
lil pesessinnita.
'I have studied Korean just (for) a month.'

GROUP 2 'without fail'

Onil pam e kkok tola osipsiyoy.
'Be sure to come back tonight.'

Ki il il kkok kkith-nakessinnita.
'I will finish the work without fail.'

Kkok yumyeng-han salam i twee ya
hamnita.
'[You] have to become a famous man by all means.'

15. Kihu 'weather', 'climate' and naisi are synonymous.

16. Sengkak is a noun which means 'thought' or 'idea'. Sengkak-ha- is a transitive verb. Thus, N + il/lil + sengkak-ha- means 'to think of N'.
1. *hu* (or *talm*) 'after', 'the later time', 'next'

*Hu* occurred previously as a noun. *Hu e* 'later', 'afterward', 'at a later time'; *ki hu e* 'after that'; a point in time + *hu e* 'after' + the point in time; a period of time + *hu e* 'the period of time + later', also occurred as adverbial phrases (See Unit 7).

The construction *-n/in hu e*, (i.e. the inflected form of an action verb ending in *-n/in* plus *hu + e*) which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression, means 'after having done so-and-so' or 'after doing so-and-so'. *Hu* and *talm* are synonymous and are interchangeable in all the above phrase constructions. Examples:

Tæhak il colep-han hu e, eni hwesa e kimu-hëssimnitä.

'After I graduated from college, I worked with a business firm.'

Kuntea esa na on hu e, tæhakwen kongpu lil sicak-hëssimnitä.

'After [I] got out of the Army, [I] began my graduate studies.'

Ki hwesa lil kimantun hu e, wekyokwan sìhem il pwasse yo.

'I took the foreign service examination after I had quit the company.'

Tul cce ai lil nahi nu e, së cip il sasimnitä.

'After the second child was born, [we] bought a new house.'

Hankuk mal il pëun hu e, Sëul e kalyëko hamnitä.

'I intend to go to Korea after I (have) studied Korean.'

2. *cen* 'before' 'the previous time'

*Cen* is a noun. *Cen e* 'previously', *ki cen e* 'before that', a point in time + *cen e* 'before + the point in time', a period of time + *cen e* 'the period of time + ago' occurred previously as adverbial phrases (See Unit 7).

The construction *-ki cen e* (i.e. the *ki* form + *cen e*) which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression means 'before doing so-and-so' or 'before [someone] having done so-and-so'. Examples:

Hankuk e oki cen e, Tong Kulapha lil yahëng-hëssé yo.

'Before [I] came to Korea, [I] travelled in East Europe.'

Sënsëng in Kukmusëng e tîle oki cen e, musa il hëssé yo?

'What did you do before you joined the State Department?'

Nalsai ka chupki cen e, kyëul cunpi lil hë ya hamnitä.

'Before the weather gets cold, I have to prepare for the winter.'
3. 

\[-n/in\ ci + \text{(period of time)} + \{\text{twe-} + \text{cina-}\}\] 'It has been...(period of time) since.'

We noticed that the intransitive verb \text{twe-}, occurring after 'a period of time', denotes 'elapsing of a period of time', and after 'a point in time' denotes 'arriving at a point in time' (Units 8 and 12). Observe (a) and (b):

(a) \[
P'eolse\{sam\ nyen\ (i)\}\ tweessimnita. \\
{se\ ha\ (ka)\}
\]
'I've been already three years.'

(b) \[
P'antohwesa\ ese\ han\ tases\ tal\ (i)\ tweessyo. \\
\]
'[I]'ve been with Bando Company about five months now.'

\[
\text{Yel-tusi\ ka\ tewyes\ se,\ cemsim\ mkile\ kassimnita.} \\
\text{Tases-si\ ka\ twemyan,\ ttanakessyo.}
\]
'\text{It was 12 o'clock, so [we] went to eat lunch.}'

'The construction \[-n/in\ ci + \text{a period of time} + \text{twe-}\] denotes that a period of time has elapsed since the action of the verb in \[-n/in\] form took place. In the above construction \text{twe-} and \text{cina-} can be interchangeably used. Examples:

\[
\text{Kukmuseng\ e\ tile\ on\ ci\ yuk\ nyen\ tweessimnita.} \\
\text{Ce\ ka\ kyeolhan-han\ ci\ sa\ nyen\ pan\ tweessyo.} \\
\text{Kim\ Senses\ il\ an\ ci\ phek\ ole\ tweessimnita.} \\
\text{Hankuk\ e\ osin\ ci\ elma\ na\ tweessna\ yo?} \\
\text{Nail\ lo\ Hankuk\ mal\ kongpu\ sicaek-han\ ci\ kkok\ nek\ tal\ i\ twekessimnita.}
\]
'It has been six years since [I] came into the State Department.'

'I have been married four and a half years.'

'I have known Mr. Kim quite a long time now.'

'How long have you been in Korea?'

'(How long has it been since you came to Korea?')

'It will be exactly 4 months by tomorrow since [I] began the Korean language studies.'

4. 

\[-nin + tongan, 'while doing so-and-so'\]

\text{Tongan} 'for', 'during' previously occurred as a post-noun which, preceded by a time expression, forms an adverbial phrase (Unit 6). The \text{-nin} form (i.e. the present Noun-Modifier word of an action verb) + \text{tongan}, which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression, means 'while doing so-and-so' or 'while [someone] having done so-and-so'. Examples:

\[
\text{Kulapha\ e\ issnin\ tongan,\ yehaeng\ manhi\ tweessimnikka?} \\
\]
'Did you travel a lot while [you were] in Europe?'
Næ ka cip e epsnin tongan, ai ka pyøng i nassinnita.

'The child was sick when I was away from home.'

Tæhak e taninin tongan, kisuksa ess salesimmnita.

'While I was attending college, I lived in the dormitory.'

Ce nin Seoul ess il-hanin tongan, Hankuk phungsok il pœuko sipshimmnita.

'I'd like to learn Korean customs while I work in Seoul.'

5. A nominal e + (tæhæ) ae 'concerning + the nominal', 'about + the nominal'

The verb tæhæ 'to face' or 'to confront' is an transitive verb. However, its infinitive form tæhæ (or tæhæya) + the particle ae occurs immediately after a nominal + e before an inflected expression to mean 'concerning the nominal' or 'about the nominal'. Examples:

Hankuk phungsok e tæhæ ae com mal-hæ cusipsiøy.

'Please tell me a little about Korean customs.'

Sænsæng e tæhæ ae (iyaki) tilin il i issimmnita.

'I have heard about you (before).'

Mikuk yaksæ e tæhæ ae amu kos to molinnikka?

'Don't [you] know anything about American history?'

Ceimsi ka na eke Hankuk sosik e tæhæ ae mule pwassæ yo.

'James asked me about news from Korea.'
DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

1. C'e nín Nyuyok Cu ese nahassimnita. I was born in New York State.

2. C'e e hyang nín in Sikhako ese nahassimnita. My older brother was born in Chicago.

3. C'e e anw nín Kulapha ese nahassimnita. My wife was born in Europe.

4. C'e e tongsamg in Puk-Han ese nahassimnita. My younger brother was born in North Korea.

5. C'e e anw nín Inchon ese nahassimnita. My older sister was born in Inchon.

6. C'e e oppa nín Wasingthon Cu ese nahassimnita. My older brother was born in Washington State.

7. Ulí khan atil in pygwen ese nahassimnita. Our oldest son was born in the hospital.

8. C'e e nui tongsamg in wekuk ese nahassimnita. My younger sister was born abroad.

9. C'e e tta in hume ese nahassimnita. My daughter was born abroad.

10. C'e e tta in hume ese calassimnita. My daughter grew up abroad.

11. C'e e tta in hume ese salassimnita. My daughter has lived abroad.

12. C'e e tta in hume ese hakkyo e tanyassimnita. My daughter went to school abroad.

13. C'e e tta in hume ese khassimnita. My daughter grew up abroad.

B. Substitution Drill

1. C'e nín Nyuyok ese nha se keki ese calassimnita. I was born in New York and grew up there.

2. C'e nín Inchon ese nha se Seoul ese calassimnita. I was born in Inchon and grew up in Seoul.

3. C'e nín Puk-Han ese nha se Nam-Han ese calassimnita. I was born in North Korea and grew up in South Korea.

4. C'e nín Kulapha ese nha se Mikuk ese calassimnita. I was born in Europe and grew up in the United States.

5. C'e nín Sikhako ese nha se Tongpu ese calassimnita. I was born in Chicago and grew up in the East.
I was born in the East and grew up in the West.

*7. Cē nīn Sepu ese naha sē Nampu ese calassimnītita.
I was born in the West and grew up in the South.

I was born in the Southern part of the U.S. and grew up in South America.

*9. Cē nīn Hawai ese naha sē (Mikuk) pontho ese calassimnītita.
I was born in Hawaii and grew up on the mainland (of the U.S.).

I was born on an island and grew up on the mainland.

*11. Cē nīn sikol ese naha sē tosi ese calassimnītita.
I was born in a village and grew up in the city.

*12. Cē nīn chon ese naha sē tohwci ese calassimnītita.
I was born in a village and grew up in a metropolitan area.

C. Substitution Drill

1. Tēahak in Nyuyok Cu ese tanyēssimnītita. [I] went to college in New York State.

2. Tēahak in Nyuyok Cu ese na wassimnītita.
I finished college in New York State.

3. Tēahak in Nyuyok Cu ese tila kassimnītita.
I was admitted to ('entered') college in New York State.

4. Tēahak in Nyuyok Cu ese colephessimnītita.
I graduated from college in New York State.

5. Tēahak in Nyuyok Cu ese sicakbessimnītita.
I began college in New York State.

6. Tēahak in Nyuyok Cu ese kkhīthmachīssimnītita.
I finished college in New York State.

7. Tēahak in Nyuyok Cu ese taniko sipheesimnītita.
I wanted to attend college in New York State.

8. Tēahak in Nyuyok Cu ese tanilyoko heessimnītita.
I intended to go to college in New York State.

I could not attend college in New York State.

10. Tēahak in Nyuyok Cu ese tanie ya heessimnītita.
I had to attend college in New York State.
D. Substitution Drill

1. Hakkyo lîl colep-han hu e, hwesa ese il-hessimnitā.
2. Hakkyo lîl colep-han hu e, Kukmusang e tile wassimnitā.
3. Hakkyo lîl colep-han hu e, wekyokwan 1 tweyassimntā.
4. Hakkyo lîl colep-han hu e, Kulapha lîl yâhong-hessimnitā.
5. Hakkyo lîl colep-han hu e, kyelhon-hessimntā.
6. Hakkyo lîl colep-han hu e, kuntâ e tile kalyeko hessimntā.
7. Hakkyo lîl colep-han hu e, ches cro ai lîl naheassimntā.
8. Hakkyo lîl colep-han hu e, cengpu e kinmu-hessimntā.

I worked for a company after graduating from school.
I joined the State Department after graduating from school.
I joined the foreign service after graduating from school.
I travelled in Europe after graduating from school.
I got married after graduating from school.
I intended to join the (military) service after graduating from school.
We had our first child after I graduated from school.
I worked for the government after graduating from school.
I thought so after I graduated from school.

E. Substitution Drill

1. Mikuk Kongpowen e tile on ci sam nyen twessimnitā.
2. I il (il) sicak-han ci sam nyen twessimnitā.
4. Wekyokwan 1 twen ci sam nyen twessimnitā.
5. I hwesa ese il-han ci sam nyen twessimnitā.
6. Twahak 11 colep-han ci sam nyen twessimnitā.

It's been three years since I joined USIS.
It's been three years since I began this job.
I have been married for three years.
It's been three years since I joined the foreign service.
I have worked at this company for three years now.
It's been three years since I graduated from college.
I have lived in Korea for three years now.
8. Geimae Sansaeng il an ci sam nyen tweasimnita.
   I have known Mr. James for three years now.

   It's been three years since I first met my wife.

F. Substitution Drill

1. Sool e oki cen e, Kulapha ese il-haessimnita.
   Before I came to Seoul I worked in Europe.

2. Sool e oki cen e, teonak il na wassimnita.
   I graduated from college before I came to Seoul.

3. Sool e oki cen e, Hankuk mal il pawessimnita.
   I studied Korean before I came to Seoul.

4. Sool e oki cen e, Kukmunseong e kirinu-haessimnita.
   I worked at the State Department before I came to Seoul.

5. Sool e oki cen e, kyeilhon-haessimnita.
   I got married before I came to Seoul.

6. Sool e oki cen e, kuntu ese na wassimnita.
   I got out of the army before I came to Seoul.

7. Sool e oki cen e, Ilpon il kukyeong-haessimnita.
   I went sightseeing in Japan before I came to Seoul.

8. Sool e oki cen e, uli ai ka nahassimnita.
   Our child was born before we came to Seoul.

9. Sool e oki cen e, speci ka tola kasisessimnita.
   My father passed away before I came to Seoul.

10. Sool e oki cen e, yala nala lil yehaung-haessimnita.
    I travelled in many countries before I came to Seoul.

*11. Sool e oki cen e, ai ka cukessimnita.

G. Combination Drill

Tutor: Teonak il colap-haessimnita.
   eni hwesa ese il-haessimnita.

Student: Teonak il colap-han hu e,
   eni hwesa ese il-haessimnita.

   'I graduated from college. [I] worked for a (certain) company.'

   'I worked for a company after graduating from college.'

   Wekyokwan i twen hu e, yale nala ese salessimnita.
2. Cengpu e tile wassimnita. Sam nyen twessimnita.
7. Apeci ka tola kasæssimnita. Æmeni ka hyæng nim tæk e samnita.

H. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo lil colep-hako kuntœ e kakesæe yo.
Student: Hakkyo lil colep-han hu e, kuntœ e kakesæe yo.
1. Hankuk mal il mænce pæukø, Hankuk e kalæeko hæ yo.
2. Cœnsim ilmekko, Mikuk Tæsakwan e tillikesæ yo.
3. Wekuk ese manhi kuxyæng-hako, ñænyen ccim e tola okæsæe yo.
4. Uphyænækø ese phyænci lil puchiko, kot tapang ilo okæsæe yo.
5. Wekyokwan i twæko, kælkon-hakesæe yo.

'I[I]'ll graduate from school and go to the army.'

'After graduating from college [I]'ll go to the army.'

Hankuk mal il mænce pæun hu e, Hankuk e kalæeko hæ yo.
Cœnsim il mækin hu e, Mikuk Tæsakwan e tillikesæ yo.
Wekuk ese manhi kukyæng-han hu e, ñænyen ccim e tola okæsæe yo.
Uphyænækø ese phyænci lil puchin hu e, kot tapang ilo okæsæe yo.
Wekyokwan i twen hu e, kælkon-hakesæe yo.
6. Catongcha l'il phalke, wekuk ilo ttenakesse yo.

7. Chinku eke i chok il cuk, talin chok il patkesse yo.

8. Seul lo isa-hako, cip il sakesse yo.

9. I il il kkith-nae, talin il il sitak-hakesse yo.

10. Com te sangkak-hako, mal-hakesse yo.

I. Grammar Drill (Use kkok in the proper place.)

Tutor: Sam nyen twesimnita.

Student: Kkok sam nyen twesimnita.

1. Cikim han-si innita.

2. Ce nin kimnyon e selhin sal innita.

3. Onil pam e uli cip e osipsiyo.


5. Manhi capsusipsiyo.

6. Pak Sensaeng eke mule posipsiyo.

7. I chok i cohainnita.

8. Han-Yung sacen in sakessimnita.


10. Ki il il kkith-nae ya hamnita.

11. Khephy l'il masiko siphsimnita.

J. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Han tal cen e Seul e wassimnita.

Student: Seul e on ci, han tal twesimnita.

1. Sam nyen cen e tnehakkyo lil colop-haessimnita.

'If has been three years.'

'It has been exactly three years.'

Cikim kkok han-si innita.

Ce nin kimnyon e kkok selhin sal innita.

Onil pam e uli cip e kkok osipsiyo.

Kim Sensaeng eke kkok kilohe mal-hasipsiyo.

Kkok manhi capsusipsiyo.

Pak Sensaeng eke kkok mule posipsiyo.

I chok i kkok cohainnita.

Han-Yung sacen in kkok sakessimnita.

Nnil kkaci kkok tola okessimnita.

Ki il il kkok kkith-nae ya hamnita.

Khephy l'il kkok masiko siphsimnita.

'I came to Seoul one month ago.'

'It's been one month since I came to Seoul.'

Tnahakkyo l'il colop-han ci, sam nyen twesimnita.
2. O nyen cēn e kyelhôn-hwaesimnita.
3. Tu tal cēn e Kim Sensông i yakî lil ttenassimnita.
4. Sam-sip pun cēn e hakkyo e wassimnita.
5. Il nyen cēn e Ceimsî Sensông il alessimnita.
6. Ne cuil cēn e Hankuk mal kongpu lil sicak-hwaesimnita.
7. Tasse cēn e Mikuk e tahassimnita.
8. Yelhil cēn e Sœul lo isa-hwaesimnita.
9. Myeck tal cēn e i sikye lil sasimnita.
10. Yelâ hæ cēn e Mikuk il ttenassimnita.

Kyelhôn-han ci, o nyen twesimnita.
Kim Sensông i yakî lil ttenan ci, tu tal twesimnita.
Hakkyo e on ci, sam-sip pun twesimnita.
Ceimsî Sensông il an ci, il nyen twesimnita.
Hankuk mal kongpu lil sicak-han ci, ne cuil twesimnita.
Mikuk e tahin ci, tassæ twesimnita.
Seoul lo isa-han ci, yelhil twesimnita.
I sikye lil san ci, myeck tal twesimnita.
Mikuk il ttenan ci, yelâ hæ twesimnita.

K. Response Drill

Tutor: ance Hankuk e wassimnikka? /tassæ tal/
Student: Hankuk e on ci, tassæ tal twesimnita.
1. ance Hankuk mal kongpu (lil) sicak-hwaesimnikka? /ne cuil/
2. ance kyelhôn-hwaesimnikka? /sam nyen/
3. ance wekyokwan i twesimnikka? /il nyen pan/
4. ance catongcha lil sasimnikka? /myeckil/
5. ance tahak il colap-hwaesimnikka? /sa nyen cœm/
6. ance hyang nim ekese phyenci lil patessimnikka? /il cuil/

'When did you come to Korea?'
/five months/
'I have been in Korea for five months.' ('It's been five months since I came to Korea.')
Hankuk mal kongpu (lil) sicak-han ci ne cuil twesimnita.
Kyelhôn-han ci, sam nyen twesimnita.
Wekyokwan i twen ci, il nyen pan twesimnita.
Catongcha lil san ci, myeckil twesimnita.
Tahak il colap-han ci, sa nyen cocim twesimnita.
(Hyang nim ekese) phyenci lil patin ci, il cuil twesimnita.
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 15

7. ance halapeci ka tola kasiessimnikka?
   /olae/
   Halapeci ka tola kasin ci, ola
tweessimnita.
8. ance Seoul lo isa-haesimnikka?
   /yole haya/
   Seoul lo isa-han ci, yela ha
tweessimnita.
9. ance putehe ki yaca lil
   aloesamanikka? /myech nyen/
   Ki yaca lil an ci, myech nyen
tweessimnita.
10. ance hakkyo lil kimantuessimnikka?
    /myech tal/
    Hakkyo lil kimantun ci, myech tal
tweessimnita.

L. Response Exercise (Answer the question based on reality.)

Tutor: Hankuk mal il peun ci, alma
        na tweesse yo?
Student: Hankuk mal il peun ci,
         tu tal tweessimnita.
1. Tewakklo lil na on ci, alma na tweesse yo?
2. Wekyokwan i twen ci, myech nyen ina tweesse yo?
3. Kyahon-han ci, alma na tweesse yo?
4. Kohyang il ttënn ci, alma na tweesse yo?
5. Puin kwa mannan ci, myech he na tweesse yo?
6. Tewak il colëp-han ci, myech nyen ina tweesse yo?
7. Cëngpu il e tile on ci, alma na tweesse yo?
8. Yëki e san ci, alma na tweesse yo?
9. Kunta lil këith-machin ci, alma na tweesse yo?
10. Mikuk Tewakwan e kinmu-han ci, alma na tweesse yo?

M. Response Exercise (Answer the question based on the fact.)

1. Sensëng in kohyang i ati (1)ci yo?
2. Mikuk eni cu esse oseyessci yo?
3. Sensëng in ati esse nahassci yo?
4. Sensëng in ati esse calassci yo?
5. Tewak in musin tewak il tanissci yo?
6. Tewak in once na wassci yo?
7. Koting hakkyo ninn myech sal e tile kassci yo?
8. Kacok in motu myech salam ina twesici yo?

405
9. Ai til in musin hakkyo e tanici yo?
10. Khin aai nin myech sal ici yo?

N. Grammar Drill (Use acik in the proper place.)

Tutor: Sikye ka ppalimnita.
Student: Sikye ka acik ppalimnita.

1. Hankuk mal pæuki ka ełyepsimnita.
2. Ce tongsæng in honca ímnita.
4. Na nin ce yecæ e ilim il molimnita.
5. Kikcæng e salam i manhsimnita.
6. Pak Sensæng in kimchi lil cohahamnita.
7. Ce nin cohin il il chacko issimnita.
8. Uli hwesa ese nin yosæ to pappimnita.
9. Apeci nin nai ka kili manhci anhsimnita.
10. Ce e nunim in cikim to yeppimnita.

'The watch is fast.'
'The watch is still fast.'
Hankuk mal pæuki ka acik ełyepsimnita.
Ce tongsæng in acik honca ímnita.
Kim Sensæng i acik samusil ese il-hako issimnita.
Na nin ce yecæ e ilim il acik molimnita.
Kikcæng e acik salam i manhsimnita.
Pak Sensæng in acik kimchi lil cohahamnita.
Ce nin acik cohin il il chacko issimnita.
Uli hwesa ese nin yosæ to acik pappimnita.
Apeci nin nai ka acik kili manhci anhsimnita.
Ce e nunim in cikim to acik yeppimnita.

0. Response Drill (Answer the question using acik.)

Tutor: Kulapha e ka pon il i issimnikkë?
Student: Aniyo, acik (ka pon il i) apsimnita.

'Have you ever been in Europe?'
'No, not yet.'
Aniyo, acik makci anhsimnita.
Aniyo, acik tweci anhsimnita.
Aniyo, acik kyelhon-haci anhsimnita.
Aniyo, acik colep-haci anhsimnita.
Aniyo, acik kkith-naci anhsimnita.
Aniyo, acik ttenaci anhsimnita.
7. Yélthu-si ppóši ka péllsé
   tahassinnikka?
   Aniyo, acik taho ci anhesissnitata.
8. Kulapha llí yahəŋ-han il i
   issimmikka?
   Aniyo, acik yahəŋ-han il i
   epsimmítnita.
9. Sœul Cungang Kongwan il
   kuyəŋ-hassimmikka?
   Aniyo, acik kuyəŋ-haci anhesissnitata.
10. Sœ il il chačsissimmikka?
    Aniyo, acik chacci anhesissnitata.

P. Response Drill

Tutor: Hankuk e oki cae e, eti ese
       il-hassé yo? /Ilpon/
Student: Hankuk e oki cae e, Ilpon
         ese il-hassimnitata.

1. Kyəlθon-haki cae e nuki e-cip ese
   salasé yo? /pumo ním cip/
   Kyəlθon-haki cae e, pumo ním cip ese
   salassimnitata.

2. Kuntë e kaki cae e, mues il
   həssé yo? /təθak/
   Kuntë e kaki cae e, təθak e
   tanissimnitata.

3. Cəmsim il məkki cae e, mues il
   masil kka yo? /məkcu/
   Cəmsim il məkki cae e, məkcu lìl
   masipita.

4. Cıkim puin il alki cae e, nuki lìl
   alasé yo? /talín yəca/
   Cıkim anwə lìl alki cae e, talín
   yəca lìl alessinmata.

5. Wekyokwən i twəki cae e, mues i
   twəko siphəssé yo? /təθak ɨkysu/
   Wekyokwən i twəki cae e, təθak ɨkysu
   ka twəko siphəssinmata.

6. Sœul Təθakkyo e tîle kaki cae e,
   ñi həkkyo e tanasé yo?
   /koting həkkyo/
   Sœul Təθakkyo e tîle kaki cae e,
   koting həkkyo e tanissimnitata.

7. Phyənci lìl puchiki cae e, mues
   il sasə yo? /uphyo/
   Phyənci lìl puchiki cae e, uphyo
   lìl sasimnitata.

Q. Response Drill (Give a negative answer using /kilehke/.)

Tutor: Nai ka manhəsimnikka?
       'Is [he] old?'
Student: Aniyo, kilehke manhći
         anhe yo.

1. Nai ka cəkəsimnikka?
   Aniyo, kilehke cəkći anhe yo.
UNIT 15

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

2. Nal mata pappimnikka?
   Aniyo, kilehke pappici anhæ yo.

3. Seul cip kaps i pissamnikka?
   Aniyo, kilehke pissaci anhæ yo.

4. Ki yœa lil cohabamnikka?
   Aniyo, kilehke cohabaci anhæ yo.

5. Kim Sensæng i Yæge lil cal hamnikka?
   Aniyo, kilehke cal hací anhæ yo.

6. Catongcha ka philyo-hamnikka?
   Aniyo, kilehke philyo-haci anhæ yo.

7. Mæli ka aphimnikka?
   Aniyo, kilehke aphici anhæ yo.

EXERCISES

A. Tell the following story about Mr. James to Pak Sensæng in Korean:

Mr. James' home is in Chicago but he was born in New York State and grew up there. Until he finished high school he lived in his home town with his parents and brothers and sisters, but he went to college in Boston, Massachusetts. He enjoyed his college life/samghwal/ very much. After he graduated from the college he worked for a while with a business firm but his work was not very enjoyable. He wanted to become a diplomat, so he took examinations/sihœm il pwassimmita/. After that, he was able to join the foreign service right away. It was six years ago. For the first four years he worked in two countries in Europe. While he was in Europe, he could travel in several countries, and saw many interesting places. Since then, Mr. James has been in Korea almost two years now. The weather in Europe is more or less similar to that of Korea. The spring climate in Europe is warm but it rains more than in Korea. The autumn weather there is the same as that of Korea, but in winter it is more snowy and windy. Before he came to Korea, he didn't know much about Korea and the Korean people, but he has been enjoying his work here. He made many Korean friends and learned many Korean customs/phungsok/.

B. Conduct short conversations so that the following expressions are included in the second partner's responses.

1. emi hwesa   'a (certain company)'
2. elma tongan 'for some time'
3. kkok       'without fail', 'exactly', 'at all cost'
4. Hankuk e {tehæ } se {kwanæ } 'about Korea'
5. tehak e taninj tongan 'while [I was] attending college'
UNIT 15

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

6. Seoul e oki ce n e  'before [I] came to Seoul'
7. wekyokwan i twen hu e  'since [I] joined the foreign service'

C. Find out from Brown Sansæng the following information:

1. where he was born.
2. where he grew up.
3. what schools he went to.
4. when he finished college.
5. where he worked first after he graduated from college.
6. why he quit the first job.
7. how long he has been married.
8. how many years he has been with the government.
9. what country he served in before he came to Seoul.
10. how many countries he has travelled in so far.

D. Pak Sansæng wants to know where you were born and grew up; tell him that you were born at (A) and grew up at (B):

(A)  (B)
1. farm/nongcang/   city
2. island           mainland
3. country (or village)   metropolitan area
4. the East         the South
5. the Mid-west     the West
6. North America   South America
7. overseas        home country/ponkuk/
8. North Korea     South Korea

E. Prepare a ten-minute narrative autobiography of yourself based on Units 14 and 15 for a fluency drill and tell it to the class, giving such information as your hometown, your schools, some of your experiences, your parents, brothers and sisters, relatives, your immediate family members, their ages, your immediate plans, etc.
제 16 과
전화

(대화 A)

전화
전화 번호
 찾는데

1. 제임스: 이 전화의 전화 번호를 찾는데 찾을 수(가) 없hiếu나.

찾hiếu나
전화(출) 걸째>}'나나

2. 김: 전화를 걸려고 하십니까?

전화 걸립

3. 제임스: 예. 좀 전화 걸 일이 있خفض나.

전화 번호 책

4. 김: 전화 번호책에 없어십니까?

보잎냐다
보이지 않습니다

5. 제임스: 보이지 않습니다. 혹시 아세요?

잠깐만
수첩
적습니다
적어 두었습니다
UNIT 16. Telephoning

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

James
cenhwa
cenhwa penho
chaczin te / channinte /
1. I Sansomge cenhwa penho lil
cenhwa te, chacil su (ka) episimnita.
telephone
telephone number
[I]’m looking for [it] and...
I’m looking for Mr. Lee’s telephone
number but I cannot find it.

Kim
ke(li)mimnita
cenhwa (lil) kelkessimnita
2. Cenhwa ke(li)lyako hasimnika?
([I] hang [it]!)
[I]’ll make a telephone call
Are you going to make a phone call?

James
cenhwa kel il
3. Ne, com cenhwa kel il i issimnita.
something to call for
Yes, I have something to ask him
about.

Kim
cenhwa penho chok
4. Cenhwa penho chok e episimnika?
teleephone book
Can’t you find it in the telephone
book? ('Isn’t it in the telephone
book?')

James
poimnita
I see [it] ('it is seen');
poici anhaisimnita
[it] is visible
I can’t see [it]; [it] is not
hok }
visible
hoksi
by any chance?

5. Poici anhaisimnita. Hoksi ase yo?
I can’t find it. Do you happen to
know it?
6. 김 : 잡안만 기다리세요. 내 수첩에 적어 두겠습니다.

다행입니다. 다행합니다

7. 제임스 : 아, 다행입니다. 좀 찾아 주십시오.

8. 김 : 예, 여기 이 선생의 회사 번호만 있습니다.

9. 제임스 : 몇 번이지요?

공, 영

10. 김 : 삼의 육 오 공 삽입니다.

(대화 B )

=전화기에서=


12. 제임스 : 여보세요. 반드시 회사입니까?

예?

들립니다

안 들립니다

크게

Kim

Camkan man
suchap
ne suchap
caksimnita
cake tuessimnita

Just a while; only a short time
address book
my address book
[I] write [it] down
[I] wrote [it] down (for future
use)

6. Camkan man kitalise yo. Ne suchap
   e cake tuessimnita.

Just a minute. I wrote it down in
my address book.

James

taheong imnita }
taheong-hamnita} 
7. A taheong imnita. Com chace
    cusipsiyo.

[It] is fortunate
On, that's lucky. Please look it
up for me.

Kim

8. Ne, yaki I Sensang (e) hwesap
    penho man issimnita.

I have only his office number, here.

James

myach pen/myeppen/
9. Myach pen ici yo?

what number
What is it? ('What number is it?')

Kim

kong}
yeong}
10. Sam e yuk o kong sam imnita.

zero
It is 3-6503.

Dialogue B
(..on the telephone..)

    Hello.

James

12. Yepose yo. Panto Hwesa imnikka?
    Hello, is this the Bando Company?
14. 제임스 : 아, 거기 반도 토사이지요?

15. S : 예, 그렇습니다.
바뀔니다
바꿔 주십시오.

16. 제임스 : 거기에 이 기수 선생 계시면 좀 바꾸어 주십시오.

17. S : 거기는 어때(이)시지요?

18. 제임스 : 미국 대사관의 제임스입니다.
게시는지 보겠습니까
틈이 게시는지 보겠습니까


20. 제임스 : 고맙습니다.
(대화 C)
-전화기에서-

21. 교환수 : 한국 은행입니다.

외환과
부탁
부탁합니다

414

James
I beg your pardon! I can't hear you very well. Please speak a little louder.

14. A, kski Panto Hwesa ici yo?

S
Yes, it is.

James
[I] exchange; [I] change please let me talk to..
('please change it!')

15. Ne, kilshimnita.

S
May I talk to Mr. Kisu Lee, please? ('If Mr. Kisu Kim is there, please change it.')


James
May I ask who is calling, please? ('Where is that place?!')

17. Kski nin eti (i)sici yo?

S
This is James at the American Embassy.

18. Mikuk Tsuchkwan e Ceimsi imnita.

James
I'll see if [he] is [in]

S
I'll see if [he] is free


James
Wait just a moment, please. I'll see if he's free now.

S
I'll see if [he] is [free]


James
Thank you.
22. 이: 의환과의 최 선생(예게) 좀 부탁합니다. 

동화
동화중
동화중 입니다
돌립니다
돌려 드리겠습니다.

23. 교환수: 아, 지금 동화중 인네요. 잠깐 기다리세요.
골, 돌려 드리겠습니다. 예, 말씀 하십시오.

24. 이: 여보세요. 최 준 선생 계십니까?

자리

25. 비서: 지금 자리에 안 계시는데요. 점심에 나 가셨습니다.

들어 옵니다

26. 이: 복 시에 들어 올지 아십니까?

돌아옵니다
전합합니다
전합 말씀

27. 비서: 아아, 골 드면 올 것입니다. 전합 말씀이 있으시는지요?

28. 이: 아니오, 괜찮습니다. 아마 다시 걸겠습니다.
Dialogue C
(…on the telephone…)

Kyetwanse(‘Operator’)

   Bank of Korea.

   Lee

   Wehwan Kwa
   puthak
   puthak-hamnita

22. Wehwan Kwa e Chwe Sansang (eke)
    com puthak-hamnita.

   Nyotew kong
   thonghwa
   thonghwa cung
   thonghwa cung imnita
   tollimnita
   tollye tilikessimnita

   Kyetwanse

   (‘telephone talk’)
   (‘in the middle of telephone talk’)
   line is busy
   [I] rotate [it]; [I] switch [it]
   I’ll switch it for you

   The line is busy now. Just a moment.
   I’ll connect you right away.
   O.K., go ahead, please.

23. A, cikim thonghwa cung in te yo.
    Camkan kitalise yo. Kot tollye
    tilikessimnita. Ne, malssim-
    hasipsiyo.

   Lee

       kyesimnikka?

   Pise

   cali

   25. Cikin cali e an kyesin in te yo.
       Censim e na kasyessimnita.

   Lee

   tile omnita

26. Myach-si e tile ol ci asimnikka?

   [he] comes in

   Do you know what time he will be
   back?
tola omnita
ёнhamnittta
ёнhal małssim

27. Ama, kot tola ol kəs imnita.
ёнhal małssim i issisinin ci yo?

[he] comes back
[I] deliver
message to leave (words to deliver)

He will probably be back soon.
Would you like to leave a message for him?

Itta təsi kəlkesimnita.

Lee

No, that's all right, thank you.
I'll call later.
NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. *Kal-* is a transitive verb which occurs after a certain object, and has various meanings depending on the object: *canhwa il kal-* 'to make a phone call' or 'to telephone'; *os il kal-* 'to hang up clothes'; *ssaum il kal-* 'to pick a quarrel' or 'to challenge (to someone)'; *ton il kal-* 'to bet (money)' or 'to make a deposit'; *sangmyung il kal-* 'to risk life', etc.

5. *Hok* or *hoki* 'by any chance', 'do [you] happen to...?' occurs as an adverb in question sentences or in conditional clauses. *Poi-* 'to be visible' or 'to be seen' is an intransitive verb, whereas *po-* 'to look at' is a transitive verb.

6. *Camkan man* ('only a short while') occurs as a time adverbial.

7. *Tahwag innita.* ('[It] is a fortunate thing.') is a fixed expression which is used as the Korean equivalent of 'That's fortunate.'.

9. *Myach pan/*myeppan/* means either 'what number?' or 'how many times?' in question sentences; 'several times' or '(on) several occasions' in other types of sentences.

13. *Ne?* which is pronounced with a sharp rising intonation means 'Beg your pardon!' or 'Pardon me!' when you didn't understand someone well; *ne?* with a prolonged mild rising intonation means 'Oh, is that right?' (Unit 18).

13. The inflected word *khike* 'loudly', 'to be big' occurs as an adverbial before another inflected expression (See G. N. 3). *Tulli-* 'to be audible' or 'to be heard' is an intransitive verb, whereas *tut~til-* 'to listen to' or 'to hear' is a transitive verb.

22. *Puthak* is a noun which means 'a favor to ask'. *(Sensæng eke) puthak i misinnita.* means 'I have a favor to ask of you.' *Puthak-hannita.* is used to mean, among the more common English equivalents, 'Would you please do it?'; 'Please do it for me.'; 'Yes, please.'; 'Please take care of things.'; etc. In telephoning, *So-and-so eke com puthak-hannita.* is a fixed expression used something like 'May I speak to so-and-so?' or '*(Mr.)* so-and-so, please.'
28. *Itta* 'later' refers to 'the later time on the same day'.

*Akka* 'a little while ago' is its one-word antonym.

**GRAMMAR NOTES**

1. *-n/in/nin te* 'while...', 'such is the case', 'in view of the fact that...', 'and then...', 'but...'

   Remember that the post-noun *te* 'place' preceded by an inflected modifier word of an action verb occurred previously in the nominal positions (See Note 7 on Basic Dialogues, Unit 12). The selection of *-n, -in, or -nin* is the same as the present noun-modifier ending (Unit 5). Remember, however, *-n/in/nin te, -n/in te* and *-1/11 te* should be distinguished. Examples:

   (a) il-hanin te
       moknin te
   'the place where [I] work'
   'the eating place'

   (b) kan te
       calan te
   'the place where [I] went'
   'the place where [I] grew up'

   (c) tillil te
       sal te
   'the place to stay by'
   'the place where [I] shall live'

   Note that the construction *-n/in/nin te* which may be followed by a pause may also occur before another inflected expression to signify some further explanation or remark in relation to or on the basis of the first action or description follows in the following inflected expression. The honorific and/or tense suffixes may occur in the *-nin* form of which inflected forms are the same in shape for both action and description verbs: *(a,e)sanin te*, for the past; *-kesanin te*, for the future. Observe the following examples:

   Hankuk mal il pau'nin te, sikan i manhi
       kollimnita.

   Catongcha lil sanin te, ton i philyo-
       hamnita.

   I sensang il chac(i)nin te, chacil su
       (ka) epsimnita.

   Ce nin pae ka kophin te, sensang in
       pae ka kophobic anha yo?

   'When (or In) studying Korean it
       takes a lot of time.'

   'I'm studying Korean and it takes
       a lot of time.'

   'When buying a car [you] need money.'

   'I'm looking for Mr. Lee, but [I]
       cannot find him.'

   'I am hungry; are you not?'
Ce sacheon in cocongsa in te, ton il manhi pale yo.

'C, Illpon mal il pwhesönin te, cikim in ta icesimnita.

Ki yaca ka hakkyo tte e phak yeppesönin te, acik to kilêhci yo?

'Neill nalasi ka cohkesönin te, eti e kal kka yo?

'n/en/nin te yo may occur to end a sentence which, in this case, is a kind of informal polite statement sentence. The sentence final -n/en/nin te yo occurs when the speaker shows slight surprise or hesitation.

Cham, co phangki ka ppalin te yo.

Ceimsi Sansöng i Hankuk mal il cal hanin te yo.

Aniyo, cal molikessönin te yo.

'O, that airplane is really fast.'

'Mr. James speaks good Korean.'

'No, I don't know [it] well.'

2. Infinitive + {tu-
     (noh-)

As an independant verb, tu- or its synonym noh- means 'to put [something] (somewhere)' or 'to place [something] (somewhere)'.

However, tu- (or noh-) preceded by the infinitive of an action verb also occurs as an auxiliary verb. The verb phrase Infinitive + tu- which literally means something like 'does so-and-so and put [it] somewhere' is usually used to denote 'does so-and-so for future use or benefit' or 'does so-and-so in advance', or 'does so-and-so for the time being'. Compare the following pairs:

a. Han-Yang sacen il sassimnita.

Han-Yang sacen il sa tuessimnita.

'I bought a Korean-English dictionary.'

'I have bought a Korean-English dictionary (for future use).'

b. Ne'il in hal il 1 manhkesin kka,
   onil 1 il il ta kkith-nâkessimnita.

Ne'il in hal il 1 manhkesin kka, onil 1 il il ta kkith-nâ tukessimnita.

'Since I'll have many things to do tomorrow, I will finish all this work today.'

'Since I'll have many things to do tomorrow, I will finish up all this work today (in advance).'

c. Sukce lil hae ya hamnita.

Sukce lil hae tus ya hamnita.

'[I] have to do homework.'

'[I] have to do homework now (in advance.

{(for some reason).
d. Kim Cangkun e conhwa pênhô lil ale pwa ssimnikka?
   'Did you find out General Kim's telephone number?'

   Kim Cangkun e conhwa pênhô lil ale pwa tuessimnikka?
   'Have you found out General Kim's telephone number (for future use or in case)?'

3. -ke

The inflected form ending in -ke (or simply the -ke form) occurs before and modifies another inflected expression. Since the -ke form occurs as an adverbial, the ending -ke is called the Adverbializing Ending or simply the Adverbializer. The -ke form occurs in the following constructions:

(a) A description verb inflected in -ke occurs as a modifier before another inflected expression of an action verb.
   
   Alintapke calamnita.  '[It] is growing beautifully.'
   Cohke mal-hôsas yo.  '[He] spoke well of [you].'  
   '[He] spoke nicely.'
   Kilahke haci masipsyo.  'Don't do it that way.'
   Pissake sassimnita.  'I paid much for it.'  ('I bought it to be expensive.')
   Khike malssim hasipsyo.  'Please speak loud.'

(b) An action verb inflected in -ke which may occur without a pause immediately before ha- is used with a causative meaning, of which English translations are {have} {someone} do...'. The personal nominal + {eke} {lil/lil}

   may or may not precede the -ke ha- construction.
   
   Kake hassimnita.  '[I] had [him] go.'
   Ai eke cake hasipsyo.  'Please have the child go to bed.'
   Gangpu ka na eke wekuke lil pœuke hamnita.  'The government makes me study foreign languages.'

Note: As for the other contraction types where the -ke form occurs (e.g. -ke twe-) we will learn in further units.
4. -n/in/nin ci

We learned that the construction, an interrogative + an inflected modifier word + the dependent noun ci, before an inflected expression occurs as a nominal expression (See Grammar Note 3, Unit 13).

The construction -n/in/nin ci without being preceded by an interrogative may also occur as a nominal expression. If -n/in/nin ci occurs as the object of the following inflected expression, the object particle il/ill is usually omitted. The construction -n/in/nin ci is used as the equivalent of the English nominal clauses which begin with 'if-', 'whether-' or 'that-'. Examples:

Kim Sansaeng i kyesinin ci pokessimnita. 'I'll see if Mr. Kim is in.'
Cip kaps i pissan ci alko sipshimnita. 'I want to know whether the rent is high.'
Sikan i manhi kellinin ci ale posipsyo. 'Please find out if it takes a lot of time.'
Miss Brown i Seoul e sanin ci mollassimnita. 'I didn't know whether Miss Brown is living in Seoul.'

The honorific and/or tense suffixes may occur in the -n/in/nin form in the above construction: -(a,e)sanin ci for the past, -kessnin (or its substitute -(i)l ci for the future, respectively. Note that an inflected modifier word (e.g. -n/in/nin) + ci + yo? may be used as a kind of informal polite question sentence final form. This form of a question sentence occurs only in a dialogue after a certain context has been established to denote the speaker's doubt or modesty. Examples:

(Hoksi) cenhal malssim i issasinin ci yo? 'Would you leave a message (by) any chance?'
Keki nin nuku isin ci yo? 'May I take your message, sir?'
Kilam, Wellam mal in swiu ci yo? 'I wonder if you'd like to leave a message.'
Kilssyo. Tangssin i Kimchi ill cohahal ci yo? 'As for there, who are you?'
Hoksi se tesa ill mannasiossin ci yo? 'May I ask whom I am speaking to?'
Kohal ci yo? 'Who is speaking, please?'
Kilssyo. Tangssin i Kimchi ill cohahal ci yo? 'Well, is Vietnamese easy, then?'
Hoksi se tesa ill mannasiossin ci yo? 'Well, I'm afraid if you'll like Kimchi.'

'I wonder if you have met the new ambassador, sir.'
UNIT 16

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

1. Cheok i poici anhsimnita. I cannot find the book (‘The book is not seen.’)
2. Canhwa pensho ka poici anhsimnita. I cannot find the telephone number.
3. (Ne) suchep i poici anhsimnita. I cannot find my address book.
4. (Ne) cikap i poici anhsimnita. I cannot find my wallet.
5. (Ne) kapang i poici anhsimnita. I cannot find my briefcase.
6. Ton i poici anhsimnita. I cannot find money.
7. Ipku ka poici anhsimnita. I cannot find the entrance.
8. Pata ka poici anhsimnita. I cannot see the sea.
9. (Ne) cangkap i poici anhsimnita. I cannot find my gloves.

B. Substitution Drill

1. Canhwa penho lil chacil su (ka) espanin te yo. I cannot find the telephone number.
2. Ne suchep il chacil su (ka) espanin te yo. I cannot find my address book.
3. Ki e cuco lil chacil su (ka) espanin te yo. I cannot find his address.
4. Il cali lil chacil su (ka) espanin te yo. I cannot find a job.
5. Cohin kihwe lil chacil su (ka) espanin te yo. I cannot find a good chance.
6. Ton cikap il chacil su (ka) espanin te yo. I cannot find the (money) wallet.
7. Sikmo lil chacil su (ka) espanin te yo. I cannot find a maid.
8. Chulku lil chacil su (ka) espanin te yo. I cannot find the exit.
9. Ipku lil chacil su (ka) espanin te yo. I cannot find the entrance.
10. Chulipku lil chacil su (ka) espanin te yo. I cannot find the exit-entrance.

424
C. Substitution Drill

1.Sansaeng e mal (solli) i/ka cal tillimnita.
I [can] hear you well. ('Your speech (sound) is well heard.')

2. Tangsin e mal (solli) i/ka cal tillimnita.
I [can] hear you well.

3. Kyosu e mal (solli) i/ka cal tillimnita.
I [can] hear the professor well.

4. Sangkwan e mal (solli) i/ka cal tillimnita.
I [can] hear well what my boss says.

*5. Latiyio solli ka cal tillimnita.
I [can] hear the radio clearly.

I [can] hear the airplane well.

*7. Palam solli ka cal tillimnita.
I hear the wind (well).

I hear the train (well).

I hear the footsteps (well).

*10. Mok solli ka cal tillimnita.
I [can] hear [your] voice clearly.

*11. Salam solli ka cal tillimnita.
I hear the voices (well).

D. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sansaeng eke com pakkwe cusipsiyo.
May I speak to Mr. Kim? ('Exchange [it] to Mr. Kim.')

*2. Kim Paksa eke com pakkwe cusipsiyo.
May I speak to Dr. (Ph.D.) Kim?

May I speak to Professor Kim?

May I speak to Dean Kim?

*5. Kim Chongcang eke com pakkwe cusipsiyo.
May I speak to President (of university) Kim?

May I speak to President (of company) Kim?

May I speak to General Kim?

May I speak to Judge Kim?

May I speak to Minister (in the government) Kim?

May I speak to Principal Kim?

May I speak to Minister (of the church) Kim?
May I speak to Mr. (‘Section Chief’) Kim?
May I speak to Mr. (‘Bureau Chief’) Kim?
May I speak to Congressman (‘National Assembly Member’) Kim?

Please speak a little louder.
Please speak a little more slowly.
Please speak a little faster.
Please speak a little more softly.
Please speak a little more quietly.
Please speak a little more quickly.
Please say [it] once more (‘once again’).
{Please say as you like.
{Please say freely.
I’ll see if Mr. Kim is in.
I’ll find out if Mr. Kim is in.
I’ll inquire if Mr. Kim is in.
I’ll try looking for Mr. Kim.
I’ll call [to see] if Mr. Kim is in.
   I do not know if Mr. Kim is in.
   I'd like to know if Mr. Kim is in.
8. Kim Sansang i kyesin ci allye cusipsiyo.
    Please let me know if Mr. Kim is in.

G. Substitution Drill
1. Kim Sansang i kyesin ci alko sipshimnita.
   I'd like to know if Mr. Kim is [in].
2. Pak Sansang i osin ci alko sipshimnita.
   I'd like to know if Mr. Park comes.
3. Pak Sansang i osin ci molimnita.
   I don't know if Mr. Park comes.
4. Sikan i manhi kellinnin ci molimnita.
   I don't know if it takes a lot of time.
5. Sikan i manhi kellinnin ci mule pokessimnita.
   I'll ask if it takes a lot of time.
   I'll ask if the size is the same.
   I'll find out if the size is the same.
8. Ki pun i aphin ci ale pokessimnita.
   I'll find out if he (honored) is sick.
   I'll try calling to see if he is sick.

H. Substitution Drill
1. Kim Sansang i etl e sanin ci molimnita.
   I don't know where Mr. Kim lives.
2. C'e puin i mues il hanin ci molimnita.
   I don't know what the lady does.
3. Tewthongsang i myech sal in ci molimnita.
   I don't know how old the President is.
   I don't know whom Dr. Kim is looking for.
5. Sikmo ka mues il wenhannin ci molimnita.
   I don't know what the maid wants.
   I don't know when [my] boss is coming back.
UNIT 16

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

7. Sangkwan i ance tola onin ci amnita. I know when [my] boss is coming back.
8. Sangkwan i ance tola onin ci alko sipsimnita. I'd like to know when [my] boss is coming back.
9. Sangkwan i ance tola onin ci allye cusipsiyo. Please let [me] know when [your] boss is coming.

I. Substitution Drill

1. Cheok il iyca e tuussimnita. I have put the book on the chair.
2. Ai il cil e tuussimnita. I have left the child at home.
3. Kapang il cha e tuussimnita. I have left the briefcase in the car.
4. Cikap il pang e tuussimnita. I have left my wallet in the room.
5. Cha il chako e tuussimnita. I have left the car in the garage.
6. Catongcha il ciluchacang e tuussimnita. I have left the automobile in the parking lot.
7. Cacanke il cil untingcang e tuussimnita. I have left the bicycle in the playground.
8. Cha il pakk e tuussimnita. I have left the car outside.
9. Kong il an e tuussimnita. I left the ball inside.
10. Kong il cangwani e tuussimnita. I left the ball in the yard.
11. Kilae il puakh e tuussimnita. I left the dish in the kitchen.

J. Grammar Drill (Use hoksi in the proper place.)

Tutor: Kim Sansang e cenhwa penho lil ase yo?
Student: Kim Sansang e cenhwa penho lil hoksi ase yo?

1. Tæthongyang il manussæ yo?
2. Cungkuk imsik il make pon il i issæ yo?
3. Sansang in Panto Hwesa e kimnu-hase yo?
4. Cikim thim il kyese yo?

'Do you know Mr. Kim's telephone number?'
'Do you know Mr. Kim's telephone number, by any chance?'
'Do you happen to know Mr. Kim's telephone number?'
Tæthongyang il hoksi manussæ yo?
Cungkuk imsik il hoksi make pon il i issæ yo?
Sansang in hoksi Panto Hwesa e kimnu-hase yo?
Cikim hoksi thim il kyese yo?
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 16

5. Ki pun i myeó-si e tola ol ci ase yo?
6. Ohu e sinë e tillikesse yo?
7. Kim Sansëng e cuso lil cëke tuëssë yo?
8. Kimchi lil capsuvin cëk i issë yo?

K. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Ki e liim il cëksëssimnita.
Student: Ki e liim il cëke tuëssimnita.

1. Ssan kutu lil sasë yo.
2. Cen e Hankuk mal il pëwaasë yo.
3. Incheñ kanin kil il mule pwaasë yo.

4. Yel-han-si e cëmsim il mëkaasë yo.
7. Ton il inhéng e nëhasë yo.
8. Pam e phyënci lil ssëssë yo.

L. Combination Drill (Make one sentence out of two in the pattern as in the example.)

Tutor: Cenhwa penho lil chacsëmsnita.
Poci anhsiësnita.

Student: Cenhwa penho lil chacnin te,
poci anhsiësnita.

1. Hankuk mal il pëwnnit. Acik cal
    mal-haci mot hamnita.
2. Palam i pünnita. Kili chupci
    anhsiësnita.
3. Cë yëca wa insa-hësssësnita.
    Ilim il molikëssësnita.

'I wrote his name.'
'I wrote his name down (for future use).'

Ssan kutu lil sa tuëssë yo.
Cen e Hankuk mal il pëwa tuëssë yo.
Incheñ kanin kil il mule pwa tuëssë yo.

Yel-han-si e cëmsim il mëka tuëssë yo.
Kim Sansëng eke puthak-hë tuëssë yo.
Kim Sansëng e cuso lil ala tuëssë yo.
Ton il inhéng e nëhe tuëssë yo.
Pam e phyënci lil ssë tuëssë yo.
Il il ppalli kñith-machë tuëssë yo.

'I'm looking for the telephone number.' 'I cannot find it.'

'I'm looking for the telephone number, but I cannot find it.'

Hankuk mal il pëwnnin te, acik cal
mal-haci mot hamnita.
Palam i punin te, kili chupci
anhsiësnita.
Cë yëca wa insa-hëssnën te, ilim il
molikëssësnita.
5. Catongcha lil sako sipshimnita.
   Ton i epsimnita.
7. Pak Sansaeng eke cenhwa lil kellosesimnita. Amu to patci anhessimnita.
8. Cip ese hakkyo ka phek momnita.
    I Sansaeng in kele se tanimnita.
9. Onil kkaci il il kkith-nee ya hamnita.
    Sikan i pucok-hamnita.

4. Cemsim il makessnin te, tasi poe ka kophimnita.
5. Catongcha lil sako siphin te, ton i epsimnita.
6. Cem nin Seoul pukin e sanin te, nal mata kicha lo il-hale omnita.
7. Pak Sansaeng eke cenhwa lil kellossnin te, amu to patci anhessimnita.
8. Cip ese hakkyo ka phek men te, I
    Sansaeng in kele se tanimnita.
9. Onil kkaci il il kkith-nee ya hanin te, sikan i pucok-hamnita.

M. Completion Exercise

Tutor: Cem nin Hankuk mal il poenin te,
Student: Cem nin Hankuk mal il poenin
         te, acik cal mal-haci mot
         hamnita.

1. Catongcha lil sako siphin te,
2. Cemsim il makassnin te,
3. Hal il i mannin te,
4. Yeja chinku ka aphin te,
5. Hakkyo ka men te,
6. Hankuk mal i phak alyeun te,
7. Cip e cenhwa lil kelossnin te,
8. Hyang nim i Seoul lo isa-hessnin te,
9. Ton i com philyo-han te,
10. Palam i manhi punin te,

'I am studying Korean but (or and)...'
'I'm studying Korean but I can't
    speak it well yet.'

N. Grammar Drill (Use itta in the proper place and repeat after the teacher.)

Tutor: Tasi kelkessimnita.
Student: Itta tasi kelkessimnita.

1. Tola osipsiyo.
   'I'll call again.'
   'I'll call again later.'
    Itta tola osipsiyo.
2. Ch`onch`{nhi tt`ena`ly`ko hamnita.
3. Tto pwe'pke`s`imnita.
4. Ta`pang es`e man`naps`ita.
5. Kim S`a`n`s`a`ng 1 tillil kes` imnita.
6. Kat`hi kal `kka yo?
7. Kh`e`phi han can sa cuse`yo.
8. Tto wa to kw`a`nchanha`imnikka?
9. Sikan 1 iss`imny`en, pwa ya ha`essen`imnita.

Itta ch`onch`{nhi tt`ena`ly`ko hamnita.
Itta tto pwe'pke`s`imnita.
Itta ta`pang es`e man`naps`ita.
Kim S`a`n`s`a`ng 1 itta tillil kes` imnita.
Itta kat`hi kal `kka yo?
Itta kh`e`phi han can sa cuse`yo.
Itta tto wa to kw`a`nchanha`imnikka?
(Itta) sikan 1 iss`imny`en, (itta) pwa ya ha`essen`imnita.

0. Grammar Drill (Use akka in the proper place and repeat after the teacher.)

Tutor: Ce nun c`em`si`m il me`kessen`imnita.
Student: Ce nun akka c`em`si`m il me`kessen`imnita.

'I ate lunch.'
'I ate lunch a little while ago.'

1. Kim S`a`n`s`a`ng in tt`ena`ss`imnita.
2. L`a`tic es`e ki mal il ti`l`essen`imnita.
3. I Pak`sa wa cenhwa lo mal`ha`essen`imnita.

Kim S`a`n`s`a`ng in akka tt`ena`ss`imnita.
Akka l`a`tic es`e ki mal il ti`l`essen`imnita.
I Pak`sa wa cenhwa lo akka mal`ha`essen`imnita.

4. Il il ta kk`ith`-ma`chi`essen`imnita.
5. Pi ka oki sisak`-ha`essen`imnita.
6. Ce nun com swi`essen`imnita.
7. Ch`inku ek`ese cenhwa lil pat`essen`imnita.

Il il akka ta kk`ith`-ma`chi`essen`imnita.
Pi ka akka oki sisak`-ha`essen`imnita.
Ce nun akka com swi`essen`imnita.
Ch`inku ek`ese akka cenhwa lil pat`essen`imnita.

EXERCISES

A. Read aloud the following telephone numbers:

1. 3-7506
2. 5-2673
3. 4-0407
4. 2-9716
5. 3-3654
6. 22-3402
7. 23-9781
8. 73-0193
9. 567-7065
10. 370-8731
11. 672-0409
12. 490-2089
13. 903-4356
14. 633-0295

431
UNIT 16  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

B. Make a short statement in Korean for each of the following:

1. Dr. (Ph.D.) Kim
2. Professor Park
3. Dean Koh
4. President (of a university) Yoon
5. General Choe
6. Minister (of the Government) Lee
7. Judge Whang
8. Principal James
9. Reverend Yoo
10. President (of a company) Choe
11. Doctor Park
12. Mr. (chief of the department) Pae
13. Mr. (chief of the bureau) Seo
14. Senator/Sangwan iywen/ Kennedy
15. Representative ('National Assembly Member') Kim
16. Mr. Kim's driver
17. a maid
18. your boss
19. a banker/inhwongka/
20. a politician/cangchika/
21. a farmer/nongpu/
22. a laborer/notongca/
23. a businessman/soepka/
24. a guest (or visitor)/sonnim/
25. the owner/cuin/

C. Telephone rings; answer it and say as follows:

1. 'Hello!'  
2. 'I'm sorry but I can't hear you well.'  
3. 'Please speak a little louder.'  
4. 'One moment, please, the line is busy now.'  
5. 'You have the wrong number but I'll connect you to his office in a minute.'  
6. 'May I ask who is calling, please?'  
7. 'Please wait just one second: he is on the line now.'  
8. 'O.K.'

D. Call the Bank of Korea and conduct the following conversation:

Secretary

1. 'Hello, Bank of Korea!'  
2. 'I'm sorry but he is not in the office now.'  
3. 'Yes. He went out for lunch with a friend.'  
4. 'It's been nearly an hour since he left the office, so he'll be back soon. Do you want to leave a message?'  
5. 'O.K., then, please do so.'

You

'Hello, may I speak to Mr. Choe of the Foreign Currency Section?'

'Do you happen to know where he has gone?'

'Do you know what time he'll be back?'

'No, that's all right. I have something to say to him directly /cikjepe/. I'll call again in about a half an hour.'

'Thank you.'
E. Make short dialogues so that the second partner uses the following expressions in his response:

1. main tælo
2. tæi han pan
3. cohın khewɛ
4. il cali
5. coyonghɛ
6. com te khike
7. allyɛ cusipsiyo
8. khiki
9. (ton) cikap
10. pal soli
11. itta
12. akka
13. chæncænhi
14. camkan man
15. Puthak-hamnita.

'as one pleases'
'once more'
'a good chance'
'a job'
'quietly'
'a little more loudly'
'let [someone] know'
'size'
'wallet'
'foot-steps'
'later'
'a little while ago'
'slowly'
'just a moment'
'Yes, please.'

F. For each of the following pairs of words make short statements in Korean which include both words:

1. car: garage
2. automobile: parking lot
3. bicycle: playground
4. children: the outside
5. ball: the inside
6. dishes: kitchen
7. kids: yard (or garden)
8. address book: pocket/(ho)cumænɛ
9. wallet: briefcase
10. Mr. Kim's address: his telephone number

G. Tell the class that:

1. you've jotted down Mr. Kim's address and telephone number.
2. you've deposited money in the bank.
3. you can hear the airplane well.
4. you've left the car on the street.
5. you don't know whom Dr. Kim is looking for.
6. you can answer any questions from the students.
7. you'll call the doctor a little while later.
8. you heard about the story just a little while ago.
제 17 과  전화 (계속)

(대화 4)

(김 선생 부인이 부엌에 있다.)

음마

1. 어린 딸: 음마! 전화 왔어요.

밥이야
너
네가
앉니

2. 어머니: 어디에서 왔니? 네가 밥이야.

아빠

3. 어린 딸: 어느 분이 아빠를 찾아요.

4. 어머니: 그림, 잠깐만 기타리야. 곧 들어 가겠어.

(대화 5)

조금 후 에.

5. 미시스 김: 어브세요.

鬱

6. 제임스: 어브세요. 김 기수 선생 데입니까?

7. 미시스 김: 예, 그렇습니다.
UNIT 17. Telephoning (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A
(ʻJames tries to reach Mr. Kim..⟩
(Mrs. Kim is in the kitchen.)

Little Daughter

엄마
1. 엄마! 쓰나바 외세 요.
   Telephone, Mommy!

Mother

patela
ne
ne ka
wassni/wannı/
2. ʻ티에 외세니? 네 카 패 теле.
   Where is it? You get it.

Little Daughter

압파
3. ᆐ骜 푼 ᆐኢ 압파 릿 찰체 요.
   Somebody wants Daddy.

Mother

4. 킥렘, 카무 만 카리예요.
   Kot tılé kakessta.
   Well, just a minute. I'm coming in
   right away.

Dialogue B
(ʻa little later..⟩

Mrs. Kim

5. ᆑ-pagination-yo.
   Hello.

James

となっています
6. ᆑ-pagination-yo. 킥 키سو 삼서웅
   Is this Mr. Kisu Kim's residence?
   텅 임니카?

Mrs. Kim

7. 네, 칼에습니까.
   Yes, it is.
8. 제임스: 지금, 김 선생 때문에 계세요?

아이구
조금 전에

누구 (이)시지요?

제임스 (이)라고 합니다

10. 제임스: 김 선생의 친구입니다. (저는) 제임스 (이)라고 합니다.

선생에 대해서, 선생에 관해서
이야기, 얘기
이야기 들었음니다


갔다고 (말)합니다

12. 제임스: 그러세요? 전화로 설례합니다. 김 선생, 어디에 갔다고 (말)했습니까?

약속
란날 약속이 있음니다

13. 미셸 선생님: 친구와 란날 약속이 있단고 (말씀)하십시오.
그리고, 다음 시까지 집에 오겠다고 했어요.

14. 제임스: 그러면, 다시 겪겠음니다.
8. Cikim, Kim Sansaeng, tekk e
    kyese yo?

   James
   Is Mr. Kim at home now?

   Mrs. Kim
   aiku
   cokim cen e

   Geel; On!
   a little while ago

9. Aiku! Cokim cen e na kasyeonnin
    te yo. Nuku (1)sici yo?

   James
   Ceimsi (1)lako hamnita
   [they] say that [I'm James
   I'm sorry. He went out just a minute
   ago. Who is calling, please?

   Mrs. Kim
   (Ce nin) Ceimsi (1)lako hamnita.
   I'm Mr. James, a friend of Mr. Kim's.

    (Ce nin) Ceimsi (1)lako hamnita.

   James
   sensaeng e {teh se}
   {kwanhe se}
   yaki
   iyaki

   about you; about teacher;
   concerning you
   story

   iyaki tilesimminta
   I heard (the story)

   11. A, kilase yo? Sansaeng e tehe se
       iyaki manhi tilesimminta:
       Ce nin Missisi Kim innita.

   James
   kanta ko (mal-)hamnita
   [they] say that [they] go

   Kilase yo! Canhwa lo sillye-hamnita.
   Kim Sansaeng, eti e kanta ko
   (mal-)hassimnigga?

   Mrs. Kim
   yaksok
   appointment, date
   mannal yaksok i issimminta
   [I] have an appointment to meet
   (someone)

13. Chinku wa mannal yaksok i issta ko
    (malssim-)hassismnita. Kiliko,
    tass-si kkaci cip e okess ta ko
    hassse yo.

   He said that he has an appointment to
   meet with a friend. And he said
   that he'll come home by 5 o'clock.
15. 미시유스 길: 선생에게 전화하라고 말람가요?

16. 제임스: 그저, 제가 전화했다고 말씀해 주십시오.

17. 미시유스 길: 이, 알겠습니다. 그렇게 하겠습니다.

18. 제임스: 그럼, 안녕히 계십시오.

19. 미시유스 길: 고맙습니다. 안녕히 계세요.

Mrs. Kim
cenhwa-hala ko (mal-)hamnita [he] tells [me] to call [him]

15. Sansung eke cenhwa-hala ko Shall I tell [him] to call you?
mal-hal kka yo?

James
malssim-hae cusipsiyo please tell [him]

16. Kice, ce ka cenhwa-haessta ko Just tell him that I called.
malssim-hae cusipsiyo.

Mrs. Kim

17. Ne, alkessimnita. Kilehke Yes, I understand. I will do so.
hakessimnita.

James

18. Kilem, annyenghi kyepsiyo. Goodbye, then.

Mrs. Kim

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1.3. amma 'Mommy' and appa 'Daddy' are the words frequently used by children. Girls use them much more than boys.

9. Aku! 'Gee!' or 'Oh!' is a kind of exclamatory expression which indicates the speaker's surprise, delight, disappointment or helplessness, depending on the situation.

11. lyaki ('story') and its contracted form yeki is used as a synonym of mal in all environments. lyaki-ha- is equally interchangeable with mal-ha-.

12. Yaksok means either 'a promise' or 'an appointment (to meet someone)'. Its verb yaksok-ha- means 'to promise' or 'to make an appointment'.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Plain Speech: Formal and Informal

So far we have had the Polite Speech (Formal and Informal). As was mentioned in Units 2, 3, 4 the Polite Speech is the speech level spoken to the adults and/or the seniors in rank (e.g. age, school-grade, job, military, social status, etc.) in the hierarchy of the Korean social system. In general, a foreigner is expected to use the Polite Speech no matter who he speaks to, regardless of his age or status. At the same time he is spoken to in the Polite Speech. However, there is another commonly used speech level or style spoken to or among the children, which we shall call Plain Speech. Just like the Polite Speech, the Plain Speech has formal and informal styles, both of which are no different in level but are different only in the inflected forms of verbs at the end of the sentences. The two styles are usually mixed in one's speech. It is not easy to draw a strict line as to who uses the Plain Speech to whom, but it is very important to recognize the relationships of the two people by the speech levels they use each other. The following are the general rules governing how Plain Speech is used:
(a) The parents to their own children of any age.
(b) The older siblings in the family to the younger ones, or both another if there is little difference in age.
(c) The adults to the children of others who are under or around their teen age.
(d) Among the old and present classmates of all school ages (even in their adult life Plain Speech is often maintained).
(e) Among the friends of childhood or boyhood.
(f) The teachers to their students of pre-college ages.
(g) The senior graders of the same high school to their junior graders (in case of girls, even in college).

The reverse of the above rules is not possible.

(A). To form the Formal Plain Speech the final verbs in the sentences end in the following endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statement:</th>
<th>Question:</th>
<th>Imperative:</th>
<th>Propositional:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-(nin/n)ta</td>
<td>-(i)ny1? or -(i)nya?</td>
<td>-(a, a)la</td>
<td>-ca</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Action Verb:
   a. Present  
   b. Fast
   c. Future

2. Description Verb:
   a. Present
   b. Fast
   c. Future

3. Copula:
   a. Present
   b. Fast
   c. Future

Notes:
(1) -ninta is added to a stem ending in a consonant; -nta to a stem ending in a vowel. Exception: An action verb stem ending in either -sa- or -sa- takes -ta for a statement (in present tense), e.g. iss→ issta/itta/, efsa-→ epsta/epatta/.
(2) -nyi? is added to a stem ending in a consonant; -nyi? to a stem ending a vowel.
(3) After a noun which ends in a vowel the copula stem -i- is usually silent.
(4) The verb element to which -la is added is identical with an infinitive form. There are a few irregular forms for the imperative ending: 'go' o → wala or onesa, 'come' ka → kala or kakola.

(B) The Informal Plain Speech has just one inflected form of a verb regardless of the sentence types, that is, all the four sentence types (statement, question, propositative, imperative) are in the Infinitive with different intonation patterns. When you drop off the particle yo from the Informal Polite Speech, the remaining part with the same intonation pattern is the Informal Plain Speech. Exception: the copula expression in Informal Plain Speech is (i)ya. Compare the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal Polite</th>
<th>Informal Plain</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ka yo.</td>
<td>Ka.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ka yo?</td>
<td>Ka?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ka yo.</td>
<td>Ka. (in propositative intonation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ka yo.</td>
<td>Ka. (in imperative intonation)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'I go.'
'Do [you] go?'
'Let's go.'
'Go.'

2. Personal Nouns in the Polite and Plain Speeches

When the speech levels change, not only the final verb forms change but also the other words in the sentence such as personal nouns may require different forms (polite, less polite, humble, blunt, etc.) depending on what speech level the speaker uses. Study the following chart:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Speech Level:</th>
<th>Speaker:</th>
<th>Addressee:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Polite</td>
<td>ce 'I', ce ka 'I (as emphasis subject)', ce or ce e 'my', ce lil 'me', ce eke 'to me', uli or ceil or ceil til 'we'</td>
<td>senseng or senseng nim or tangsin 'you', senseng til or tangsin til 'you (pl.), etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plain</td>
<td>na 'I', ne ka 'I (as subject)', na lil</td>
<td>ne 'you', ne ka 'you (as subject)', ne lil 'you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. Particles lako and ko

The particles lako and ko follow quotations and are called the Quotative Particles (or simply the quotatives). Since lako occurs after a direct quotation of the exact words of the original speaker - a word, a phrase, a sentence, an utterance, etc., it is called the Direct Quotative Particle.

Examples:

(a) Original expression: Meli ka ap̄himnita. "[I] have a headache."
Quoted: 'Meli ka ap̄himnita,' lako mal-hoesinmite. '[He] said that he had a headache.'

(b) Original expression: Kim Sŏnsaeng (1) tae k e kyese yo?
Quoted: 'Kim Sŏnsaeng (1) tae k e kyese yo?' lako mal-hoesa yo. '[He] asked if Mr. Kim is at home:' "Is Mr. Kim at home?," said [he].'

(c) Original expression: Onil ttanapsita.
Quoted: 'Onil ttanapsita,' lako (ki ka) mal-hoesinmite. '[He suggested that we (he and I) lease today:' "Let's leave today," said he.'

(d) Original expression: Annyanghi kasipsiyo.
Quoted: 'Annyanghi kasipsiyo,' lako ki yaca ka mal-hoesinmite. '[She said [to me] a good-bye:' "Good-bye," she said.'

Note that ne 'yes' and aniyo 'no' in the plain speech are replaced by ing or kile for ne; ani for aniyo.
Ko follows a quotation which is said from the point of view of the speaker reporting the quotation. The tenses of the original is retained in the quotations but the forms of the verb are in indirect forms which we shall call the Indirect Quotations. Thus, ko is called the Indirect Quotative Particle. The Indirect Quotative verb forms are almost identical with the Formal Plain Speech verb forms with a few exceptions; in Indirect Quotations, the copula is (i)la: (la after a nominal ending in a vowel and ila after a nominal ending in a consonant); an imperative verb ending is -(i)la: (ila is added to a consonant verb stem and -la to a vowel stem); a question verb ending is always -(n1)nya instead of -(i)nyi. Observe the following chart:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indirect Quotation Ending</th>
<th>The Quotative Particle</th>
<th>Verbs which may be followed</th>
<th>Approximate Translations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Statement:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Action Verb:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>-ninta/nta</td>
<td>+ ko +</td>
<td>‘says that..’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>-(a,ə)ssta</td>
<td></td>
<td>‘thinks that..’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>-kessta</td>
<td></td>
<td>‘understands that..’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Description Verb:</td>
<td></td>
<td>(mal-)ha-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>-ta</td>
<td>सङ्गकहा-</td>
<td>‘asks (if)..’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>-(a,ə)ssta</td>
<td>a(l)-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>-kessta</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Conula</td>
<td>(i)la</td>
<td>(mal-)ha-</td>
<td>‘tells [someone] to..’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Question:</td>
<td>-(n1)nya</td>
<td>+ ko +</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(mal-)ha-</td>
<td>‘suggests that..’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mule po-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Imperative:</td>
<td>-(i)la</td>
<td>+ ko +</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(mal-)ha-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Propositional:</td>
<td>-ca</td>
<td>+ ko +</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(mal-)ha-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

444
Examples:

1. "Did [he] say where [he] is going?"
   "[He] said that [he] has an appointment."
   "[He] says that his mother died."
   "Mr. Kim says he'll live in Seoul."
   "[They] say that Mr. Choe's son is very bright."
   "[They] say that Dr. Kim is (a) rich man."

2. "[I] asked (James) if he can read Hangeul."
   "Ask [him] what time the next train leaves."
   "That man asked me what my name is."
   "Did Mr. Park ask you if Korean is difficult?"

3. "Shall I tell [him] to call you?"
   "I told [my child] to study."
   "Who told you to learn foreign languages?"
   "I told the maid to prepare supper."

4. "[My] friend suggested that we go (to) eat lunch."
   "Suggest (to him) that you (pl.) take a rest."
   "Why don't you propose to her? (Why don't you propose that you [and she] get married?)"
UNIT 17 KOREAN BASIC COURSE

DRILLS

A. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Cé nin hakkyo e kamnita.
Student: Na nin hakkyo e kanta.

1. Cé nin kimchi lil cohahamnita.
2. Cé nin nal mata cenhwa lil patsimnita.
3. Cé nin il cali lil chacsimnita.
4. Hankuk imsik i mas i issimnita.
5. Kyeul nalsi ka chupsimnita.
6. Pihangki ka ceil ppalimnita.
7. Ceil ka pwassimnita.
9. Cé nin Yenge lil molimnita.
10. Cikim pi ka ocì anhsimnita.
11. I Kyosu eke nin cenhal mal i ëpsimnita.
12. Acik pæ ka kophici anhsimnita.

'B'm going to school.' (Formal Polite)
'I'm going to school.' (Formal Plain)

Na nin kimchi lil cohahanta.
Na nin nal mata cenhwa lil patninta.
Na nin il cali lil chacninta.
Hankuk imsik i mas i issta.
Kyeul nalsi ka chupta.
Pihangki ka ceil ppalíta.
Ulì ka pwassta.
Ulì ka Kim Paksa lil mananshipsta.
Na nin Yenge lil molinta.
Cikim pi ka ocì anhninta.
I Kyosu eke nin cenhal mal i ëpssta.
Acik pæ ka kophici anhta.

B. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Student 1: Hankuk mal i swipsimnikka?
Student 2: Hankuk mal i swipnyi?

1. Sólsàng in Søul salam imnikka?
2. Tangsin in Yøngø lil mal-hamnikka?
3. Pøm e pi ka manhi omnikka?
4. Kulapha ese yøhøng-høassimnikka?
5. Packøs eamsim il capusayessimnikka?
6. Kim Sønsøng puin kwa cenhwa lo iyaki-høassimnikka?
7. Pusan ese sale pon il i issimnikka?
8. Mikuk Tønsøkwan e kinnu-hako siphsimnikka?
9. Êlma tongan tapang ese kitalsisimnikka?
10. Êce mues hælø sinæ e tillsisimnikka?

'Is Korean easy?'
'Is Korean easy?'

Ne nin Søul salam inya?
Ne nin Yøngø lil mal-hanyi?
Pøm e pi ka manhi onyi?
Kulapha ese yøhøng-høssnyi?
Packøs eamsim il meksøssnyi?
Kim Sønsøng puin kwa cenhwa lo iyaki-høssnyi?
Pusan ese sale pon il i issnyi?
Mikuk Tønsøkwan e kinnu-hako siphnyi?
Êlma tongan tapang ese kitalsissnyi?
Êce mues hælø sinæ e tillsissnyi?
C. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Student 1: Hakkyo e kapsita.
Student 2: Hakkyo e kaca.

1. Com swipsita.
2. Cenyek (il) makipsita.
3. Onil pam e yenghwa pole kapsita.
5. Chenchenhi kele kapsita.
6. Onil in cip e issipsita.
7. Pul-koki lil mke popsita.
8. Kutu lil saci mapsita.
10. Kyosil ese tampë lil phiuci mapsita.
11. Kilen kes il yaksok-haci mapsita.

'Let's go to school.'
'Let's go to school.'
Com swica.
Cenyek il mkeca.
Onil pam e yenghwa pole kaca.
Hankuk mal lo iyaki haca.
Chenchenhi kele kaca.
Onil in cip e issca.
Pul-koki lil mke poca.
Kutu lil saci ma(1)ca.

D. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Student 3: Hankuk mal lo mal-hasipsiyo.
Student 4: Hankuk mal lo mal-hwela.

1. Ohu e tto osipsiyo.
2. Cip e kasipsiyo.
3. ëse capsusipsiyo.
4. Com te khike malasim-hasipsiyo.
5. Yeki ese mulisipsiyo.
6. Nam tasi cenhwa kesipsiyo.
7. Ce cenhwa penho lil caka tusipsiyo.
8. I chëk il I Sensæng eke cenhwasipsiyo.

'Speak (or say) in Korean.'
'Speak (or say) in Korean.'
Ohu e ttofonwa.
ëse mokala.
Com te khike mal-hwela.
Yeki ese molisa.
Nam tasi cenhwa kalala.

447
E. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Child: 센 sockaddr in Yæŋæ lil mal-
hasimnikka?

Adult: ing, kilæ, (na nin) Yæŋæ lil
mal-hanta.

1. Wekuk e ka pon il i issimnikka?
2. Hankuk mal i pokcap-hamnikka?
3. Sæ yangpok il sassimnikka?
4. Sænsøng nim in tampæ lil phiunnikka?
5. Ce apecë eke cenhal malssim i
issimnikka?
6. Onil cønyøk e tola osìkessimnikka?
7. Ki kas i tahøng immnikka?
8. Ceimsi e taëøø se iyaki tilëssimnikka?

9. Hankil il mot ilksinnikka?
10. Sænsøng in ton i øpsimnikka?

'Do you speak English, sir?'

'Yes, I do.' ('That's right, I
speak English.')

ing, kilæ, wekuk e ka pon il i istta.
ing, kilæ, (Hankuk mal i) pokcap-hata.
ing, kilæ, sæ yangpok il saassta.
ing, kilæ, tampæ (lil) phiunta.
ing, kilæ, (na e apeci eke) cenhal
mal i istta.
ing, kilæ, onil cønyøk e tola okessta.
ing, kilæ, ki kas i tahøng ita.
ing, kilæ, (Ceimsi e taëøø se) iyaki
tilësstta.
ing, kilæ, (Hankil il) mot ilkñinta.
ing, kilæ, ton i øpssta.

F. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Child: (Uli) hakkyø e kal kka yo?
Adult: Kilæ, (hakkyø e) kaca.

1. Ceimsim il mëkil kka yo?
2. Cøncha pøta ppøsi lil thako kal
kka yo?
3. Lëtio nyussi lil tilë pol kka yo?
4. Cøngkëcang aphp ese mëwil kka yo?
5. Tasi søngkak-hë pol kka yo?
6. Kicha lo Pusan e mëlyø kal kka yo?
7. Pøsi lo Nyuøyk e olla kal kka yo?
8. Cønhwa penho lil paakkul kka yo?
9. I sosik il halapaci eke cenhal
kka yo?

'Shall we go to school?'

'Sure, let's go.'

Kilæ, (ceimsim il) mëkca.
Kilæ, (cøncha pøta) ppøsi lil thako
kaca.
Kilæ, (lëtio nyussi lil) tilë poca.
Kilæ, cøngkëcang aphp ese mëwlìca.
Kilæ, tasi søngkak-hë poca.
Kilæ, kicha lo (Pusan e) mëlyø kaca.
Kilæ, ppøsi lo (Nyuøyk e) olla kaca.
Kilæ, (cønhwa penho lil) paakkca.
Kilæ, (i sosik il halapaci eke)
 cenhaca.
G. Response Drill

Child: Cikim sicak-hae to cohEimnikka?
Adult: Kilae, ese sicak-haEa.

1. MalEisim com mule pwa to cohEimnikka?
   Kilae, ese mule pwaEa.
2. Thipi lil pwa to cohEimnikka?
   Kilae, ese pwaEa.
3. Sensang e mannyenphil il ese to cohEimnikka?
   Kilae, ese sseEa.
4. Ce’mun il yele to cohEimnikka?
   Kilae, ese yeleEa.
5. Mun il tate to cohEimnikka?
   Kilae, ese tatEa.
6. Kyosil ese tampeEil phiwe to cohEimnikka?
   Kilae, ese phiweEa.
7. Sensang eke han kaci puthak-hae to cohEimnikka?
   Kilae, ese puthak-haEa.
8. I chek il ilke to cohEimnikka?
   Kilae, ese ilkEa.
9. Pak Yangca wa kyeilhon-hae to cohEimnikka?
   Kilae, ese kyeilhon-haEa.

H. Response Drill

Adult: Hankuk mal il pwaysnyi?
Child: Ne, (Hankuk mal il) pawEo yo.

1. Hankuk mal il anyi?
   Ne, (Hankuk mal il) aEo yo.
2. Hakkyo ka/kakkapnyi?
   Ne, (hakkyo ka) kakkawEo.
   kakkasnyi?
3. Cikim pae ka kophinhyi?
   Ne, peEa ka kophaEo.
4. Mom i phiwon-hanyi?
   Ne, (mom i) phiwon-hayiEo.
5. Hakkyo ka kkhith-nassnyi?
   Ne, (hakkyo ka) khith-nassetEo.
6. Nal mata Hankuk mal il yenEip-hanyi?
   Ne, nal mata (Hankuk mal il)
   yenEip-hayiEo.
7. Kicha ka pelsse ttenassnyi?
   Ne, pelsse ttenasseEo.
8. PesEi ka pelsse tahassnyi?
   Ne, pelsse tahasseEo.
9. Onil cenyek e pi ka okessnyi?
   Ne, (onil cenyek e) pi ka okesseEo.
10. Kim Sensang puin in nai ka manhnyi?
    Ne, (Kim Sensang puin in) nai ka
        manhEo.
UNIT 17  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

I. Substitution Drill

1. I kōs il Yenge lo mues ila ko hamnikka?
   How do you say this in English?

2. Ca kōs il Hankuk mal lo mues ila ko hamnikka?
   How do you say that in Korean?

3. Yakso il Tokil mal lo mues ila ko hamnikka?
   How do you say appointment in German?

4. Genhal mal il Sepana mal lo mues ila ko hamnikka?
   How do you say message in Spanish?

5. Futhak il Cungkuk mal lo mues ila ko hamnikka?
   How do you say a favor to ask in Chinese?

6. 'Yapose yo,' il Ilpon mal lo mues ila ko hamnikka?
   How do you say 'Hello (there).' in Japanese?

7. 'Taheg imnita,' il Mikuk mal lo mues ila ko hamnikka?
   How do you say 'That's fortunate.' in American language?

8. 'Camkan man kitaiteyo,' il Pullanac mal lo mues ila ko hamnikka?
   How do you say 'Wait a minute.' in French?

9. 'Alkessimnita,' il Solyen mal mues ila ko hamnikka?
   How do you say 'I understand.' in Russian?

J. Substitution Drill

1. Sensσang e tαхμε se iyaki (manhi) tiasimnita.
   I heard (a lot) about you.

*2. Ki sosik e tαхμε se iyaki tiasimnita.
   I heard about that news.

*3. Ki simun kisa e tαхμε se iyaki tiasimnita.
   I heard about that newspaper article.

*4. Ki il cali e tαхμε se iyaki tiasimnita.
   I heard about that job.

*5. Ki catongcha sako e tαхμε se iyaki tiasimnita.
   I heard about that automobile accident.

*6. Ki saken e tαхμε se iyaki tiasimnita.
   I heard about that incident.

*7. Hankuk saenghwal e tαхμε se iyaki tiasimnita.
   I heard about the Korean life.

450
8. Wekyokwan saenghwal e tae e se iyaki tille'essimnita.
   *9. Hankuk nongpu e haeha e se iyaki tille'essimnita.

I heard about the life of foreign service.
I heard about the Korean farmers.

K. Substitution Drill

1. Ce e ilim in Ceicsi la ko hamnita.

2. I kondul e ilim in Kukce Ssenthe
   la ko hamnita.

3. I kell e ilim in Congno la ko hamnita.

4. Hankuk Cangpu e ilim in Twahan
   Minhuk ila ko hamnita.

5. Pullanee e seul in Phali la ko hamnita.

6. Minhuk e auto nin Wasingthon ila ko hamnita.

7. I tosi e ilim in Taeku la ko hamnita.

8. Ce tan'akkyo e ilim in Yense Tan'akkyo
   la ko hamnita.

9. Ce ye'sa e ilim in Pak Yengsuk ila ko hamnita.

My name is James. ([They] say that my name is James.)
The name of this building is said to be International Center.
The name of this street is Congno.
The name of the Korean Government is Republic of Korea.
The capital of France is Paris.
The capital city of the U.S. is Washington.
The name of this city is Taegu.
The name of that university is Yonsei University.
That woman's name is Park Young-Sook.

L. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sensaeng i eti e kanta ko (mal-)haessimnikka?

2. Kim Sensaeng i mues il kalichinta
   ko haessimnikka?

3. Kim Sensaeng i eti e santo ko
   haessimnikka?

4. Kim Sensaeng i mues il wenhanta ko
   haessimnikka?

5. Kim Sensaeng i ose'ontaka ko
   haessimnikka?

{Did Mr. Kim say where he is going?
Did [they] say where Mr. Kim is going?
Did Mr. Kim say what he is teaching?
Did Mr. Kim say where he lives?
Did Mr. Kim say what he wants?
Did Mr. Kim say when he is coming?
6. Kim Sensæng i myach-si e tola onta ko hæssinnikka?
   Did Mr. Kim say what time he is coming back?

7. Kim Sensæng i nuku lil chačinta ko hæssinnikka?
   Did Mr. Kim say whom he is looking for?

8. Kim Sensæng i we Hankuk mal il pemunta ko hæssinnikka?
   Did Mr. Kim say why he is studying Korean?

9. Kim Sensæng i myach aikan tongan il-hanta ko hæssinnikka?
   Did Mr. Kim say how many hours he works?

M. Substitution Drill

1. Pak Sensæng in hakkyo e kanta ko (mal-)hæssinnitas.
   Mr. Park said that he is going to school.

2. Pak Sensæng in Hankuk salam ila ko (mal-)hæssinnitas.
   Mr. Park said that he is a Korean.

3. Pak Sensæng in Hankuk mal il kalichinta ko (mal-)hæssinnitas.
   [He] said that Mr. Park is teaching Korean.


5. Pak Sensæng in sensæng il anta ko (mal-)hæssinnitas.
   Mr. Park said that he wants to eat Pul-koki.

6. Pak Sensæng in mal mata cenhwa lil kanta ko (mal-)hæssinnitas.
   Mr. Park said that he knows you.

7. Pak Sensæng in Yenga lil ale ya hanta ko (mal-)hæssinnitas.
   Mr. Park said that he makes phone-calls everyday.

8. Pak Sensæng in neal ttenalye ko hanta ko (mal-)hæssinnitas.
   Mr. Park said that [he] has to know English.

9. Pak Sensæng in se cha lil sal kes ila ko (mal-)hæssinnitas.
   Mr. Park said that he is going to leave tomorrow.

N. Substitution Drill

   Mr. Kim said that the school is near.

2. Seoul cip kaps i pissata ko Kim Sensæng i mal-hæsse yo.
   Mr. Kim said that the housing in Seoul is expensive.
5. Hansik i mas (1) issta ko Kim Sensäŋ 1 mal-hëssë yo.
8. Tasi cenhwa kelkessta ko Kim Sensäŋ 1 mal-hëssë yo.

Mr. Kim said that English is not easy.
Mr. Kim said that streetcars are crowded.
Mr. Kim said that Korean food is delicious.
Mr. Kim said that he has a little headache.
Mr. Kim said that the problem is rather complicated.
Mr. Kim said that he will call again.
Mr. Kim said that he is not free now.

0. Substitution Drill

1. Ki salam eke tasi cenhwa hala ko mal-hal kka yo?
2. Ki salam eke tasi ola ko mal-hal kka yo?
3. Ki salam eke kongsu-hala ko mal-hal kka yo?
4. Ki salam eke tile ola ko mal-hal kka yo?
5. Ki salam eke ohu e tillila ko mal-hal kka yo?
6. Ki salam eke ale pola ko mal-hal kka yo?
7. Ki salam eke tola kala ko mal-hal kka yo?
8. Ki salam eke camkan man kyesila ko mal-hal kka yo?
9. Ki salam eke yensip-hala ko mal-hal kka yo?
10. Ki salam eke kaci malla ko mal-hal kka yo?

Shall I tell him to call again?
Shall I tell him to come again?
Shall I tell him to study?
Shall I tell him to come in?
Shall I tell him to stop by in the afternoon?
Shall I tell him to find out?
Shall I tell him to go back?
Shall I tell him to wait a moment?
Shall I tell him to practise?
Shall I tell him not to go?
P. Substitution Drill

   Please tell him not to go.

2. Kì salam eke kaci malla ko mal-hwe cusipsiyo.
   Please tell him not to go (for me).

   Please don't tell him not to go.

   I told him not to go.

5. Kì salam eke kaci malla ko mal-keesimnnika?
   Did you tell him not to go?

   Let's tell him not to go.

   Let's not tell him not to go.

8. Kì salam eke kaci malla ko mal-hakesse yo.
   I'll tell him not to go.

   I'll not tell him not to go.

    You'd better tell him not to go.
    (It will be better to tell him not to go.
    You may tell him not to go.

11. Kì salam eke kaci malla ko mal-ke to conesimnita.

Q. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sansæng i na eke Yongse lil paëca ko mal-hamnita.
   Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I study English.

2. Kim Sansæng i na eke Hankuk mal lo mal-haca ko mal-hamnita.
   Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I speak in Korean.

   Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I eat Chinese food.

   Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I go around the city.

5. Kim Sansæng i na eke cal sëngkak-haca ko mal-hamnita.
   Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I give a second thought.
6. Kim Sansæng 1 na eke il il
sicak-haca ko mal-hannita.
Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I
start the work.

7. Kim Sansæng 1 na eke hapsing il
thaca ko mal-hannita.
Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I
take a jitney.

8. Kim Sansæng 1 na eke yaca il il
thwic ko mal-hannita.
Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I
give a ride to the girl.

9. Kim Sansæng 1 na eke il il
kkith-machica ko mal-hannita.
Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I
finish the work.

10. Kim Sansæng 1 na eke yaki ese
malica ko mal-hannita.
Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I
get off here.

R. Substitution Drill

1. Hankuk mal il alyepnya ko Ceimsi
ka ce eke mule pwassimnita.
James asked me if Korean is difficult.

2. Ilpor mal il swipnya ko Ceimsi ka
ce eke mule pwassimnita.
James asked me if Japanese is easy.

3. Kicha ka phyell-hanya ko Ceimsi
ka ce eke mule pwassimnita.
James asked me if the train is
convenient.

4. Nuka Hankuk mal il kalichi(11)nya ko
Ceimsi ka ce eke mule pwassimnita.
James inquired me who teaches Korean.

5. eti esa sa(11)nya ko Ceimsi ka ce
eke mule pwassimnita.
James asked me where I am living.

6. Myech-si e hakkyo ka kkith-na(11)nya
ko Ceimsi ka ce eke mule
pwassimnita.
James asked me what time school is
over.

7. Myech sikan tongan kinmu-ha(11)nya
ko Ceimsi ka ce eke mule
pwassimnita.
James asked me how many hours [I]
work.

8. emna na manya ko Ceimsi ka ce eke
mule pwassimnita.
James asked me how far [it] is.

9. Onil i myech11 inya ko Ceimsi ka
ce eke mule pwassimnita.
James asked me what date it is today.
UNIT 17  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

3. Response Drill

Tutor: Ki i eke cenhwa-hala ko mal-hal kka yo?
Student 1: Ne, cenhwa-hala ko mal-hae cusipsiyo.
Student 2: Aniyoo, cenhwa-haci malla ko mal-hae cusipsiyo.

1. Haksæng eke cip e kala ko mal-hal kka yo?

2. Ai eke ppesi lil thako kala ko mal-hal kka yo?

3. Uncensu eke mun aph ese nælie cula ko mal-hal kka yo?

4. Ceimsi eke cenhwa penho lil cæke tula ko mal-hal kka yo?

5. Pise eke mun il tatila ko mal-hal kka yo?

6. I Sensæng eke Kim Sensæng e cuso lil ale pola ko mal-hal kka yo?

7. Miss Chwe eke Hankuk mal il kalichie cula ko mal-hal kka yo?

'Shall I tell him to call [you]?'
'Yes, please tell him to call [me].'
'No, please tell him not to call [me].'

Ne, cip e kala ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.
Aniyoo, cip e kaci malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

Ne, ppesi lil thako kala ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.
Aniyoo, ppesi lil thako kaci malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

Ne, mun aph ese nælie cula ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.
Aniyoo, mun aph ese nælie cuci malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

Ne, cenhwa penho lil cæke tula ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.
Aniyoo, cenhwa penho lil cæke tuci malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

Ne, (mun il) tatila ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.
Aniyoo, (mun il) tatci malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

Ne, (Kim Sensæng e cuso lil) ale pola ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.
Aniyoo, (Kim Sensæng e cuso lil) ale poci malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

Ne, Hankuk mal il kalichie cula ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.
Aniyoo, Hankuk mal il kalichie cuci malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.
8. Pak Sansæng eke khephi han can sala ko mal-hal kka yo?

Ne, (khephi han can) sala ko mal-hæ cusipsiyו.
Aniyo, (khephi han can) saci malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyו.

9. Ki yëca eke tangsin il kitalila ko mal-hal kka yo?

Ne, (ce lil) kitalila ko mal-hæ cusipsiyו.
Aniyo, (ce lil) kitalici malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyו.

T. Response Drill

Tutor: Ai eke cip e kala ko mal-hæssimnikka?

Student 3: Ne, cip e kala ko mal-hæssimnitа.

Student 4: Aniyo, cip e kala ko mal-haci anhæssimnitа.

1. Haksæng til eke cëmsim (il) mëkila ko mal-hæssimnikka?

'Did you tell the child to go home?'

'Yes, I did. (I told [him] to go home.)'

'No, I didn't. (I didn't tell [him] to go home.)'

Ne, cëmsil (il) mëkila ko mal-hæssimnitа.
Aniyo, cëmsim (il) mëkila ko mal-haci anhæssimnitа.

2. Puin eke phyëncи (lil) puchila ko mal-hæssimnikka?

Ne, phyëncи (lil) puchila ko mal-hæssimnitа.
Aniyo, phyëncи (lil) puchila ko mal-haci anhæssimnitа.

3. Ai til eke kil ese nolla ko mal-hæssimnikka?

Ne, kil ese nolla ko mal-hæssimnitа.
Aniyo, kil ese nolla ko mal-haci anhæssimnitа.

4. Chinku eke tapang ese kitalila ko mal-hæssimnikka?

Ne, tapang ese kitalila ko mal-hæssimnitа.
Aniyo, tapang ese kitalila ko mal-haci anhæssimnitа.

5. Uncënsu eke mun ese nëlë cula ko mal-hæssimnikka?

Ne, mun ese nëlë cula ko mal-hæssimnitа.
Aniyo, mun ese nëlë cula ko mal-haci anhæssimnitа.
6. Kim Sensæng eke chëok il ponëla ko mal-hëssimnikka?

7. Atil eke thipi lil pola ko mal-hëssimnikka?

8. Kukmuseng i sensæng eke Hankuk mal il pëula ko mal-hëssimnikka?

9. Iysa ka sensæng eke khëphi lil masici malla ko mal-hëssimnikka?

10. Kim Sensæng i Sëul ese cencha lil thaci malla ko mal-hëssimnikka?

Ne, chëok il ponëla ko mal-hëssimnitita.
Aniyo, chëok il ponëla ko mal-haci anhëssimnitita.
Ne, thipi lil pola ko mal-hëssimnitita.
Aniyo, thipi lil pola ko mal-haci anhëssimnitita.
Ne, Kukmuseng i na eke Hankuk mal il pëula ko mal-hëssimnitita.
Aniyo, Kukmuseng i Hankuk mal il pëula ko mal-haci anhëssimnitita.
Ne, iysa ka khëphi lil masici malla ko mal-hëssimnitita.
Aniyo, iysa ka khëphi lil masici malla ko mal-haci anhëssimnitita.
Ne, Kim Sensæng i Sëul ese cencha lil thaci malla ko mal-hëssimnitita.
Aniyo, Kim Sensæng i Sëul ese cencha lil thaci malla ko mal-haci anhëssimnitita.

U. Response Drill

Tutor: Pak Sensæng i eti e kanta ko mal-hëssimnikka? /tapang/

Student: Tapang e kanta ko mal-hëssë yo.

1. I Sensæng i mëus ilo yëhæng-hanta ko mal-hëssimnikka? /catongcha/

2. ënce kkæci ki il il kkith-nënta ko mal-hëssimnikka? /tæm cuil/

3. Kim Sensæng in atil i eni tæhak e taninta ko mal-hëssimnikka?
 /Cungang Tæhak/

4. So Sensæng i musin ıntsik il cohahanta ko mal-hëssimnikka?
 /yangsik/

'Did Mr. Park say where he was going? /tearoom/!

'He said (that) he was going to the tearoom.'

Catongcha lo yëhæng-hanta ko mal-hëssë yo.

Tæm cuil kkæci kkith-nënta ko mal-hëssë yo.

(Atil 1) Cungang Tæhak e taninta ko mal-hëssë yo.

Yangsik il cohahanta ko mal-hëssë yo.
5. 체임리카 누쿠 와 키엘론-한타 
   고말-해심니카?
   /체와섯 엜 탄/

6. 체임리 설탕 엿 와 한국말 
   일 포운타 고말-해심니카?
   /한국 와 카니 각/

7. 키 리카 엘마 톨간한국 섯
   살카스타 고말-해심니카?
   /한 산 사 니안/

8. 팔 설탕 인 무에 일 마시코 
   시프타 고말-해심니카?
   /말쿠/

9. 쎑 설탕 인 무시 영일 에 
   톨낸카스타 고말-해심니카?
   /할요일/

10. 체와섯 엜 알마 에 차 리 
    사사타 고말-해심니카?
    /천쿠- деятель 폰/

11. 한구말 설탕 엿 믹ук 에 온씨 
    엥카 는아.Dataset에 진사스타 고말- 
    해심니카? /산 산 사 니안/

V. Transformation Drill

Tutor: (Kim 설탕 엿) 일 케스 채크 
     일라 고말-헤파스 사요?
Student: (Kim 설탕 엿) 나 업리 
     케스 채크 엥카 고 무ा 
     푸스 사요.

1. (Kim 설탕 엿) 한구말 일리 안타 
    고말-헤파스 사요?
2. (Kim 설탕 엿) 엥카 세예pta 
    고말-헤파스 사요?
3. (Kim 설탕 엿) 사을 섯 친가스 일 
    푸스사스타 고말-헤파스 사요?

'Did Mr. Kim say that this is a book?'
'Mr. Kim asked me if this is a book.'

(Kim 설탕 엿) 나 업리 한구말 일리 
     아(물) 엥카 무어 푸스사스 사요.

(Kim 설탕 엿) 나 업리 엥카 세예pta 
     엥카 세예pta 엥카 무어 푸스사스 사요.

(Kim 설탕 엿) 나 업리 사을 섯 친가스 일 
     푸스사스 엥카 무어 푸스사스 사요.
4. (Kim Sensaeng) Hansik i mas i
issta ko mal-hæsse yo?
5. (Kim Sensaeng) Miss Kim in nai ka
manhta ko mal-hæsse yo?
6. (Kim Sensaeng) nai ka myech sal
ila ko mal-hæsse yo?
7. (Kim Sensaeng) yose mues il hanta
ko mal-hæsse yo?
8. (Kim Sensaeng) eti e santa ko
mal-hæsse yo?
9. (Kim Sensaeng) cikim myech-si la
ko mal-hæsse yo?
10. (Kim Sensaeng) sikan i elma na
kelli(1)ta ko mal-hæsse yo?

(Kim Sensaeng) na eke Hansik i mas i
i iss(1)nya ko mule pwasse yo.
(Kim Sensaeng) na eke Miss Kim in
nai ka manhnya ko mule pwasse yo.
(Kim Sensaeng) na eke nai ka myech
sal inya ko mule pwasse yo.
(Kim Sensaeng) na eke yose mues il
ha(1)nya ko mule pwasse yo.
(Kim Sensaeng) na eke eti e sa(1)nya
ko mule pwasse yo.
(Kim Sensaeng) na eke cikim myech-
si nya ko mule pwasse yo.
(Kim Sensaeng) na eke sikan i elma
na kell(1)nya ko mule pwasse yo.
EXERCISES

(All the following exercises should be done in different speech levels: Formal and Informal Polite; Formal and Informal Plain.)

A. Tell the class that Mr. Park told you that:
   1. he is sick.
   2. he cannot come to work.
   3. he will take a good rest.
   4. he visited the doctor.
   5. to call him anytime.
   6. not to worry/kakcang-ha-ta/ about it.
   7. not to ask him any questions.
   8. to go to the movies with you.
   9. not to speak in English while in the class.

B. Tell Pak Sansang that you think that:
   1. they sell American newspapers and magazines at that bookstore.
   2. the problem is rather complicated.
   3. Mr. Yang will not buy a new car.
   4. you've heard about the automobile accident.
   5. Korea is called 'Tahan Minkuk' in Korean.
   6. anybody will be able to finish it easily.

C. Ask student A if he's heard:
   1. that teaching Korean is easier than an European language.
   2. that others also suggested eating Chinese food.
   3. that James told the students to go home.
   4. that all the students wanted to study Korean.
   5. that the Government told James to teach English.

D. Tell Pak Sansang that:
   1. you think that Jones speaks Korean very well.
   2. Mr. Kim said that he will be back by 6:30.
   3. you understood that Korean is difficult.
4. your Korean teacher told you to memorize/(ttala) we-ta/ the new words/tane/.
5. Miss Brown asked you if you can teach her Korean.
6. Miss Choe suggested that you go together to the movies.
7. you heard that Mr. Chang's son is very bright.
8. you heard that Jones is a rich man.
9. James told you not to read that magazine.
10. your wife suggested that (she and) you not buy a foreign car.
11. 'I understand.' in Korean is expressed as 'I will know it.'
12. you heard about Korean customs.
13. the capital of France is called Paris.
14. you think riding taxis in Seoul is dangerous/wihem-ha-ta/.
15. you think reading Korean newspapers is difficult.
16. you don't know if Korean is as easy as French.
17. you have an appointment to meet a friend at 3 p.m.
18. Jones asked you where you live.
19. your wife asked you what time the work ends.
20. the ambassador asked how difficult Korean was.

E. Mr. James has just telephoned and asked for Mr. Kim. Answer as follows:

1. 'Just a moment, please. I'll see if he is in.'
2. 'He isn't at his desk just now.'
3. 'Oh, gee, he went out just a minute ago.'
4. 'Who is calling, please?'
5. 'This is Miss Lee Suca (speaking). I'm Mr. Kim's secretary.'
6. 'He is in Mr. Park's office just now. It's extension/næsan/ 26.'
7. 'I mean Young-Soo Park.'
8. 'Would you like him to call you later?'
9. 'Yes, I understand, I will have him call you soon.'
F. Make the following telephone calls:

1. Call the Hanil Company and leave a message for Mr. Son that you are not coming today.

2. Call your home and tell the maid that you are going to the Kim's house for supper and will be home about 11:30.

3. Call a friend and ask her to go to the movies with you.

4. Call Mr. Kim's house and ask when Mr. Kim is returning to Seoul.

5. Call Mr. Han's house and ask Mr. Han to call Ambassador Wilson's office immediately.

6. Report that your telephone is out of order/kocang-na-ta/ and request that it be fixed/kochi-ta/.

7. Call your boss' house and tell his wife that he had some business in Inchon suddenly/kapcaki/ and that he said he'll call her from Inchon tonight around 9:00.

8. Call Mr. James' secretary, and tell her Mr. James asked to call his office about his sickness.
제 18 과

일기에 대해서

(대화 A)

남씨

 좀군 요

1. A: 오늘은 남씨가 뭐 좀군 요

가을 남씨

이шибка

2. B: 예, 한국 (의) 가을 남씨는 대개 이шибка 줍니다.

이шибка 남씨

계속

계속 합니까

3. A: 이런 남씨가 얼마나 동안 계속 합니까?

시험 말

하늘

하늘 이 많고

차차

(차차) 후위 집니다

4. B: 대개 시험 말가지는 하늘 이 많고 좋은 남씨가 계속 합니다. 그 뒤나, 심혈으로부터 차차 후위 집니다.

동북

미국 동북부
UNIT 18. Talking About Weather

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

A

nalssi
cohkun yo

1. Onil in nalssi ka phak cohkun yo!
weather
[it] is nice!
It's a nice day today!

B

kail nalssi
ilehke

2. Ne, Hankuk (e) kail nalssi nin
autumn weather
to xox ilehke cohsimmnita.
this way; like this
Yes, Korea's autumn weather is
usually nice like this.

A

ilen nalssi
kyesok
kyesok-hamnikka

3. Ilen nalssi ka alma tongan
this kind of weather
kyesok-hamnikka?
continuation
does [it] continue?; does
[it] last?
How long does this kind of weather
last?

B

Si-wel mal
hanil
hanil 1 makkko
chacha}
(boom)
(chacha) chuwe cimnita

4. Taekse Si-wel mal kkaci nin hanil 1
the end of October
makkko, cohin nalssi ka kyesok-
sky; heaven
hamnikta. Kilena, Sip-il-wel
the sky is clear and..
puthe chacha chuwe cimnita.
gradually
[it] gets colder, [it]'s getting
colder

Until the end of October the sky is
clear and nice weather continues.
But after November it gets
gradually colder.

465
비슷합니다
비슷한 것 같습니다

5. A:
그럼, 한국의 기후가 미국 동북부와 비슷한 것 같습니다.

간다고 생각합니다

6. B:
예, 남한의 기후는 뉴욕 주와 마찬가지라고 생각합니다.

봄철
뉴욕처럼

7. A:
여기에도 봄철에는 뉴욕처럼 비가 많이 오는가요?

높은 봄
이른 여름
장마철
장마철이라고 부릅니다

8. B:
대개 높은 봄과 이른 여름에 비가 많이 오지요.
그 때문에, 유철과 철철은 장마철이라고 부릅니다.

(대화 B)

토요일 아침에-

밤에

9. A:
지금 밤에 날씨가 어때십니까?

비가 올 것 같습니다
Tongpuk
Mikuk Tongpukpu
pisithannita
pisithan kes kathsinnta

5. Kılëm, Hankuk e kihu ka Mikuk
Tongpukpu wa pisithan kes
kathsimnta.

Northeast ('eastnorth')
the Northeastern part of the U.S.
[it] is similar
it seems that [it]'s similar;
[it] looks like similar
Well, Korea's weather seems to be
similar to that of the Northeastern
part of the United States.

kathtka ko sëngkak-hamnita

6. Ne, Nam-Han e kihu nin Nyuyok Cu
wa tækæ kathtka ko sëngkak-
hamnita.

[I] think that [it]'s the same
Yes, I think South Korea's weather
is about the same as that of
New York State.

pom chel
Nyuyok chelëm

7. Yëki e to pom chel e nin Nyuyok
chelëm pi ka manhi onin ka yo?

spring season
like New York; just as New York

Does it rain here as much as it does
in New York in the spring (season)?

nicin pom
ilin yelim

cangma chel

cangma chel ila ko pülmnita

B

late spring
early summer
rainy season

Yes, it usually rains a lot in late
spring and early summer. So we
call June and July the rainy
season.

8. Tækæ nicin pom kwa ilin yelim e
pi ka manhi oçï yo. Kılæ se,
Yu-wel kwa Chil-wel il cangma
chel ila ko pülmnita.

Dialogue B
(....on a Saturday morning....)

pakk (e)

9. Cikim pakk (e) nalssi ka
ettæsîmnikka?

outside
What's the weather like outside now?

467

   잎기
   잎기 예보

11. A: 오늘 아침에 잎기 예보를 들었습니까?

   빗디오
   개질니다
   개인한다고 (말)했습니다
   기상대
   루프니다


   큰 일
   큰 일이(이) 납니다


   계획
   중 대합니다. 중요합니다
   중 대한 계획, 중요한 계획

14. B: 왜요? 무슨 중 대한 계획이란도 있습니까?

   등산
   등산한 계획
  등산한 계획입니다

10. Ama, pi ka ol kəs kathsimnita.
Nal i həliku, palam i com pumnita.

11. Onil achim e ilki ye po (lil)
tıləsımnnikka?

12. Ne, achim lətio ese nin nac e kəıntako mal-həsscı man, kisangtə to kəkkim thillini kka yo.

khın il

khın il (1) namnita

13. Pi ka omyen, khın il namnita.

kyehwek
cungtə-hamnita\cungyo-hamnita\
cungtə-han\kyehwek
cungyo-han\
musin kyehwek ilato

B
It looks like rain
It looks like it'll probably rain.
It's cloudy and a little windy.

A
weather; climate

weather forecast

Did you hear the weather forecast this morning?

B
radio

[it] clears up
[it] said that [it] clears up
weather bureau; weather-man

[it]'s wrong; [it] is not right

Yes, the radio this morning said it would clear up at noon, but the weather-man is occasionally wrong.

A
a big problem; a big trouble ('a big job!')

('a big trouble comes up!')

It mustn't rain! ('If it rains, a big problem comes up.')

B
plan(ning); plans

[it] is important

important plans

any plans
에...
정말
바랍니다
개이기 바랍니다

16. B: 에..., 정말 오후에는 개이기 바랍니다.
14. Why? Do you have some important plans?
   Wæ yo? Musin cungtæ-han kyehwek ilato issimnikka?

tingsan
tingsan-hal kyehwek
tingsan-hal kyehwek imnita

15. Yes, I was planning to go hiking this afternoon.
   Ne, onil ohu e tingsan-hal kyehwek issimnita.

16. Oh, you were? I hope it clears up in the afternoon.
   Ne...? Cengmal ohu e nin kwëkik palamnita.

A
   hiking
   (a) plan to hike
   [I]m planning to hike

B
   (oh, is that right?...)
   certainly; truly; truth
   [I] desire; [I] hope
   [I] hope [it] clears up
NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. Ilahke 'this way!' or 'like this!', calahke 'that way!' or 'like that!', kilahke 'that way!' or 'so!' or 'in such a way!', occur as adverbials which are inflected from the verb stems Ilah- 'to be like this!', calah- 'to be like that!' and kilah- 'to be so!'.

3. Ilan 'this kind of-', calan 'that kind of-', Kilan 'that kind of-', are the inflected present modifier words which are also based on the stem Ilah- 'to be like this!', calah- 'to be like that!', and kilah- 'to be so!', respectively. The stem final sound h is dropped when the ending -(in) is added.

4. Mal which occurs after certain time nominals is either a part of a word or a post-noun, meaning 'the end': welmal 'the end of the month', cunmal 'weekend', pyenmal 'the end of the year', haknyen mal 'the end of the school year', Il-wel mal 'the end of January', etc.

5. -Pu ('part') which occurs at the end of a word succeeding the names of directions (i.e. tong 'east', so 'west', nam 'south', puk 'north') often designates geographical areas of the United States: Tongpu 'the Eastern part of U.S.', Sepu 'the Western part of U.S.', Nampu 'the South', Puku 'the North'. (See Drill B, Unit 15.)

8. X (1)la ko pulimnita. ('[We] call [it] X.') can be substituted by X (1)la ko hanmita. ('[We] say [it] is X.') (See Grammar Note 3, Unit 17.)

12. Thilli- 'to be wrong' has its antonyms verb mac- 'to be correct'. Mac- and olh- are synonymous.
GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -ninkun/kun yo

An inflected form ending in -ninkun/kun + yo may be used as a kind of emphatic or exclamatory sentence final form. This construction is usually accompanied by the intonation patterns the same as the one in -ci yo? (Unit 6) or the one in an exclamation sentence. -Ninkun is added to an action verb stem; -kun is added to the copula or a description verb stem, or to any verb stem plus the honorific and/or tense suffixes. However, to an action verb stem which ends in -sa, -kun is added. Observe the following examples:

(a)

Sønsøng in Hankuk mal il cal haninkun yo!
'tYou speak Korean very well!!'

Co mal i cham cal ttwininkun yo!
'That horse runs sure fast!!'

Ai til i cham manhi mækninkun yo!
'The kids sure eat a lot!!'

Mikuk ysača til in uncen il cal haninkun yo!
'The American women certainly are good drivers, aren't they?'

A, nœ ka ki kæs il mollasskun yo!
'Oh, gee, I didn't know that!!'

(b)

Oni nalssi ka phæ cohkun yo!
'The weather is very nice today, isn't it??
'It's a nice day today!!'

Kim Sønsøng in cengmal khi ka knikun yo!
'Mr. Kim is really a tall man, isn't he??
'Mr. Kim really is tall.'

A, kilæhkun yo!
'Oh, that's right (I didn't know that).'

Aiku, phæ aphikesskun yo!
'Oh, no, [you] must hurt!!'

Note: In the further Units, we will see that the construction -ninkun/kun + yo can be substituted by -ninku/ku + man + yo with the same meaning.
The inflected word ending in -ninkun/kun is considered to be one-word contraction from the two-word phrase -ninku/ku + man.

2. Infinitive + ci-

As an independent verb ci- is an intransitive action verb, of which meanings vary depending on what is its subject or topic. Hæ ka ciwa.
'The sun sets.', Kkoch i ciasta. 'The flowers have withered.', (Namu) iph i cimnita. 'The leaves are falling.', etc. However, preceded by the infinitive of a description verb, ci- occurs as an auxiliary verb, which denotes gradual change of the description of the preceeding verb. The verb phrase Infinitive + ci- with or without an adverb camcam (or chacha) 'gradually' is usually translated as either 'be getting -er' or 'become + adjective'. Examples:

Nalssi ka (chacha) chuwe cimnita. 'The weather is getting (gradually) colder.'
Hankuk mal i te alywe cimnita. 'Korean is getting more difficult.'
Yose mulken kaps i phak pissa ciisse yo. 'Things became quite expensive these days.'
Nwil ilki ka coha cil kka yo? 'Will the weather be nice tomorrow (do you think)?'

3. -n/in/nin kas kath-

The present inflected modifier word -n/in/nin + kas occurs without pause before the verb kath-, to denote the speaker's assumption for the probability of the action or description of the verb in the modifier word. The English translations for the construction -n/in/nin kas kath- are 'seems that...' or 'seems as if...' or 'looks like...ing', etc. Observe the following examples:

Pi ka onin kas kathimnita. 'It seems that it's raining (now).'
Ki ai ka tawanhi ttokttokkhan kas kathimnita. 'That child seems to be very bright.'
Iyaki ka cami issnin kas kathimnikka? 'Does the story sound interesting?' ('Does it seem that the story is interesting?)
Ce khi (ka) khin salam i cangkun in kas kathc1 yo? 'That tall man looks like a general, doesn't he?'
Il i kili swipc aniin kas kathc1 yo. 'The work doesn't seem to be that easy'
Tesa ka ce ilim il aniin kas kathc1 anhkimnita. 'The ambassador doesn't seem to know my name.'

Note that the tenses and/or speech levels of the whole construction are generated in the verb kath- (1), but the tenses for the speaker's assumption of the probability are made by replacing the present modifier word ending -nin with the past modifier word ending -n/in form for the past and with the -(i)li form for the future, respectively (2). Examples:
(1) Pusan e yakwan kaps i com pissan kəs kathəssimnitə.
Kim Sansəŋ e 'tən cəm i sshən kəs kathəssə yo.
Uli Yəŋə sansəŋ in ttál il ələŋ-hənən kəs kathəssimnitə.

(2a) Kicnə ka pelssə _ENTER_ tənən kəs kathəssimnitə.
Kail i kei cinan kəs kathəssimnitə.
Pak Sansəŋ in cətˈsəŋχə lii pna(lı)n kəs kathəssimnita.

Note: In case of copula and description verbs, -(ə,ə)sən is added to the stem to show the past in the above construction. Example:
Kim Sansəŋ puin in cəməssəl tən ə(ə) yepəssən kəs kathəssimnita.

(2b) Pi ka ol kəs kathəssimnita.
Munco ka manhəl kəs kathə yo.
Nuka tətʰəŋyəŋ i twel kəs kathəssənnka?
Hankuk mal i Cungkuk mal potə tə ələul kəs kathəssimnita.

4. Particle chələm
A nominal + the particle chələm (or its synonym kəthə) 'like + the Nominal' occurs as an adverbial expression for the following inflected expression.
Examples:
Kim Sansəŋ chələm hasipsiyə.
Kkolphi chələm cəhin untəŋ i spəsəmniŋənita.

'It seemed that the hotels in Pusan were a little expensive.'
'Mr. Kim's job sounded interesting.'
'Our English teacher seemed to be proud of [his] daughter.'
'It seems the train has already left.'
'It seems the autumn is almost over.'
('It seems that almost the autumn passed.')
'Mr. Park seems to have sold his car.'
'It seems Mrs. Kim was pretty when she was young.'
'It looks like rain.' ('It seems that it will rain.')
'It seems there are going to be a lot of problems.'
'Who do you think will be the President?' ('Who, does it seem, will become the President?')
'Korean looks more difficult than Chinese.'
'Please do [it] like Mr. Kim.'
'There aren't any good sports like golf.'
I cip i sse cip chalae kkkwkkthamnit. 'This house is clean like a new house.'
Hankuk mal i Ilpin mal chalae
elypsimninkka? 'Is Korean difficult like Japanese?' 'Is Korean as difficult as Japanese?'

5. Particle lato/llato

Lato occurs after a word ending in a consonant and llato after a word ending in a vowel. The particle lato/llato occurs after either inflected or uninflected words. Observe the following constructions where lato/llato occurs:
(Compare lato/llato with na/ina, Grammar Note 4, Unit 10.)

(a) Interrogative expression + (1)lato - adverbial phrase 'any-

muoes ilato 'anything' or 'whatever [it] is'
muain yaksok ilato 'any appointment' or 'whatever appointment [it] may be'
nuku lato 'anybody' or 'whoever [it] may be'
one lato 'anytime' or 'whenever [it] may be'
attehke lato 'somehow' or 'whatever way [I] may take'

(b) After a nominal or an adverbial expression lato/llato also occurs simply to emphasize the preceding expression as the possible alternative of choice for the following inflected expression. Examples:

Onil in cip ese capci lato
ilkesse yo. 'I'm going to read at home today, say, magazines.'
Na lato kilan il in hal su
issimnita. 'Even I can do such a job.'
Kilem, tapang e lato kapsita.
'Well, let's go to, say, a tea-room, then.'
Yenge lato kalichiko siphci
man, ..... 'I would like to teach even English but......'
Kalichinin kes 1 elyeumyon,
pawukai lato hal su isskessci yo?
'If teaching is hard, [he] can do, say, learning, can't [he]?'

Note that we will learn in further units about the constructions in which other inflected words + lato/llato occur.

6. -(i)l kyehwek i- 'be planning to...'

The construction the -(i)l form + the noun kyehwek 'plan' + the copula i-, literally means '[(it) is the plan to do...']. The usual translation, however, is
'be planning to do...'. The tense suffixes may occur in the copula ı'- for
the whole construction. Examples:

Na nin nñil tingsan-hal kyehwék
ımñita.

Wełłe Sñul e kal kyehwék lọssći
mìn, kyehwék īl pakkwósso yo.

Miss Braun l kot kyelhon-hal
kyehwék in kəs katháimníta.

Kim Paksa nín appathi eso sal
kyehwék īla ko mal-ñasíimníta.

'I'm planning to go hiking
tomorrow.'

'Originally I was planning to go
to Seoul, but I have changed
plans.'

'Miss Brown seems to be planning
to get married soon.'

'Dr. Kim said that he was planning
to live in an apartment.'
A. Substitution Drill

1. Yu-wol kwa Chil-wol il cangma chel ila ko pulimnita. [We] call June and July the rainy season.
*2. Seoul i Hankuk e suto la ko pulimnita. Seoul is called the capital of Korea.
*3. Il hanin kos il cikcang ila ko pulimnita. The place where [you] work is called the place of work.
*4. Ton i manhin salam il puca la ko pulimnita. [We] call the person who has a lot of money a rich man.
*5. Kukhwe iywon til il cengchika la ko pulimnita. [We] call the members of the National Assembly politicians.
*6. Mikuk il Hapcungkuk ila ko pulimnita. America is called the United States.
*7. Pusan kathin tosi lil hangku la ko pulimnita. A city like Pusan is called a harbor.
*8. Mulken il mantinin te lil Kongcang ila ko pulimnita. [We] call the place where goods are made a factory.
*9. Kongcang esa il hanin salam il cikkong ila ko pulimnita. [We] call the people working at factories (factory) workers.

B. Substitution Drill

1. Nam-Han e kihu nin Mikuk Tongpu wa kathita ko songkak-hamnikka. I think South Korea’s weather is the same as that of the eastern U.S.
2. Nam-Han e kihu nin Mikuk Tongpu wa kathita ko songkak-hamnikka? Do you think South Korea’s weather is the same as that of the eastern U.S.?
3. Ce yaca nin Mikuk salam ila ko songkak-hamnikka? Do you think that woman is an American?
4. Ce yaca nin Mikuk salam ila ko songkak-hac1 anhsimnikka? Don’t you think that woman is an American?
5. Kakkim yanghwa ponin kos i cohta ko songkak-hac1 anhsimnikka? Don’t you think it is good to see the movies sometimes?
*6. Kakkim yanghwa ponin kos i cohta ko mitsaminita. I believe that it is good to see the movies sometimes.
7. Pak Sensang i Yangsa lil cal hanta ko mitsaminita. I believe that Mr. Park speaks English well.
8. Pak Sensæng 1 Yængë lil cal hanta ko tilessimnitæ.
10. Kim Ssi e apæcɪ ka tola kasyæssta ko (maï-)hæssimnitæ.
11. Ceinsɪ nɪn tingsan-hal kyehwek ila ko hæssimnitæ.
12. Ceinsɪ nɪn tingsan-hal kyehwek ila ko alessimnitæ.
13. Sensæng 1 Sœul esæ olo tøngan il-hæssæ ko alessimnitæ.
14. Sensæng 1 Sœul esæ olo tøngan il-hæssæ ko amnita.

I heard that Mr. Park speaks English well.
I heard that Mr. Kim's father (had) passed away.
[They] (or Mr. Kim) said that Mr. Kim's (or his) father passed away.
James told me (or said) that he was planning to go hiking.
I understood (or knew) that James was planning to go hiking.
I understood that you worked in Seoul for a long time.
I understand that you have worked in Seoul for a long time.

C. Response Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal i ølyæwø yo?
Student 1: Ne, (Hankuk mal i) ølyæpta ko sængkak-hamnitæ.
Student 2: Aniyø, (Hankuk mal i) ølyæpta ko sængkak-haci anhæssimnitæ.

1. Kongpu-haki cæmi issæ yo?

'Is Korean difficult?'
'Yes, I think Korean is difficult.'
'No, I don't think Korean is difficult.'

Ne, (kongpu-haki) cæmi issæ ko sængkak-hamnitæ.
Aniyø, (kongpu-haki) cæmi issæ ko sængkak-haci anhæssimnitæ.
Ne, (cæ yæca ka) yeppita ko sængkak-hamnitæ.
Aniyø, (cæ yæca ka) yeppita ko sængkak-haci anhæssimnitæ.
Ne, (Kim Sensæng 1 Pullanse mal il) cal hanta ko sængkak-hamnitæ.
Aniyø, (Kim Sensæng 1 Pullanse mal il) cal hanta ko sængkak-haci anhæssimnitæ.
    Aniyo, (kichÌ¬ ka) phyëlÌ¬-hata ko sëngkak-haci anhÎ¬mînita.

    Aniyo, (Hankuk san i) alÎ¬mtapta ko sëngkak-haci anhÎ¬mînita.

    Aniyo, (naÌ¬ssì¬ ka) phèk chuwe cëssÀ¬ ko sëngkak-haci anhÎ¬mînita.

7. Pakk e palam i tÎ¬tanhi pûle yo?  Ne, (pakk e palam i) tÎ¬tanhi punta ko sëngkak-hamnita.
    Aniyo, (pakk e palam i) tÎ¬tanhi punta ko sëngkak-haci anhÎ¬mînita.

8. Mì¬kuk kwÌ¬ Hankuk e kihu ka pisÎ¬thÎ¬n kës kÎ¬the yo?  Ne, (Mì¬kuk kwÌ¬ Hankuk e kihu ka) pisÎ¬thÎ¬n kës kÎ¬tha ko sëngkak-
    hamnita.
    Aniyo, (Mì¬kuk kwÌ¬ Hankuk e kihu ka) pisÎ¬thÎ¬n kës kÎ¬tha ko sëngkak-
    haci anhÎ¬mînita.

    Aniyo, (i sikye ka) thillîta ko sëngkak-haci anhÎ¬mînita.

10. Ki munce ka phèk cungyo-hëe yo?  Ne, (ki munce ka) phèk cungyo-hata ko sëngkak-
    hamnita.
    Aniyo, (ki munce ka) phèk cungyo-
    hata ko sëngkak-haci anhÎ¬mînita.

11. Cs ì¬a ì¬a tòktòtokhan haksànëng iye yo?  Ne, (cs ì¬a ì¬a) tòktòtokhan haksànëng ilà ko sëngkak-
    hamnita.
    Aniyo, (cs ì¬a ì¬a) tòktòtokhan haksànëng ilà ko sëngkak-haci anhÎ¬mînita.
D. Response Drill

Tutor: Fak Sensaeng i Yang e lal cal hanta ko hassæ yo?
Student: Ne, (Fak Sensaeng i Yang e lal) cal hanta ko tilasse yo.

1. Consi Sensaeng i kot Seoul e tola onta ko hassæ yo?
2. Hankuk e yelim nalssi ka Nyuyok pota te mutæpta ko hassæ yo?
   ('Did [they] say that the summer weather in Korea is more muggy than in New York?!
3. Yang Sensaeng i cangchika ka tweessta ko hassæ yo?
4. Pak Sensaeng puin i inhæng e kimmu-hal kes ila ko hassæ yo?
5. Taëku e kyothong i phyelli-hata ko hassæ yo?
6. Hakkyo kal sikan i nicssta ko hassæ yo?

'Did [they] say that Mr. Park speaks English well?'
'Yes, I heard [he] speaks English well.'

Ne, (Consi Sensaeng i) kot Seoul e tola onta ko tilasse yo.
Ne, (Hankuk e yelim nalssi ka Nyuyok pota) te mutæpta ko tilasse yo.

Ne, (Yang Sensaeng i) cangchika ka tweessta ko tilasse yo.
Ne, (Pak Sensaeng puin i) inhæng e kimmu-hal kes ila ko tilasse yo.
Ne, (Taëku e kyothong i) phyelli-hata ko tilasse yo.
Ne, hakkyo kal sikan i nicssta ko tilasse yo.

E. Response Drill

Tutor: Kakkim yanghwa lal ponin kes i cohta ko sangkak-hase yo?
Student: Ne, kakkim yanghwa lal ponin kes i cohta ko mitsimnita.

1. Cang sensaeng i cikim Seoul e kyesinta ko sangkak-hase yo?
2. Hankuk mal il almyen, Hankuk ese il-haki phyenhata ko sangkak-hase yo?
3. Ki munce ka talita ko sangkak-hase yo?
4. Ilpone munpep i Cungkuke pota pokcap-hata ko sangkak-hase yo?

'Do you think it's nice to see the movies occasionally?'
'Yes, I believe it's nice to see movies occasionally.'

Ne, Ceng Sensaeng i cikim Seoul e kyesinta ko mitsimnita.
Ne, Hankuk mal il almyen, Hankuk ese il-haki phyenhata ko mitsimnita.
Ne, ki munce ka talita ko mitsimnita.
Ne, Ilpone munpep i Cungkuke pota pokcap-hata ko mitsimnita.

481
UNIT 18  
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

5. Snsng in kntw kyngham i
   phlyo-hata ko sngkak-hase yo?
6. Cem Snsng in Hankuk phungsk
   il cal ihw-hanta ko sngkak-
   hase yo?
7. Pak Snsng (e) mal i thllita
   ko sngkak-hase yo?

Ne, kntw kyngham i phlyo-hata
ko mitsmnita.
Ne, (Cem Snsng in) Hankuk
phungsk il cal ihw-hanta ko
mitsmnita.
Ne, Pak Snsng (e) mal i thllita
ko mitsmnita.

F. Response Drill

Tutor: C pun in wekyokwimmnikka?
Student: Ne, (c pun in) wekyokw
ila ko alessmnita.

1. Kms Snsng i Yng ge lll
   kalichintka?
2. Pak Yngca ka kylhon-hesmnikka?

3. Cng Snsng i tmss ka
twessmnikka?
4. Hankuk e kyul kihu ka Mnk Tngp
   wa pisithmnikka?
5. Hankuk sikol kil es uncen-haki
   (ka) alyspmmnikka?
6. I Snsng e smni n nai ka
   manhsmnikka?

'Is that man in the foreign service?'
'Yes, I understood (or thought) that
he is in the foreign service.'

Ne, (Kms Snsng i) Yng ge ll
kalichinta ko alessmnita.
Ne, (Pak Yngca ka) kyulhon-hessta
ko alessmnita.
Ne, (Cng Snsng i) tmss ka
twesssta ko alessmnita.
Ne, (Hankuk e kyul kihu ka Mnk
Tngp wa) pisithata ko alessmnita.
Ne, Hankuk sikol kil es uncen-haki
(ka) alyspta ko alessmnita.
Ne, I Snsng e smni n nai ka
manhta ko alessmnita.

G. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Onl natsi ka phc cohci yo?
Student: Ne, (onl natsi ka) phc
cohkun yo!

1. Cohin nalssi ka kyesok-haci yo?
2. Il i pokcap-haci yo?
3. Imsk i mas i cohci yo?

'The weather is very nice today,
isn't it?'
'Yes, it certainly is!'

Ne, cohin nalssi ka kyesok-hninkun
yo!
Ne, il i pokcap-hkun yo!
Ne, imsk i mas i cohkun yo!

482
4. Hanil i tøtæni mā(1)kci yo?
5. Kim Sønsøng e atil i phæk tøkttokhacii yo?
6. Kot, pi ka ol kæs kathucii yo?
7. Ki ai ca apeci wa pisithacii yo?
8. Onil nalessi ka mut-topici yo?
   ('Today's weather is muggy, isn't it?!')
9. Kimchi ka cængmal mæpcii yo?

Ne, hanil i tøtæni mā(1)kænkun yo!
Ne, (Kim Sønsøng e atil i) phæk tøkttokkhaunkun yo!
Ne, kot, pi ka ol kæs kathunkun yo!
Ne, (ki ai ka) apeci wa pisithakun yo!
Ne, (onil nalessi ka) mutæpkun yo!
Ne, (kimchi ka) cængmal mæpkun yo!

H. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: Nalessi ka chupsimnita.
Student: Nalessi ka cæcmæ chuwæ cimnita.

1. Hankuk mal i elyæpsimnita.
2. Pang an i tattittihamnita.
3. Ce nin nai ka manhsimnita.
4. Il e cæmi ka issimnita.
5. Munce ka talæmnita.
6. Kyothong i phyællhæmnita.
7. Ki ai nin khi ka khæmnita.
8. Namphyæn kwa anæ e ækæl i pisithamnita.

'The weather is cold!'
'The weather is getting colder!'

Hankuk mal i cæcmæ elyææ cimnita.
Pang an i cæcmæ ttattittæ cimnita.
Ce nin nai ka cæcmæ manhæ cimnita.
Cæcmæ il e cæmi ka issæ cimnita.
Munce ka cæcmæ tallæ cimnita.
Kyothong i cæcmæ phyællææ cimnita.
Ki ai nin cæcmæ khi ka keæ cimnita.
Namphyæn kwa anæ e ækæl i cæcmæ pisithææ cimnita.
Yoseæ nin piæengki ka cæcmæ ppællæ cimnita.

I. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Pi ka omnita.
Student: Pi ka onin kæs kathæmnita.

1. Il i æcik kyesok-hæmnita.
2. Piææ ka thainphi lil cal chæmnita.
3. Aæssi ka ki saken e ðææææ se amnita.

'It's raining.'
'It seems to be raining (now).'

Il i æcik kyesok-hææ kæs kathæmnita.
Piææ ka thainphi lil cal chææ kæs kathæmnita.
Aæssi ka ki saken e ðææææ se anæ kæs kathæmnita.
4. Miss Braun in nai ka kii manhwi anhsimnita.
5. I Sønsæng i onil ttaenal kyehwek imnita.
6. Ceimsî nîn yëngsa ka twekî wenhamnita.
7. Miss Chwe ka tangsin il salang-hamnita.
8. Ki salam e aëssi ka puca imnita.
9. Ce haksæng i phek ttokttokhamnita.

J. Response Drill

**Tutor:** Onil ilki ka oce wa pisithamnikka?
**Student:** Ne, (onil ilki ka oce wa) pisithan kos kathsimnita.

1. Pakk e nalssi ka chupsimnikka?
2. Tëssa ka Hankuk mal il ale tissimnikka?
3. Hakkyo kal sikan i acik ilimnikka?
4. Hanil i hilimnikka?
5. Samusîl i com etsupsimnikka?
6. Kisaangtë e ilki yepo ka thillimnikka?
7. Kim Sønsæng e mal i maçsimnikka?
8. Wëkyokwan sëngwhal e wekuke ka cungyo-hamnikka?
9. Mikuk tëssa ka tangsin e ilim il molimnikka?

Miss Braun in nai ka kili manhwi anhîn kês kathsimnita.
I Sønsæng i onil ttaenal kyehwek in kês kathsimnita.
Ceimsî nîn yëngsa ka twekî wenhanîn kês kathsimnita.
Miss Chwe ka tangsin il salang-hanîn kês kathsimnita.
Ki salam e aëssi ka puca in kês kathsimnita.
Ce haksæng i phek ttokttokhan kês kathsimnita.

'Is today's weather similar to that of yesterday?'

'Yes, it looks the same.' ('It seems it is similar. ')

Ne, chuun kês kathsimnita.
Ne, aë titnin kês kathsimnita.

Ne, (acik) ilîn kês kathsimnita.
Ne, hilîn kês kathsimnita.
Ne, (com) etuun kês kathsimnita.
Ne, thillîn kês kathsimnita.
Ne, macin kês kathsimnita.
Ne, cungyo-han kês kathsimnita.

Ne, molinîn kês kathsimnita.
K. Response Drill

Tutor: Ohu e nun 1 ol kka yo?
Student: Ne, (nun 1) ol kəs kathə̈mənita.

1. I os i pissal kka yo?
2. Hanil i kəəl kka yo?
3. Miss Braun i kot kəəl hon hal kka yo?
4. Ki yəca ka kiləhke palal kka yo?
5. Ki chinku ka catongcha līl tasi pakkul kka yo?
6. Puin i Hankuk il cohahal kka yo?
7. Nəml nalasi ka mutəul kka yo?
8. Ilki yepo ka thillil kka yo?
9. Kim Paksa mal i cəŋmal il kka yo?

"Will it snow in the afternoon?"
"Yes, it looks like it." ('It seems that it will snow.')

Ne, pissal kəs kathə̈mənita.
Ne, kəəl kəs kathə̈mənita.
Ne, kot kəəl hon hal kəs kathə̈mənita.
Ne, kələhke palal kəs kathə̈mənita.
Ne, tasi pakkul kəs kathə̈mənita.
Ne, (anə ka Hankuk il) cohahal kəs kathə̈mənita.
Ne, mutəul kəs kathə̈mənita.
Ne, thillil kəs kathə̈mənita.
Ne, cəŋmal il kəs kathə̈mənita.

L. Response Drill

Tutor: Hanil i kəəl kəs kathə̈mənita.
Student: Cəŋmal, kəəki palamnita.

1. Ilki ka ttəttithal kəs kathə̈mənita.
2. Il i onil ta kəkəth-nal kəs kathə̈mənita.
3. Ceinisi nin Hankuk mal kongpu līl kimantucı anhil kəs kathə̈mənita.
4. Munce ka apsil kəs kathə̈mənita.
5. Mikuk e tola ka to, Hankuk mal kongpu ka kyesok-hal kəs kathə̈mənita.
8. Palam i pulci anhil kəs kathə̈mənita.

"It seems the sky will clear up."
"I sure hope it does." ('Truly, I hope it clears up.')

Cəŋmal, ttəttithaki palamnita.
Cəŋmal, onil ta kəkəth-naki palamnita.
Cəŋmal, kimantucı anhki palamnita.
Cəŋmal, (munce ka) əpoki palamnita.
Cəŋmal, kyesok-haki palamnita.
Cəŋmal, tasi mannaki palamnita.
Cəŋmal, ələepci anhki palamnita.
Cəŋmal, (palam il) pulci anhki palamnita.
UNIT 18 KOREAN BASIC COURSE

9. Tewakwan ese uli eke allye cul k'as kathismnita.
   Congmal, allye cuki palamnita.

10. Simae e kil i pencap-ha k'as kathci anhsimnita.
    Congmal, pencap-haci anhki palamnita.

EXERCISES

A. Tell Pak Sansaeng that:

1. It's raining hard.
2. It's snowing outside.
3. It started to rain just a minute ago.
4. It has stopped snowing.
5. It is very windy and cloudy today.
6. It rained all morning/achim n'ama/.
7. It was snowy and cold yesterday at Panmunjom.
8. It was awfully muggy all summer in Washington.
9. It was hot but there was no humidity/sipki/.
10. It has begun to cloud up/kulim i kki-ta/.
11. It has begun to clear up.
12. The sky was clear and the temperature/onto/ was cool.
13. In winter, river always freeze/ol-ta/ but the sun shines most of the time.
14. The rainy season begins in the warm spring season and lasts until the end of July.
15. Beginning early November the weather gets gradually colder.

B. James asks: You:

1. If you think the Korean winter is the same as that of New York State.
   'Yes, I think so.'
2. If it looks like rain.
   'Yes, but I hope it won't rain.'
3. If Koreans use chop-sticks like Japanese.
   'Yes, they usually do.'
4. Whether it seems housing in Tokyo is less expensive than in the U.S.
   'No, it seems to be about the same.'
5. If you have any important plans.
   'Yes, I have one, but not a specially important one.'
6. how long you're planning to stay in Korea.
   'Oh, maybe about two or three years.'
7. if you want to go hiking.
   'Yes, only when the sky clears up.'
8. if you will go swimming /suyeng/ with him.
   'Yes, if there is a good place to swim/suyang-hal te/.'
9. if winter is good for hunting /sanyang-haki/.
   'Yes, it is. But there are not many places to hunt/sanyang-hal kos/.'
10. if people go fishing/nakssi-cil (hala) ka-ta/ to the sea.
    'Some people do, but you can also see people fishing/nakssi-cil hanin kos/ by the river sides.'

C. Make a short dialogue so that one of the following expressions is included in the response:

1. ilehke
   'this way'
2. celehke
   'that way'
3. kelshke
   'that way, in such a way'
4. ilen
   'this kind of'
5. celon
   'that kind of'
6. kilen
   'such kind of'
7. chacha or cemcem
   'gradually'
8. onil chelom
   'like today'
9. Sonseong e mal k macsimnita.
    (or macassimnita).
   'You are right.'
10. Nae ka thillissimnita.
    'I am wrong.' ('I was not right.')
11. Nae ka cal mot hessimnita.
    'I was wrong.' ('I couldn't do well.')
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

Korean-English Glossary

The following is all of the vocabulary introduced in this text, except words used for pronunciation drills in the Introductory Unit. There are three vertical columns: the left column is the Korean in transcription; the middle is the same in Hankil; the right column is the meaning in English.

A verb is listed in the traditional Korean dictionary form ending in -ta with a hyphen after stem. Every verb or verb phrase is indicated as to transitive or intransitive by Vt & Vi respectively in the parenthesis immediately after the entry, and its Infinitive form is also entered right after Vt or Vi. A free noun or noun phrase is not indicated for its part-of-speech, but other entries are so indicated like verbs: (D) = Determinative, (DN) = Dependent Noun, (PN) = Post-Noun, (Ad) = Adverb, (P) = Particle, (C) = Counter, (Num Ch) = Numeral of Chinese Character origin, (Num K) = Numeral of Korean origin, (Int) = Interjection.

An Arabic number immediately following English meaning for each entry refers to the Unit in which it first occurs: the number alone refers to the Basic Dialogue or Dialogues of that unit; N, G or D preceded by a number refers to the Notes on Dialogues, Grammar Notes and Drills of the unit indicated by number respectively.

Examples:

9 means Unit 9, Basic Dialogue(s)
9-N means Unit 9, Notes on the Basic Dialogues
9-G means Unit 9, Grammar Notes
9-D means Unit 9, Drills

Entries are listed according to the alphabetical order of the Basic Syllable Chart in Introductory Unit: a, e, o, u, i, i, e, a, y, w, k, kk, kh, n, t, tt, th, l, m, p, pp, ph, s, ss, c, cc, ch, h, ng.
a (Int)  
아

Oh! 1

child 2-D

aiku (Int)  
아이구!

Gee!, Oh! 17

a(l)-ta (Vt: ala)  
알다: 알여

knows 2-G

Do you know? 3

Amnikka?

알니가?

a little while ago, a few minutes ago 16-N

akka (Ad)  
아가

a little while ago, a few minutes ago 16-N

atil  
아들

son 14

atınim  
아들님

your son (honored) 14-N

alte tät-ta (Vt: ale tile)  
들어 들다: 들여 들어

understands (by ears) 9

alte po-ta (Vt: ale pwa)  
들어 보다: 들여 보아

finds out, recognizes 7-G

alte cu-ta (Vt: ale cuε)  
들어 주다: 들여 주여

recognizes, gives credit 7-G

alm'ntap-ta (Vt: almtawa)  
들茅台다: 들茅台여

is beautiful 5-D

ama (Ad)  
아마

perhaps, probably 11

am (Ad)  
아

An mammita.

not 3

[It] is not far. 3

an

the inside 16-D

ani (Ad)  
아니

no (plain speech) 17

an'yo (Ad)  
아니요.

no 1

(No), not at all. 1

Aniyo, kwæchanshinmita. 아니요, 폐창십시오.

my wife 14

arn

아내

489
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

annyøng
Annyøng-hasimnikka?
Annyønghi kasipsiyo.
Annyønghi kyesipsiyo.

peace, tranquility 1
How are you? 1
peacefully 1
Good bye (to someone leaving). 1
Good bye (to someone staying). 1

ancu

relish [taken with liquor],
sidedish 12

anc-ta (Vi: anca)
ance iss-ta

sits 11-D
is seated 14-C

anh-ta (Vt: anha)
Pissaci anhsimnita.

not 4
[It] is not expensive. 4

apënim
apëci

father (honored) 11-N
father 13-D

aphi-ta (Vi: aphe)

is sick, hurts 6

acësi

uncle 14-D

acik (Ad)

(not) yet, still 6-N

acu (Ad)

very, extremely 10

acumëni

aunt 14-D

achim

morning, breakfast 4-D
this morning 4-D

onil achim

I had my breakfast. 12-D

Achim il makassimnita.

breakfast ('morning meal')
12-D

achim siksa

nine days, the 9th day of the
month 6-D

ahile

ninety 5

ahîn (Num K)

nine 5

ahop (Num K)
okke

어깨

shoulder 13

sti

어디

where, what place 2
di e

어디에

where 2

ste (Ad)

어배

where 2

stup-ta (Vi: stuwə)

어둠 다: 어두워

is dark 10-D

ättah-ta (Vi: əttəhə)

어магазин 다: 어띠어

how is? 4

어pieczeńst

what kind of 5

I kəs i əttəhsimnikka?

이것이 어떻습니까?

How is this? 4

ättahke (Ad)

어떻게

how?, in what way? 1

al-ta (Vi: əla)

앞 다: 앞어

freezes 18-D

alim

어طم

ice 12-D

alim mul

어طم 몸

ice water 12-D

ali-ta (Vi: əlyə)

어티마: 어벽

is young, is childish 14

alkul

얼굴

face 13

alyəp-ta (Vi: alyəwe)

어렵다: 어벽에

is difficult 5-D

alma

얼마

how much, what price 4

alma imnikka?

얼마 입니가?

How much is it? 4

alma na kellinnikka?

얼마 날까요?

How long does it take? 7

alma tongan

얼마 동안

for how long, for some time 15-N

əməni

어머니

mother 13-G

əmənim

어머님

mother (honored) 14-N

əmma

엄마

mammy, mother 17

ən (D)

어느

which, a certain 2

ən kəs

어느 것

which one? 2

ən hwasa esse

어느 회사에서

at some company 15

491
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Word</th>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ameni</td>
<td>언니</td>
<td>older sister (of female) 14-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ance</td>
<td>여제</td>
<td>when 5-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ance tinci</td>
<td>여제도지</td>
<td>anytime 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apts-ta (Vi: aptsae)</td>
<td>없다: 아직</td>
<td>does not exist, does not have 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ase</td>
<td>어서</td>
<td>quickly, please 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ase osipsyo.</td>
<td>어서 오십시오.</td>
<td>Please come in. 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ace</td>
<td>어제</td>
<td>yesterday 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o (Num Ch)</td>
<td>오</td>
<td>five 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o-ta (Vi: wa)</td>
<td>오타: 와</td>
<td>comes 2-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>olin (D)</td>
<td>오른</td>
<td>right 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>olin cook</td>
<td>오른쪽</td>
<td>the right (side) 2-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ole</td>
<td>오택</td>
<td>a long time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ole kan man imnita.</td>
<td>오택칸란 입니다.</td>
<td>(I haven't seen you for a long time), Long time no see. 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ole tongan</td>
<td>오택 동안</td>
<td>for a long time 8-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>olla o-ta (Vi: olla wa)</td>
<td>올라 오타: 올라 와</td>
<td>comes up 7-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>olla ka-ta (Vi: olla ka)</td>
<td>올라 가타: 올라 가</td>
<td>goes up 7-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>olh-ta (Vi: olha)</td>
<td>올라: 올라야</td>
<td>is right 18-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onil</td>
<td>오늘</td>
<td>today 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onto</td>
<td>온도</td>
<td>temperature 18-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppa</td>
<td>오빠</td>
<td>older brother (of female) 14-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>os</td>
<td>옷</td>
<td>clothes, dresses 4-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ohu</td>
<td>오후</td>
<td>afternoon 4-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onil ohu</td>
<td>오늘 오후</td>
<td>this afternoon 4-D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

uyu
우유
milk 12-D

uli
우리
we, our 1h
uli kacok
우리 가족
our family 1h

untong
운동
physical exercise, sport 9-D
 untong-ha-ta (Vi: 운동하다: 운동해
takes exercises, plays [balls] 9-D
 untong-hae)

untongcang
운동장
playground 16-D

uncansu
운전수
driver 16-D

uphyøenkuk
우편국
post office 3-D

iywan
의원
congressman, member of the National Assembly 16-D

1l/lil (P)
을/을
What do you do? 1
Sønsøng in muus il hasimnikka?
선생은 무엇을
I speak English. 1-G
to, as, by 2
Yønge lil mal-hamnitø.
영어를 말합니다.
Go to the left. 2

ilo/lo (P)
우로/로
as a diplomat 7
Weø cook ilø kasipsiyø.
원쪽으로 가십시오.
by ship 7
wekyøkwan ilø
외교관으로

pe lo
비로

imsik
음식
food 7-D

imsikcøm
음식점
restaurant 10-D

ln/nin (?)
은/는
as far 1
Ce ilim in Ceimø imnita.
제 이름은 제임스입니다.
My name is James. 1
Ce nin haksøng imnita.
저는 학생입니다.
I'm a student. 1-G
Sønsøng in muus il hasimnikka?
선생은 무엇을
What are YOU doing? 1-G
han
소

inhøeng
은행
bank 2-D
### KOREAN BASIC COURSE

<p>| iywa | 의사 | medical doctor 8-D |
| iyca | 의자 | chair 2-D |
| iing (Ad) | 응 | yes (plain speech) 17 |
| i | 이 | Lee (family name) 1-D |
| i (Num Ch) | 이 | two 4 |
| i (D) | 이 | this 2 |
| i | 이 | tooth 13 |
| i/ka (P) | 이/가 | the embassy (as subject) 2 |
| | 태사관이 | Where is the embassy? 2 |
| | 태사관이 어디에 | |
| | 있습니까? | |
| i-ta (Copula: iye or iye) | 이다: 이예: 이여 | How much is [it]? 5 |
| | 얼마나예요? | |
| iyaki | 이야기 | story 17 (see yakki) |
| iyaki-ha-ta (iyaki-hae) | 이야기하다: 이야기해 | speaks, talks, tells |
| Sŏnseong e taeha-se iyaki tilsasimnita. | 선생에 대해서 이야기 돌았습니다. | I heard about you. 17 |
| il | 일 | work, job 6 |
| il-ha-ta (il-hae) | 일하다: 일해 | works 3-G |
| il cali | 일이 | job 16-D |
| il (DN) | 일 | experience, fact |
| Cungkuk 1msik il make pon il i issımnikka? | 중국 음식을 먹어 본 일이 있습니까? | Have you ever eaten Chinese food? 13 |
| il (Num Ch) | 일 | one 4 |
| il (C) | 일 | day |
| il-il | 일 일 | the 1st day of the month 6 |
| ilato (P) | 이따오 | 18-G (see lato) |
| ilanat (Vi: ilan) | 일어나다: 일어나 | gets up 12-D |
| ilanh-ta (Vi: ile or ilshen) | 일하: 일하이 | is like this |
| ilan nalssi | 일 날씨 | this kind of weather 18 |
| ill-ta (Vi: illa) | 일두: 일두 | is early |
| ilin yslim | 일름 여름 | early summer 18 |
| ilin | 일름 | name 1 |
| ilhin/ilin (Num K) | 일흔/일든 | seventy 5 |
| ile | 일에 | seven days, the 7th day of the month 6-D |
| iliol | 일요일 | Sunday 6-D |
| ilk-ta (Vi: ilkæ) | 일다: 읽어 | reads 1-D |
| ilkop (Num K) | 일곱 | seven 5 |
| ilki | 일기 | weather 15 (see nalssi) |
| Ilpon | 일본 | Japan 1-G |
| Ilpon mal | 일본 말 | Japanese (language) 1-D |
| Ilpon salam | 일본 사람 | Japanese 1-G |
| Ilpone | 일본어 | Japanese (language) 8-D |
| ilsang (D) | 일상 | daily 4 |
| ilsang yongphum | 일상 융물 | daily necessities, daily things 4 |
| ilcciki (Ad) | 일제치기 | early 11-D |
| innita (Copula) | 입니다: 입니다 | (see i-ta) |
| Kim Kisu innita. | 김 기수 입니다. | [I am Kisu Kim. |
| insa-ha-ta (Vi: insa-hæ) | 인사하다: 인사해 | greets 9-D |
| insa-kwa | 인사과 | personnel section |
| insa-kwacang | 인사 과장 | personnel section chief, personnel officer 13-D |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word (P)</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ina</td>
<td>이나</td>
<td>10 (see na)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Into</td>
<td>인트</td>
<td>India 6-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip</td>
<td>임</td>
<td>mouth 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip-ta (Vt: ipǝ)</td>
<td>입다: 입여</td>
<td>puts on (clothes), dresses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ipǝ po-ta (ipǝ pwa)</td>
<td>입여 보다: 입여 바</td>
<td>tries on (clothes) 7-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ipku</td>
<td>입구</td>
<td>the entrance 16-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itta (Ad)</td>
<td>이따</td>
<td>later (on the same day) 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Itta mannapsita.</td>
<td>이따 만나시다.</td>
<td>See you later. 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ithil</td>
<td>이튿</td>
<td>two days, the 2nd day of the month 6-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ithelı</td>
<td>이태티</td>
<td>Italy 6-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ithelıe</td>
<td>이태티어</td>
<td>Italian 8-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ippal</td>
<td>이바발</td>
<td>tooth 13 (see i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isa</td>
<td>이사</td>
<td>moving (house)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isa-ha-ta (isa-he)</td>
<td>이사하다: 이사해</td>
<td>moves (house, office, etc.) 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iss-ta (Vt: issǝ)</td>
<td>쟈다: 쟈여</td>
<td>exists, is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cal issımmita.</td>
<td>쟈 사람들다.</td>
<td>[I]’m fine. (lit. ’[I] exists well.’) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>icım</td>
<td>이즘</td>
<td>these days 8 (see yocım)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ingkhı</td>
<td>잉크</td>
<td>ink 7-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ihǝ</td>
<td>이해</td>
<td>understanding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ihǝ-ha-ta (ihǝ-he)</td>
<td>이해하다: 이해해</td>
<td>understand, comprehends 18-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>에</td>
<td>to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e (P)</td>
<td>에</td>
<td>I’m going to the Seoul Station. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sеul yǝk e kamnità.</td>
<td>서울 역에 갑니다.</td>
<td>of, -’s 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e (P)</td>
<td>엘</td>
<td>my name 1-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce e ilım</td>
<td>저의 이름</td>
<td>496</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Korean Basic Course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e (P)</td>
<td>에</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eke (P)</td>
<td>에게</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ki chek il na eke ilke cusipsiyu.</td>
<td>그 채어 나에게 택어 주십시오.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ekese (P)</td>
<td>에게서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아머니에게서</td>
<td>from mother 13-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ese (P)</td>
<td>에서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kyosiil ese konpu-hamnita.</td>
<td>교실에서 공부합니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ya (P)</td>
<td>야</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puchiya hamnita.</td>
<td>부쳐야 합니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yakpang</td>
<td>야빵</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yaksok</td>
<td>약속</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yaksok-ha-ta (yaksok-ha)</td>
<td>약속 했다: 약속 해</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yachae</td>
<td>야채</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yangnyem</td>
<td>양념</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yangmal</td>
<td>양말</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yangpok</td>
<td>양복</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yangsik</td>
<td>양식</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yangsikcem</td>
<td>양식점</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yak</td>
<td>역</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yaki</td>
<td>여기</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yaki e</td>
<td>여기에</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yaki e issinmita.</td>
<td>여기에 있습니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yaki issinmita.</td>
<td>여기 있습니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영어</td>
<td>한국어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yekwan</td>
<td>여관</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yaksa</td>
<td>의사</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yeta1 - yeta(l)p (Num K)</td>
<td>여덟 - 여덟</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yetile</td>
<td>여드레</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yetin (Num K)</td>
<td>여든</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ya-tongseong</td>
<td>여동생</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yal (Num K)</td>
<td>여</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yal-ta (Vt: yala)</td>
<td>엽다: 엽어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yale (D)</td>
<td>엽어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yale kaci</td>
<td>엽여 가지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yalim</td>
<td>엽봄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yalhil</td>
<td>엽훈</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yanphil</td>
<td>연필</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yansip</td>
<td>연습</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yansip-ha-ta (Vt: yansip-he)</td>
<td>연습하다: 연습해</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yenha-ta (Vt: yenhe)</td>
<td>연하다: 연해</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yaposse yo!</td>
<td>엽보세요!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yaposesippyoi!</td>
<td>엽보십시오!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yeph</td>
<td>엽</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yephe</td>
<td>엽에</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sichang yephe e issimnita.</td>
<td>시청 엽에 있습니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yosses (Num K)</td>
<td>엽서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English/Chinese</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yesæ</td>
<td>연세</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yeæa</td>
<td>여자</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yahæng</td>
<td>여행</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yahæng-ha-ta</td>
<td>여행하다: 여행해</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yæng</td>
<td>영</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yængæ</td>
<td>영어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yængkuk</td>
<td>영국</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yængkuk salam</td>
<td>영국 사람</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yængsa</td>
<td>영사</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yængsakwan</td>
<td>영사관</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yæng-Han</td>
<td>영한</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yænghwa</td>
<td>영화</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yi</td>
<td>이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yo (Particle)</td>
<td>요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chenman e yo.</td>
<td>천만에요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yol (FN)</td>
<td>요일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musin yol</td>
<td>무슨 요일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yose</td>
<td>요새</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yocim</td>
<td>요즘</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yongphum</td>
<td>응품</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ilsang yongphum</td>
<td>일상 응품</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuk (Num Ch)</td>
<td>육</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yukci</td>
<td>육지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yumyæng</td>
<td>유명</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yumyæng-han salam</td>
<td>유명한 사람</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yeppi-ta (Vi: yeppə)</td>
<td>is pretty 5-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yesun (Num K)</td>
<td>sixty 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wa/kwa (P)</td>
<td>with, and 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>na wa kathi</td>
<td>with me 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chek kwa yənphil</td>
<td>book and pencil 4-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waisyassı</td>
<td>dress shirt 4-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wanhæng (cha)</td>
<td>local (train) 10-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wiham-ha-ta (Vi: wiham-hme)</td>
<td>is dangerous, is in danger 17-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wal (C)</td>
<td>March 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sam-wal</td>
<td>originally, formerly 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walle (Ad)</td>
<td>Monday 6-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walyoil</td>
<td>Vietnam 6-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wallam</td>
<td>Won (Korean monetary unit) 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wən (C)</td>
<td>W50 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o-sip wən</td>
<td>wants 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wənha-ta (Vi: wənhae)</td>
<td>memorizes, learns by heart 17-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we-ta (Vi: wee or wews)</td>
<td>besides, not only (see pakkə)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we e</td>
<td>besides an older brother 14-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyeong nim we e</td>
<td>diplomat, foreign service personnel 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wekyokwan</td>
<td>foreign country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wekuk</td>
<td>foreign language 8-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wekuke</td>
<td>Ministry of Foreign Affairs (Korea) 3-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wemupu</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wen (D)</td>
<td>산</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wen ccek ilo</td>
<td>왼쪽으로</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wehwan</td>
<td>외환</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we (Ad)</td>
<td>왜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wesik</td>
<td>왜식</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ka (P)</td>
<td>가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hakkyo ka issimnita</td>
<td>학교가 있습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ka-ta (Vi: ka)</td>
<td>가다: 가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annyanghi kasipsio</td>
<td>안녕히 가십시오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wen ccek ilo kasipsio</td>
<td>왼쪽으로 가십시오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kail</td>
<td>가을</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kakkap-ta (Vi:akkawa)</td>
<td>가깝다: 가까워</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kakkai</td>
<td>가까이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kakkai (Ad)</td>
<td>가까이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kakkim (Ad)</td>
<td>가깝</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kath-ta (Vi: kathe)</td>
<td>갈다: 갈이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kathi (Ad)</td>
<td>갈이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na wa kathi kapsita</td>
<td>나와 갈이 갑시다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kathi (P)</td>
<td>갈이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nyuyok kathi</td>
<td>난육갈이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kalak</td>
<td>가락</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son kalak</td>
<td>손가락</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pal kalak</td>
<td>발가락</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ces kalak</td>
<td>촌가락</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sut kalak</td>
<td>숯가락</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kalu</td>
<td>가루</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean Word</td>
<td>English Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kalichi-ta (Vt: kalichia)</td>
<td>teaches 1-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kamsa</td>
<td>gratitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kamsa-ha-ta (Vi: kamsa-hê)</td>
<td>is grateful 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kamsa-hamnita.</td>
<td>Thank you. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kantan</td>
<td>simplicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kantan-ha-ta (Vi: kantan-hê)</td>
<td>is simple 8-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kancang</td>
<td>(soy) sauce 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kapang</td>
<td>briefcase 13-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kapyêp-ta (Vi: kapyêwa)</td>
<td>is light (in weight) 10-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kap(s)</td>
<td>price 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cip kaps</td>
<td>rent, the price of a house 4-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kapcaki (Ad)</td>
<td>suddenly 17-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kasim</td>
<td>chest 13-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kacang (Ad)</td>
<td>best, most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kacang ppalimnita.</td>
<td>[It]'s fastest. 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kacok</td>
<td>family, a family member 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaci (PN)</td>
<td>sorts, kinds 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yalê kaci ka issimnita.</td>
<td>[We] have several kinds. 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaci-ta (Vt: kace)</td>
<td>possesses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kace o-ta</td>
<td>bring (something) 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kace ka-ta</td>
<td>takes (something) 12-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kace iss-ta</td>
<td>has, is possessing 14-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kangsa</td>
<td>instructor 8-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tehak kangsa</td>
<td>college instructor 8-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kêi (Ad)</td>
<td>almost, nearly 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kai ta</td>
<td>almost (all) 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kêki</td>
<td>there, that place 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaki esa</td>
<td>거기에서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kakceng</td>
<td>걱정</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kakceng-ha-ta (Vi:Vt)</td>
<td>걱정하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kal-ta (Vt: kala)</td>
<td>걱다: 걱여</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cenhwu (lll) kal-ta</td>
<td>전화를 걸다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ket-ta (Vi: kala)</td>
<td>걱다: 걱여</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kala ka-ta</td>
<td>걱여 가다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kala kal kka yo?</td>
<td>걱여 갈까요?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kala se</td>
<td>걱여서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keli</td>
<td>거기</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kelli-ta (Vi: kallye) (Sikan i) han sikan kallimmnia.</td>
<td>걸리다: 걸려</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(시간이) 한 시간 걸립니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kem-ta (Vi: kome)</td>
<td>걱다: 걱여</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kenmul</td>
<td>건물</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kenna-ta (Vt: kenna)</td>
<td>걱너다: 걱녀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kennaen kil</td>
<td>걱너기를</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kil kenna</td>
<td>걱녀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kes (PN)</td>
<td>걱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce kes</td>
<td>저것</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ce kes in mues imnikka?</td>
<td>저것은 무엇입니까?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ko (P)</td>
<td>고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eti e kanta ko mal-hessimnikka?</td>
<td>어디에 갔나고 말했습니까?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>koyangi</td>
<td>고양이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>koki</td>
<td>고기</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kot (Ad)</td>
<td>곧</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kotanha-ta (Vi: kotanhe)</td>
<td>고탄하다: 고탄해</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>is tired, is fatigue 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>there, at that place, from there 3-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>worry 17-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hangs 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>walks 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>walks, goes on foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shall we walk? (in contrast to taking an automobile) 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>on foot 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>street 17-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>takes (time) 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It takes an hour. 7-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>is dark 4-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>building 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>crosses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the street where you can cross 11-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>across the street 11-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(thing) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>that (thing) (over there) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What is that? 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Did [he] say where [he] is going? 17-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cat 5-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>meat 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>soon, immediately 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고등 (D)</td>
<td>higher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고등 학교</td>
<td>high school 10-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골목</td>
<td>corner (of the street) 11-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골목</td>
<td>corner (of the street) 11-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고맙다: 고마워</td>
<td>is grateful 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고맙습니다</td>
<td>Thank you. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골탕</td>
<td>(soup with rice and meet) 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고抔</td>
<td>cup 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고قضايا: 고파</td>
<td>('is empty')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배가 고플니다.</td>
<td>I'm hungry. 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>곳</td>
<td>place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가까운 곳</td>
<td>a nearby place 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과장</td>
<td>mechanical trouble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교장</td>
<td>is out of order 17-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교사</td>
<td>fixes, repairs 17-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교무</td>
<td>red pepper 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교무가루</td>
<td>(red pepper powder) 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고향</td>
<td>home town, native town 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고향이 어디이세요?</td>
<td>Where do you come from? 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공</td>
<td>zero 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공</td>
<td>ball 16-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공원</td>
<td>park 2-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공무원</td>
<td>civil servant 7-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공보관</td>
<td>public information 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공보관</td>
<td>information office 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미국 공보관</td>
<td>USIS 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공보관관</td>
<td>information officer 7-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부</td>
<td>studying 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부하다: 공부 해</td>
<td>studies 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kongcang</td>
<td>공장</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kongchek</td>
<td>공책</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ku (Num Ch)</td>
<td>구</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kuk</td>
<td>국</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kukyang</td>
<td>구경</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kukmusang</td>
<td>국무성</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kukpangpu</td>
<td>국방부</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kukpangsang</td>
<td>국방성</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kukcang</td>
<td>국장</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kukce</td>
<td>국제</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kukce Kikcang</td>
<td>국제 국장</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kukhwe</td>
<td>국회</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kutu</td>
<td>구두</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kulapha</td>
<td>구부라</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kulum</td>
<td>구름</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kulum i kki-ta</td>
<td>구름이 기다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kunin</td>
<td>군인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kunte</td>
<td>군대</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k1 (D)</td>
<td>그</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k1 kes</td>
<td>그것</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ki kes in yekwan imnita.</td>
<td>그것은 역사입니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kikcang</td>
<td>국장</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kilahta (Vi: kilæ or kilæhæ)</td>
<td>그럼 다: 그때: 그럼해 is so, is such 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kilæhænmita.</td>
<td>그렇습니다. It's so,, That's right. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kilæhænnikka?</td>
<td>그렇습니까? Is that so?, Is that right? 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kilæm (Ad)</td>
<td>그림 then, if so 4 (see kilyemyen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kilæna (Ad)</td>
<td>그림나 but, however 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kilæn kes</td>
<td>그림 것 such a thing 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kilænte</td>
<td>그림에 by the way 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kilæheta-ta (Vi: kilæhæ)</td>
<td>그림하다: 그림해 is so, does so 4 (see kilæhta)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kilæhke (Ad)</td>
<td>그렇게 so, in such a way 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kilæmyen (Ad)</td>
<td>그림면 if so, then 5 (see kilæm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kilæhci man</td>
<td>그럼지만 however, nevertheless 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kîlæse</td>
<td>그림서 therefore, so 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kilis</td>
<td>그릇 container, dish 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kali (Ad)</td>
<td>그리 (not) so, like that 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kali pissaci anhæmnita.</td>
<td>그림 비싸지 않습니까. [It]'s not so expensive. 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kiliko (Ad)</td>
<td>그리고 and 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kilim</td>
<td>그림 picture, painting 4-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kilphi</td>
<td>글피 two days after tomorrow 6-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kilæse (Ad)</td>
<td>글씨 세 well, maybe 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kilæse yo.</td>
<td>글씨 세요. Well. 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kimantu-ta (Vi: kimantwa)</td>
<td>그만두다: 그라워 stops (doing), quits 11-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kimyoil</td>
<td>글요일 Friday 6-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kimnyen</td>
<td>글년 this year 6-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kimnu</td>
<td>근무 (paid) service</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

507
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kimnu-ha-ta (Vi: kimnu-hae)
근무 하다: 근무 해
works, is employed 8

kiphæng(cha)
급행(차)
express (train) 10-D

kice (Ad)
그저
just 1

Kice: kilæhåiminîta.
그저 그렇습니다.
Just so so. 1

kicække
그저 개
the day before yesterday 4-D

kitali-ta (Vt: kitalio)
기타리다: 기타먹
wants (for) 9

Kitalinîn kæ i cohkessimîna.
기타리는 것이 좋게 익니다.
[You]d better wait. ('That you wait will be good.') 11

kil
기
street, road 2-D

ki(1)-ta (Vi: kilø)
기다: 기어
is long, is lengthy 10-D

Kim
김
(a family name) 1

Kim Kisu
김 기수
(a full name) 1

Kimchi
김치
(pickled vegetable) 13-D

kipun
기분
feeling 13

kisa
기사
article, column 17-D

kisangtæ
기상대
weather bureau, weatherman 18

kisuksa
기숙사
dormitory 13-D

kica
기자
reporter 8-D

simmun kica
신문 기자
journalist 8-D

kichà
기차
train 7-G

kipu
기후
climate, weather 15

kihwe
기회
chance, opportunity 16-D

kæ (C)
개
Please give a pencil. 5-G

Yenphil han kæ cuse yo.
연필 한 개 주세요.

508
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kwe</td>
<td>개</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwita (Vi: kwita)</td>
<td>개이다: 개역</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwa (FN)</td>
<td>과</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wehwan Kwa</td>
<td>의학생</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwanha-ta (Vi: kwanha)</td>
<td>관하: 관해</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwanha se</td>
<td>관해서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sensang e kwanha se</td>
<td>선생에 관해서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwacang</td>
<td>과장</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 kwi</td>
<td>귀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwa (p)</td>
<td>과</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwail</td>
<td>과일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwasil</td>
<td>과실</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwon (C)</td>
<td>권</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yangae chek tu kwon</td>
<td>영어 책 두 권</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwonchanha-ta (Vi: kwonchanha)</td>
<td>관찰하다: 관찰야</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Aniyoe, kwonchanhseunita)</td>
<td>아니요, 관찰합니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyaul</td>
<td>겨울</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyalan</td>
<td>겨탄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyangchal</td>
<td>경찰</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyangchalkwan</td>
<td>경찰관</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyangchalse</td>
<td>경찰서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyalhon</td>
<td>결혼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyalhon-ha-ta (Vi: kyalhon-hae)</td>
<td>결혼 하: 결혼해</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyalhon</td>
<td>결혼</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- (weather) clears up 18
- department, section
- the Foreign Currency Department 16
- is concerned
- concerning, about 17
  (see tehe sea)
- about you 17
- department chief 16-D
- ear 13
- with, and 4 (see wa)
- fruit 13
- fruil 13
- volume of
- two English books 5-G
- is OK, is alright 1
- Not at all., That's OK., It's not bad. 1
- winter 15
- egg 13 (see talkyal)
- police
- policeman 8-D
- police station 10-D
- marriage
- gets married, has a wedding 14
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kyangham</td>
<td>experience 18-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyesi-ta (Vi: kyesia)</td>
<td>is, exists, stays (honored) 1 (see iss-ta)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annyanghi kyesipsyo.</td>
<td>Good bye (to someone staying). 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyesok</td>
<td>continuation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyesok-ha-ta (Vi: kyesok-he)</td>
<td>continues, lasts 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyeheuk</td>
<td>plans 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tingsan-hal kyeheuk imnita.</td>
<td>I'm planning to hike. 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyothong</td>
<td>traffic, transportation 10-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kyothong i pencaphamnita.</td>
<td>The traffic is jammed. 10-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyosu</td>
<td>professor 8-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyosil</td>
<td>classroom 2-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyocang</td>
<td>principal (of school) 16-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyohwansu</td>
<td>telephone operator 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyohwe</td>
<td>church 10-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kka (DN)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kal kka yo?</td>
<td>Shall we go? 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssani kka</td>
<td>because [it]'s cheap 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kkamah-ta (Vi: kkame)</td>
<td>is black 4-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kkaman seek</td>
<td>black color 4-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kkaci (P)</td>
<td>as far as, to, until, by 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mikuk kkaci</td>
<td>as far as America 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neel kkaci</td>
<td>by tomorrow 7-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kkok (Ad)</td>
<td>exactly, without fail, by all means 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kkolphi</td>
<td>golf 18-G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
kkíth
kkíth-machi-ta (Vt: kkíth-machie)

the end, the ending
finishes, completes 14-D

kkíth-na-ta (Vi: kkíth-na)

ends, is over 6-D

kkíth-nae-ta (Vt: kkíth-nae)

finishes, completes 8-D

kkækkítha-ta (Vi: kkækkíthæ)

is clean 18-G

kh

khal

knife 5-D

kho

nose 13

khokhakhola

kocoka 12-D

khokhoa

cococa 12-D

khong

beans 12

khi-ta (Vi: khø)

is big 5

khin chøk

a big book 5

khi-ta (Vi: khø)

grows up, 15-D

khíki

size 16-D

khike (Ac)

loudly 16

khi

height (of person) 18

khi ka khi-ta

is tall 18-D

n

I 1 (see ca)

na

my 1 (see ca e)

na e

nae

na-ta (Vi: na)

comes out

Hae ka nanta.

Sun shines. 16-D

Khin il nassimmita.

('I have a big problem.' 18

511
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>na/ina (P)</td>
<td>나/이나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pposi na cencha</td>
<td>버스나 전차</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mues ina</td>
<td>무엇이나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nai</td>
<td>나이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nai ka manhssinnita.</td>
<td>나이가 많습니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nai ka cokssinnita.</td>
<td>나이가 적습니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>na o-ta (Vt-Vi: na wa)</td>
<td>나 오다: 나 와</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>once hakkyo lil na wassimnikka?</td>
<td>언제 학교를 나 왔습니까?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>na ka-ta (Vi: na ka)</td>
<td>나 가다: 나 가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nakkssi-cil</td>
<td>낭 시집</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nakkssi-cil-ha-ta</td>
<td>낭 시집 하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nal</td>
<td>날</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nala</td>
<td>나라</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nalssi</td>
<td>난씨</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nam-Mi</td>
<td>남미</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nampu</td>
<td>남부</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>namphen</td>
<td>남편</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nam-Han</td>
<td>남한</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>namtongseng</td>
<td>남 동생</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nappita (Vi: nappe)</td>
<td>나쁘다: 나쁘</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nac</td>
<td>난</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nac e</td>
<td>난에</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nac-ta (Vi: naca)</td>
<td>낳다: 낳어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nah-ta (Vi: naha)</td>
<td>낳다: 낳아</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bus or streetcar 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anything 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>age 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[He] is old. 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[He] is young. 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comes out, graduates 7-G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When did you finish school? 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goes out 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fishing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>does fishing 18-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day 6-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>country, nation 10-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weather 15 (see ilki)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South America 6-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Southern part, the South (U.S.) 15-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>husband 14-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Korea 6-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>younger brother 16-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is bad 4-N</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daytime, noontime</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the daytime 6-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is low 10-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is born, gives a birth 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
nahil

呐

four days, the 4th day of the month 6-D

ne

너

you (plain speech) 17-G

nei

너희

you (plural in plain speech) 17-G

nek (Num K)

너

(see ne(s))
nek tal pan

너 달 반

four months and a half 8-D

nelp-ta (Vi: nelpa)

널 가지: 널어

is wide 5-D

namu (Ad)

너부

too

Namu nicsimmnita.

너부 눈습니다.

[It]'s too late. 11

nangnakha-ta (Vi: nangnakha)

녁녁하다: 죽겠어

is enough 13

noh-ta (Vi: noha)

널다: 널어

puts in, deposits 16-N

(see noh-ta)

nola(h)-ta (Vi: nola)

노랗다: 노래

is yellow 4

nolan sek

노란 색

yellow color 4

nolla-ta (Vi: nolla)

놀다: 놀라

is surprised 13-G

noph-ta (Vi: nopha)

_NOP_ da: 논야

is high 10-D

noh-ta (Vi: noha)

농다: 농야

places, puts 16-G (see tu-ta)

Cæk nohassimnita.

적어 농야입니다.

I jot it down (for future use). 16-G

nongpu

농부

farmer 17-D

nonggang

농장

farm 15-D

nui

누이

sister (for male siblings)
nui tongseng

누이 동생

younger sister 14

nuku

누구

rho, what person 3

nuka

누가

who (subject) 3-N

nuku lil

누구를

whom 3-N

513
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>영어</th>
<th>한글</th>
<th>뜻</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nul-eh-ta (Vi: nul-e)</td>
<td>누렇다: 냉باط</td>
<td>is yellowish 4-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nun</td>
<td>눈</td>
<td>eyes 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nun</td>
<td>눈</td>
<td>snow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nun</td>
<td>눈이 옮니다.</td>
<td>It snows. 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nunim</td>
<td>누님</td>
<td>older sister (of male) 1h-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nil (Ad)</td>
<td>눈</td>
<td>all the time, always 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nili-ta (Vi: nilye)</td>
<td>느리다: 느리</td>
<td>is slow 10-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nil(1)k-ta (Vi: nilke)</td>
<td>늦다: 늦어</td>
<td>is old, is aged 1h-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nim (P)</td>
<td>늦</td>
<td>as for 1 (see in)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nic-ta (Vi: nic-e)</td>
<td>늦다: 늦어</td>
<td>is late 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nicke/nikke/ (Ad)</td>
<td>늦게</td>
<td>late 10-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nim</td>
<td>뉴</td>
<td>sweet-heart, lover 1h-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nim (PN)</td>
<td>뉴</td>
<td>parents (honored) 1h-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pumim</td>
<td>부모님</td>
<td>parents (honored) 1h-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ne (Ad)</td>
<td>네</td>
<td>yes 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ne?</td>
<td>네?</td>
<td>Beg your pardon!, Pardon me. 16-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ne...?</td>
<td>네...?</td>
<td>Is that right? 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ne ka</td>
<td>내가</td>
<td>you (subject in plain speech) 17-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nekthai</td>
<td>넥타이</td>
<td>neck-tie 4-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ne(s) (Num K)</td>
<td>네</td>
<td>four 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ne kali</td>
<td>네 거기</td>
<td>crossroad 11-D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

514
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nē ka</td>
<td>내가</td>
<td>I (subject) 1 (see ce-ka)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nē-il</td>
<td>내일</td>
<td>tomorrow 4-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nē-li-ta</td>
<td>내리다: 내려</td>
<td>gets off, descends 7-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nē-li cu-ta</td>
<td>내리 쓰다: 내려 쓴다</td>
<td>drops [someone] off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nē-li cūpušiyo.</td>
<td>Please drop [me] off. 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nē-li o-ta</td>
<td>내리 오다: 내려 오다</td>
<td>comes down 7-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nē-li ka-ta</td>
<td>내리 가다: 내려 가다</td>
<td>goes down 7-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nē-nē</td>
<td>내내</td>
<td>all the way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ač-he nēn</td>
<td>아침 내내</td>
<td>all morning 18-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nē-nyen</td>
<td>내년</td>
<td>next year 6-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naphikhin</td>
<td>내포힌</td>
<td>napkins 13-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nē-san</td>
<td>내선</td>
<td>(telephone-line) extension 17-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nēm-gyen</td>
<td>네면</td>
<td>(cold noodle) 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>다</td>
<td>all 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taim</td>
<td>다음</td>
<td>next, next time 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taim cip</td>
<td>다음 집</td>
<td>the next door 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tat-ta</td>
<td>닿다: 닿어</td>
<td>closes 11-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ta(l)-ta</td>
<td>닿다: 닿어</td>
<td>is sweet, is sugary 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>Pinyin</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tal</td>
<td>달</td>
<td>month, moon 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tali-ta (Vi: talla) talin kẹs</td>
<td>달트다: 달짜 달은 것</td>
<td>is different 5 different one, other one 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tali</td>
<td>다비</td>
<td>leg 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tali</td>
<td>다비</td>
<td>bridge 10-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ta(1)k</td>
<td>닭</td>
<td>chicken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ta(1)k koki</td>
<td>닭 고기</td>
<td>chicken 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talkyal</td>
<td>닭가</td>
<td>egg 13 (see kyalan)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tampẹ</td>
<td>담배</td>
<td>cigarettes, tobacco 14-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tane</td>
<td>탄어</td>
<td>word 17-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tani-ta (Vi: taniæ) Hakkyo e tanimnita.</td>
<td>다니타: 다너 학교에 다닙니다.</td>
<td>attends (school) [I'm attending school. 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapang</td>
<td>닭장</td>
<td>tearoom 3-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tases (Num K)</td>
<td>다섯</td>
<td>five 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tasi (Ad)</td>
<td>다시</td>
<td>again 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasi (hanpen) malssim hasipsiyọ.</td>
<td>다시 한번 말씀 하십시오.</td>
<td>Please say it again. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tassẹ</td>
<td>닭새</td>
<td>five days, the 5th day of the month 6-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tah-ta (Vi: taha)</td>
<td>닭타: 타아</td>
<td>arrives 6-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tahẹn</td>
<td>닭해</td>
<td>fortunate thing is fortunate 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tahẹn-ha-ta (Vi: tahẹn-he)</td>
<td>닭해하다: 닭해해</td>
<td>Oh, that's fortunate. 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A, tahẹn imnita.</td>
<td>아, 닭해입니다.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te (Ad)</td>
<td>더</td>
<td>more 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Te ssamnita.</td>
<td>더 삼십나다.</td>
<td>[It]'s cheaper. 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te ssan kẹs</td>
<td>더 산 것</td>
<td>cheaper one 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tekpun</td>
<td>favor, mercy 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tekpun e</td>
<td>(at your favor) 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tekpun e cal cinamnita.</td>
<td>I'm doing fine, thank you. 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tal (Ad)</td>
<td>less</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tal alyown mal</td>
<td>(a) less difficult language 5-G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tep-ta (Vi: towe)</td>
<td>is hot 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to (P)</td>
<td>also, too 1, even though 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puin to</td>
<td>your wife also 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>na to</td>
<td>me too 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isse to</td>
<td>even though there is 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toyaci</td>
<td>pig</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toyaci koki</td>
<td>pork 13 (see tweci)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tokil</td>
<td>Germany 1-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tokile</td>
<td>German (language) 8-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tol-ta (Vi: tola)</td>
<td>turns, make a turn 11-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tola o-ta (Vi: tola wa)</td>
<td>comes back 7-G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tola ka-ta (Vi: tola ka)</td>
<td>goes back 7 passes away 11-G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tola po-ta (Vi: tola pwa)</td>
<td>looks back 12-G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tollita (Vi: tollia)</td>
<td>rotates, switches, turns around 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ton</td>
<td>money 7-G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top-ta (Vi: tow)</td>
<td>helps</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>towa cu-ta (Vi: towa cua)</td>
<td>gives help, gives a helping hand 7-G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tosekwan</td>
<td>library 10-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tosi</td>
<td>city, urban community 10-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
tohweci  
 Rooney 
 metropolitan area, city 15-D

tongan (PN)  
 통안 
 for, during, while  
 [I] work for eight hours. 6

Yeta(1)p sikan tongan il-hammita.  
 여덟 시간 동안 일합니다.  
 while [I] was in Europe 15

Kulapha e issin tongan  
 구따파에 있는 동안 
 colleague, co-worker 13-D

tongyo  
 동료 
 the East (U.S.), the eastern part 15-D

Tongpu  
 동부 
 animal  
 zoo ("animal house") 10-D

tongmul  
 동물 
 a younger sibling 14

tongmulwen  
 동물원 
 two 5

tongseng  
 동생 
 places, puts  
 is being placed 14-G

tu(1) (Num K)  
 두 
 [I] wrote it down (for future use). 16-G

tu-ta (Vt: tua)  
 두타: 두여 
 they, those (things) 10

tue iss-ta  
 두여 있다 
 all, everybody 14

가디 투시نسخنتا.  
 쓰여 두있습니다.  
 eats or drinks (food), lifts  
 Please help yourself. 13

til (PN)  
 돌 
 listens to, hears 9

ki kes til  
 그것들 
 comes in 7-G

ta til  
 다름 
 goes in 7-G

ti(1)-ta (Vt: tila)  
 들다: 들여 
 enters and sees, goes in to see 12-G

어서 티시시요.  
 어서 도십시오.  
 stops by, drops in 4

tila o-ta (Vi: tila wa)  
 들여 오다: 들여 와 
 is heard, is audible 16

tila ka-ta (Vi: tila ka)  
 들여 가다: 들여 가 
 enters and sees, goes in to see 12-G

tila ka po-ta (Vi: tila ka pwa)  
 들여 가 보다: 들여 가 보 

tili-ta (Vt: tilla)  
 들르다: 들력 

tilli-ta (Vi: tillye)  
 들리다: 들력
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>티넷/티넷 (P)</td>
<td>(see 티넷)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>무서워서 티넷</td>
<td>anything 12-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영어로 티넷 듣어요</td>
<td>either English or German 12-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>티넷 (PN)</td>
<td>and so on, etc. 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>티넷</td>
<td>back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ting i apkimnita.</td>
<td>I have a backache. 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>티넷산</td>
<td>hiking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>티넷산-하-타 (Vi: 티넷산-פק)</td>
<td>hikes 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>테 (PN)</td>
<td>place 10-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kakkaun te</td>
<td>nearby place 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>테 (C)</td>
<td>two automobiles 6-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catongcha tu te</td>
<td>your home, home (honored) 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>태</td>
<td>usually, generally 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>태개</td>
<td>very 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>태개하 (Ad)</td>
<td>the President 8-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>태통령</td>
<td>as one pleases, as you like 16-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>태통령</td>
<td>as it is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>태통령</td>
<td>Formosa, Taiwan 6-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>태만</td>
<td>gate 11-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>태문</td>
<td>ambassador 7-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>태사</td>
<td>embassy 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>태사관</td>
<td>college 8-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>태사관</td>
<td>graduate school 15-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>태사회</td>
<td>graduate studies 15-G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

taehakkyo
teha-ta (Vt: tehæ)
kihu e tehæ sa

Tæhan Minkuk
twe-ta (Vi: twee)
Sam nyan tweessimmna.
Sanseog i tweessimmna.

tweci
tweci koki
twi
twi e
Cip twi e issimmna.

ttattitha-ta (Vi: ttattithæ)
ttal (ttala) we-ta
ttanin
	tæna-ta (Vt: tæna)
	Tænalyøko hamnita.
tto (Ad)
	Tto pweppessimmna.
	Tto talan kæs i philyo-hamnikka?
ttokttokha-ta (Vi: ttokttokhæ)
ttokpalo (Ad)
ttækæp-ta (Vi: ttækæwæ)

대학교
deha: deha
gihe e deha sa
deha minkuk
deha: deha
sam nyan deha gëwë.
sanseog i deha gëwë.
deha
deha koki
deha
deha
cip deha deha.
ttattitha-ta: deha
deha
(ttal) we-ta
ttanin
tæna-ta: deha

tænalyøko hamnita.
tto

tto pweppessimmna.
tto talan kæs i philyo-hamnikka?
ttokttokha-ta: deha
ttokpalo
ttækæp-ta: deha

university 10-D
faces, confronts with
concerning (or about) the weather 15
the Republic of Korea 17-D
becomes, has been
It's been 3 years. 8
[He] has become a teacher. 8-N
pig
pork ('pig meat') 13
back, rear 2-D
behind, in back of
[It]'s behind the house. 2-D

is warm 15
daughter 14
memorizes, learns by heart 17-D (see we-ta)
your daughter (honored) 11-N
leaves 6
[I]'s going to leave. 7
again 1
So long., See you again. 1
Do you need anything else? 5
is intelligent, is bright 17-G
straight, straight ahead 3
is hot (solid, liquid) 13

520
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ttæ (PN)</td>
<td>time, occasion, when</td>
<td>ttæ (PN)</td>
<td>(at) that time, occasion, when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ki ttæ (e)</td>
<td>(at) that time</td>
<td>ki ttæ</td>
<td>occasionally, when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ttæ ttæ lo</td>
<td>frequently, when</td>
<td>ttæ ttæ</td>
<td>when [I] go to school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hakkyo e kal ttæ (e)</td>
<td></td>
<td>hakkyo e</td>
<td>usually, when I go to school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ttwi-ta (Vi: ttwie)</td>
<td></td>
<td>ttwi-ta</td>
<td>runs, gets on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Takte ttwie kamnita.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Takte</td>
<td>[I] usually run, (I usually run and go.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>th</td>
<td>rides, gets on</td>
<td>th</td>
<td>(bus, taxi, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thako ka-ta</td>
<td>takes (bus, taxi, etc.)</td>
<td>thako</td>
<td>(bus, taxi, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thai phi</td>
<td>typing</td>
<td>thai phi</td>
<td>typing paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thai phi congi</td>
<td></td>
<td>thai phi congi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thak</td>
<td>chin, jaw</td>
<td>thak</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thoyoil</td>
<td>Saturday</td>
<td>Thoyoil</td>
<td>Saturday, interpreter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thongyakkwan</td>
<td>interpreter</td>
<td>thongyak</td>
<td>interpreter, interpreter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thonghwa</td>
<td>telephone conversation</td>
<td>thonghwa</td>
<td>The line is busy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thonghwa cung imnita.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Thonghwa cung</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thim</td>
<td>free time, spare time</td>
<td>thim</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thilli-ta (Vi: thilliæ)</td>
<td></td>
<td>thilli-ta</td>
<td>is wrong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thi pi</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>thi pi</td>
<td>television, television</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thu-ta (Vt: thewa)</td>
<td></td>
<td>thu-ta</td>
<td>gives a ride (to someone), loads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thewa cu-ta (Vt: thewa cuæ)</td>
<td></td>
<td>thewa cu-ta</td>
<td>gives [someone] a ride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tsekuk</td>
<td>Tailand</td>
<td>Tsekuk</td>
<td>Tailand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thekssi</td>
<td>taxi</td>
<td>thekssi</td>
<td>taxi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
lako (P)
'Mali ka aphimnita.' lako
mal-hessimnita.

lato/ilato (P)
muss ilato
na lato

1stio

lo (P)
Hakkyo lo kamnita.
wekyokwan ilo
pe lo

1st (P)

mal
mal molo

moksa

mat (D)
mat atil

mata (P)
mal mata

mal

Hankuk mal
mal-ha-ta (Vi-Vt: mal-hm)
Sacen mal imnikka?

mal

da: lack
Thaci mapsita.

1

타고

머리가 아탈니다 타고 [He] said, "I have a headache." 18-G

타도/이타도
무엇이타도
나타도

타티오

로
학교로 갑니다.
외교관으로
배로

통

to, as, by 2 (see 1lo)
[I] go to school. 2-G
as a diplomat 7
by boat 7

1 (see 11)

마음
마음 맛주

목사

말
라 아픔

마나
남마다

말
한국 말
말하다: 말해
사전 말십니까?

말

말다: 말이
하지 말십시오.

mind, heart 13-D
as one pleases 16-D

minister (of church) 16-D

first
the first son 14-G

every, each
everyday 8

language, utterance, speech,
word 1
Korean (language) 1
speaks 1-D
Do you mean a dictionary? 4

horse 5-G

not do 11-G
Let's not ride. 11
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Word</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kaci masipsiyo</td>
<td>가치 마실시요</td>
<td>Don't go. 11-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mal-ta (Vi: malla)</td>
<td>마트다: 말터</td>
<td>dries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mok i malmanita.</td>
<td>목이 마블니다.</td>
<td>I'm thirsty. (Throat is dry). 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mali (C)</td>
<td>머리</td>
<td>head of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mal ne mali</td>
<td>말 내 머리</td>
<td>four heads of horses, four horses 5-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malk-ta (Vi: malke)</td>
<td>마다: 맛어</td>
<td>is clear (water, air, etc.) 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man (Num Ch)</td>
<td>맛</td>
<td>ten-thousands 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man (P)</td>
<td>맛</td>
<td>only, just</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mianhaci man</td>
<td>마안하지만</td>
<td>I'm sorry but... 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mekcu tu pyeng man kaco osipsiyo.</td>
<td>맥주 두 병만 가져 오십시오.</td>
<td>Please bring me just two bottles of beer. 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manna-ta (Vt: manna)</td>
<td>마다다: 맛나</td>
<td>meets 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mannyonphil</td>
<td>만년필</td>
<td>fountain-pen 4-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manh-ta (Vi: manhe)</td>
<td>마다: 맛어</td>
<td>is plenty, are many 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manhi (Ad)</td>
<td>맛이</td>
<td>a lot, much 8-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mas</td>
<td>맛</td>
<td>taste 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mas i iss-ta (or coh-ta)</td>
<td>맛이있다 (or 쩔다)</td>
<td>is delicious 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mas i ops-ta</td>
<td>맛이 없다</td>
<td>is tasteless 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masi-ta (Vt: masye)</td>
<td>마시키다: 마시</td>
<td>drinks 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mac-ta (Vi: maca)</td>
<td>마다: 맛어</td>
<td>is correct, fits 18-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mahin (Num K)</td>
<td>마흔</td>
<td>forty 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mangne</td>
<td>맥내</td>
<td>the last child 14-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mangne atil</td>
<td>맥내 아들</td>
<td>the last son 14-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mak-ta (Vt: make)</td>
<td>마다: 맛어</td>
<td>eats 2-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maka po-ta (Vt: maka pwa)</td>
<td>먹어 보다: 먹어 밥</td>
<td>tries (food) 7-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hangul</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Hangul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mæl(1)-ta (Vi: mæla)</td>
<td>며타: 며어 is far 3</td>
<td>Yæki esse mænikka?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mæli</td>
<td>머리 head, hair 13</td>
<td>mæli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mæli (Ad)</td>
<td>머리 far away 11-N</td>
<td>mamul-ta (Vi: mamula)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mamchæ-ta (Vt-Vi: mamchæ)</td>
<td>맥추다: 맥추 쉬 stops (car, taxi, etc.) 11-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mænce (Ad)</td>
<td>먼저 first of all, above all 10</td>
<td>mok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mok i malimnitæ.</td>
<td>목이 마ılmış니다. I'm thirsty. 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mok i aphimnitæ.</td>
<td>목이 아픔니다. I have a sore throat. 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mokyoil</td>
<td>목요일 Thursday 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moli-ta (Vi: malla)</td>
<td>모르다: 몰라 doesn't know 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mole</td>
<td>모태 body 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mom</td>
<td>몸 Are you sick? 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mom i aphimnikka?</td>
<td>몸이 아픔니까? cannot</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mot (Ad)</td>
<td>못 [I] cannot read. 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ilkci mot hamnitæ.</td>
<td>읽지 못 합니다. [I] cannot go. 8-G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mot kamnitæ.</td>
<td>못 합니다. all, in all, altogether 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motu</td>
<td>모두</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mocha</td>
<td>모자 hat, cap 4-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mocala-ta (Vi: mocala)</td>
<td>모차타: 모차타 is not enough 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muæs</td>
<td>무섭 what (thing) 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muæs 1l</td>
<td>무섭을 what (as direct object) 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mukæp-ta (Vi: mukæp)</td>
<td>무겁다: 무 거위 is heavy 10-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muke</td>
<td>무게</td>
<td>weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mul</td>
<td>물</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mut-ta (Vt: mule)</td>
<td>물다: 물어</td>
<td>inquires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mule po-ta (Vt: mule pwa)</td>
<td>물어보다: 물어봐</td>
<td>inquires 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mulken</td>
<td>물건</td>
<td>goods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mun</td>
<td>문</td>
<td>door, window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aph mun</td>
<td>입문</td>
<td>the front door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>munpap</td>
<td>문법</td>
<td>grammar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>munce</td>
<td>문제</td>
<td>problem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musin (D)</td>
<td>무슨</td>
<td>what kind of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musin seek</td>
<td>무슨 색</td>
<td>what color, what kind of color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>munpangku</td>
<td>문방구</td>
<td>stationaries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>munpangkucam</td>
<td>문방구점</td>
<td>stationary shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mianhamnite.</td>
<td>미안합니다.</td>
<td>I'm sorry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mianhaci man</td>
<td>미안하지만</td>
<td>I'm sorry but...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mikuk</td>
<td>미국</td>
<td>America, the United States</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mikuk salam</td>
<td>미국 사람</td>
<td>an American</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mikuk mal</td>
<td>미국말</td>
<td>the American language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mit-ta (Vt: mite)</td>
<td>밀다: 밀어</td>
<td>trusts, believes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menyu</td>
<td>메뉴</td>
<td>menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meul (Ad)</td>
<td>매일</td>
<td>everyday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meekcu</td>
<td>맥주</td>
<td>beer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meup-ta (Vi: meow)</td>
<td>밥다: 배워</td>
<td>is (spicy) hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mecuil</td>
<td>매주일</td>
<td>every week</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
myeol

myeol/myol/ (D)  
lyca ka myeol ka 
issimmikka?  
myeol-si

myeolil  
Oni i myeolil ici yo?  
myeongnyang

Pak

pakmulkwon  
paksa

pakk

pakk e  
Hankuk mal pakk e 
molimnitaita.

pakkua (Vt: pakkwe)  
Kim Sønsøng eke com 
pakkwe cusipsiyo.

pata

pat-ta (Vt: pata)  
pal  
pal kalak

daughter-in-law ('son's wife') 14-D

how many, what  
How many chairs are there? 5-G  
what time 6

what day, some days, how many days  
What's today's date? 6  
(executive) order 13-D

Pak  
Park (family name) 1-D  
museum 10-D  
doctor (of philosophy) 16-D  
the outside 14-N  
outside, to the outside 16-D  
I know only Korean. ("Outside of Korean, I don't know.") 16-G

exchanges, changes  
May I talk to Mr. Kim (on the phone)? 16

sea 16-D  
receives, gets 6  
foot 13  
toe 13  
hopes, wishes 8-3
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Word</th>
<th>English Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pala po-ta (Vt: pala pwa)</td>
<td>looks over (from the distance)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palam</td>
<td>wind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palo (Ad)</td>
<td>just, right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panto Hwesa</td>
<td>peninsula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pap</td>
<td>night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pappita (Vt: pappø)</td>
<td>is busy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pang</td>
<td>room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>panghak</td>
<td>school vacation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pal (C)</td>
<td>two suits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palsso (Ad)</td>
<td>already</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pon (Pr): i pon</td>
<td>time, number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>han pon</td>
<td>this time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myoch pon</td>
<td>once</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pencap-ha-ta (Vit: pencap-ha)</td>
<td>what number, how many times</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

527
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>penho</td>
<td>번호</td>
<td>pênho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cenhwa penho</td>
<td>전화 번호</td>
<td>cênhwâ pênho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>po-ta (Vt: pwa)</td>
<td>보다: 바</td>
<td>po-ta (Vi: poye)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poi-ta (Vi: poye)</td>
<td>보이다: 보여</td>
<td>poe cu-ta (Vt: poye cu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pokcap</td>
<td>복잡</td>
<td>pokcap-ha-ta (Vi: pokcap-ha)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pota (P)</td>
<td>보다</td>
<td>than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pothong</td>
<td>보통</td>
<td>pothong samu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pom</td>
<td>봄</td>
<td>ordinary, ordinarily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>powe-ta (Vt: powe)</td>
<td>보내다: 보내</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ponkuk</td>
<td>본국</td>
<td>home country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pontho</td>
<td>본토</td>
<td>mainland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pongkip</td>
<td>봉급</td>
<td>pay, salary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puêkh</td>
<td>부엌</td>
<td>kitchen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puin</td>
<td>부인</td>
<td>lady, your wife, Mrs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pukin (PN)</td>
<td>부근</td>
<td>vicinity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i pukin</td>
<td>이부근</td>
<td>this vicinity, around here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puk-pu</td>
<td>복부</td>
<td>the Northern part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuk-Han</td>
<td>북한</td>
<td>North-Korea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>putilæp-ta (Vi: putilæwe)</td>
<td>부드럽다: 부드러워</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>number 16</td>
<td>번호 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>telephone number 16</td>
<td>전화 번호 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>looks at, sees 4</td>
<td>보다 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is seen, is visible 16</td>
<td>보이다: 보여 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shows 5</td>
<td>보여 주다: 보여주어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complexity</td>
<td>복잡하다: 복잡해</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is complicated 8-D</td>
<td>복잡하다: 복잡해 8-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean is more difficult than German. 8</td>
<td>한국말이 독일말보다 더 어렵습니다. German. 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordinary office work 8</td>
<td>보통 사무</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordinary, ordinarily</td>
<td>보통</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spring (season) 15</td>
<td>봄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sends 11-D</td>
<td>보내다: 보내</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>home country 15-D</td>
<td>본국</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mainland 15-D</td>
<td>본토</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay, salary 13-D</td>
<td>봉급</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kitchen 16-D</td>
<td>부엌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lady, your wife, Mrs.____ 1</td>
<td>부인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vicinity 10</td>
<td>부근</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this vicinity, around here 10</td>
<td>이부근</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Northern part 15-D</td>
<td>부근</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North-Korea 6-D</td>
<td>북한</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is tender, is soft 13-D</td>
<td>부드럽다: 부드러워</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

528
puthak
Chwe Sansøng (eke) com
puthak-hannita.
Chinku ekese puthak il
patæssímnita.

부탁
취선생(에게) 좀
부탁합니 다.
친구에게서 부탁을
받었습니다.

request of a favor, a favor
May I speak to Mr. Choe,
please? 16
My friend asked me of a
favor. (I received a
request of favor from a
friend.) 16-D

from
from now on 8-D
fire, light
Korean style barbecue ('fire
meat') 13
blows
It's windy. ('Wind blows.')
15
calls 18
sings a song 18-N

is reddish 4-D
France 1
French (language) 8-D
Frenchman 1-D
French 8-D

inconvenience, discomfort
is inconvenient, is
uncomfortable 10-D

parents 14
person (honored) 3
he ('that person') 3
three teachers 5-0

minute 6
is busy, is hectic 8
Pusan 1-G

529
puca

부자

a rich man 17-G

pucok

부족

insufficiency, lack

pucok-ha-ta (Vi: pucok-be)

부족하다: 부족해

is not enough, is insufficient 13

puchi-ta (Vt: puchias)

부치다: 부쳐

mails, ships 11

pi

비

rain

Pi ka omnita.

비가 온니다.

It rains. ('Rain comes.') 8-G

pilli-ta (Vt: pillye)

빌리다: 빌려

borrows

pillye cu-ta (Vt: pillye cu)

빌려주다: 빌려 주어

loans, lends 7-G

pise

비서

secretary 7-G

pisitha-ta (Vi: pisithhe)

비슷하다: 비슷해

is similar 15

pissa-ta (Vi: pissa)

비싸다: 비싸

is expensive 4

pihengki

비행기

airplane 7

pihengcang

비행장

airport 7-D

pe

배

ship 7

pee

배

stomach

Pee ka kophimmnita.

배가 고프니다.

I'm hungry. 12

pee (PN)

배

times

i (or tu) pee

이 (두)배

two times 7-G

peu-ta (Vt: peo)

배우다: 배워

learns 1-D

pek (Num Ch)

배

hundred 4

peshwacem

배화점

department store 2

pyallo (Ad)

비토

(not) particularly

Pyallo manhi makci anhessimnita.

비토 많이 먹지 않으셨습니까.

I didn't eat so much. 13
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pyǒnhosa</td>
<td>변호사</td>
<td>lawyer 8-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pyang</td>
<td>병</td>
<td>sickness, disease 15-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pyang i na-ta</td>
<td>병이 나타</td>
<td>gets sick 15-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pyang</td>
<td>병</td>
<td>bottle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pyang (C)</td>
<td>병</td>
<td>bottle of 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pyangwʌn</td>
<td>병원</td>
<td>hospital 10-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pwep-ta (Vi: pwewa)</td>
<td>뵐다: 비취</td>
<td>('meets')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chalm pwepsimnit.</td>
<td>처음 뵐습니다.</td>
<td>(I'm glad to meet you.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tto pwepkessimnit.</td>
<td>또 뵐겠습니다.</td>
<td>'I see you for the first time.' 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ppatʌ</td>
<td>패따</td>
<td>See you again., So long. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ppalita (Vi: ppallʌ)</td>
<td>패따따: 패따따</td>
<td>butter 13-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ppalli (Ad)</td>
<td>패따따</td>
<td>is fast 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ppang</td>
<td>패따</td>
<td>quickly, fast 16-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ppesi</td>
<td>버스</td>
<td>bread 13-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ppilu</td>
<td>비부</td>
<td>bus 7-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ppyam</td>
<td>벽</td>
<td>beer 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phal (Num Ch)</td>
<td>패</td>
<td>cheek 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phal</td>
<td>패</td>
<td>eight 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pha(1)-ta (Vt: phala)</td>
<td>패따: 패어</td>
<td>arm 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phala(h)-ta (Vi: phala)</td>
<td>패따따: 패따따</td>
<td>sells 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phalan seek</td>
<td>파란색</td>
<td>is blue l-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>blue color l-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>Pinyin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phansa</td>
<td>판사</td>
<td>phanksa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phak (Ad)</td>
<td>둘</td>
<td>phak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phuli-ta (Vi: phulile)</td>
<td>부분다: 부분트</td>
<td>phulite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phungsok</td>
<td>둥속</td>
<td>phungsook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phiu-ta (Vi: phiwè)</td>
<td>피우다: 피위</td>
<td>phiu-te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kim in tampae lil phiuko siphe he yo.</td>
<td>김은 담배를 피우고 싶어 해요.</td>
<td>phiu-te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phikon</td>
<td>피곤</td>
<td>phikon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phikon-ha-ta (Vi: phikon-hae)</td>
<td>피곤하다: 피곤해</td>
<td>phikon-ha-te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>philo</td>
<td>피토</td>
<td>philo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>philo-ha-ta (Vi: philo-hae)</td>
<td>피토하다: 피토해</td>
<td>philo-ha-te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>philyo</td>
<td>필요</td>
<td>philyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>philyo-ha-ta (Vi: philyo-hae)</td>
<td>필요하다: 필요해</td>
<td>philyo-ha-te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phen</td>
<td>펜</td>
<td>phen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phyen (PN)</td>
<td>편</td>
<td>phyen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eni phyen</td>
<td>어느 편</td>
<td>eni phyen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phyenci</td>
<td>편지</td>
<td>phyenci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phyenha-ta (Vi: phyenhe)</td>
<td>편하다: 편해</td>
<td>phyenha-ta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phyo</td>
<td>표</td>
<td>phyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>Example</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa (Num Ch)</td>
<td>four 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa-ta (Vt: sa)</td>
<td>buys 4, Did [you] buy? 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sassa yo?</td>
<td>business, enterprise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saep</td>
<td>business</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saepka</td>
<td>business-man 16-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saita</td>
<td>(a kind of soft drink) 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sawi</td>
<td>son-in-law ('daughter's husband') 11-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saken</td>
<td>incident, trouble 17-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sako</td>
<td>accident 17-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa(1)-ta (Vi: sale)</td>
<td>lives 9-G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sal (C)</td>
<td>year old 5-G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>han sal</td>
<td>one year old 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salam</td>
<td>person, man 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salam (C)</td>
<td>person, man</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haksŏng tu salam</td>
<td>two students 5-G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salang</td>
<td>love 9-G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salang-ha-ta (Vt: salang-hae)</td>
<td>loves 9-G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sam (Num Ch)</td>
<td>three 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>samu</td>
<td>office work 6-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>samuwan</td>
<td>clerk, office worker 7-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean Word</td>
<td>Korean Meaning</td>
<td>English Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>samusil</td>
<td>사무실</td>
<td>office 3-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>san</td>
<td>산</td>
<td>mountain 10-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanyang</td>
<td>사냥</td>
<td>hunting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanyang ka-ta</td>
<td></td>
<td>goes hunting 18-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanpo</td>
<td>산보</td>
<td>a walk, a stroll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanpo-ha-ta</td>
<td>산보 하다: 산보 해</td>
<td>takes a walk, strolls 9-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacang</td>
<td>사장</td>
<td>president of company 8-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacan</td>
<td>사천</td>
<td>dictionary 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sachon</td>
<td>사촌</td>
<td>cousin 14-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sambil</td>
<td>사BorderColor</td>
<td>three days, the 3rd of the month 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sangyøng</td>
<td>상영</td>
<td>showing of movies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sangyøng-ha-ta</td>
<td>상영 하다: 상영 해</td>
<td>shows movies 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sangwen</td>
<td>상원</td>
<td>Senate (U.S.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sangwen iywen</td>
<td></td>
<td>Senator 16-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sangkwan</td>
<td>상관</td>
<td>supervisor, boss 13-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sangcam</td>
<td>상점</td>
<td>store, shop 2-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se (P)</td>
<td>서</td>
<td>so, and so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kilæ se</td>
<td>그택서</td>
<td>so, therefore 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seoul</td>
<td>서울</td>
<td>Seoul (Capital of Korea) 1-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seul</td>
<td>서울</td>
<td>capital 17-D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

534
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sak (Num K)</td>
<td>석</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sak tal</td>
<td>석 닭</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salhin (Num K)</td>
<td>석훈</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salthang</td>
<td>석황</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sem</td>
<td>석</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semmul</td>
<td>석물</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sensenha-ta (Vt: sensenh)</td>
<td>석선하다: 석선해</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sensang</td>
<td>석상</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sepu</td>
<td>석부</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se-ta (Vi: se)</td>
<td>서타: 서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se iss-ta</td>
<td>서 이다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so</td>
<td>소</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so koki</td>
<td>소고기</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sokim</td>
<td>소금</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sohki (Ad)</td>
<td>속히</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soli</td>
<td>소리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mal soli</td>
<td>말소리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salam soli</td>
<td>살람소리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pal soli</td>
<td>박소리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son</td>
<td>손</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son kalak</td>
<td>손가락</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sonnim</td>
<td>슐님</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sonnye</td>
<td>슐녀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sonca</td>
<td>슐자</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sopangse</td>
<td>소방서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sosik</td>
<td>소식</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sohakkyo</td>
<td>소학교</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>su (DN)</td>
<td>수</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Mal) hal su issimnita.</td>
<td>(말) 할 수 있습니다. 할 수 없습니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suap</td>
<td>수업</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ance suap i kkithnamnikka?</td>
<td>언제 수업이 끝나니가?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suyong</td>
<td>수영</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suyong ka-ta</td>
<td>수영 가다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suyoil</td>
<td>수요일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suken</td>
<td>수건</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son suken</td>
<td>손수건</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sukke</td>
<td>속제</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suto</td>
<td>수도</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sut kalak</td>
<td>숯가락</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sul</td>
<td>술</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suchap</td>
<td>수첩</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스무 (Num K)</td>
<td>twenty 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스무 날</td>
<td>twenty days 6-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스몰 (Num K)</td>
<td>twenty 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>습기</td>
<td>humidity 18-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>승급</td>
<td>promotion 13-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시 (D)</td>
<td>(husband's side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시뇨리</td>
<td>husband's parents 14-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시아버지</td>
<td>husband's father 14-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시어머니</td>
<td>husband's mother 14-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시동생</td>
<td>husband's younger siblings 14-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시누이</td>
<td>husband's sister 14-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시집</td>
<td>husband's family 14-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시-ta (Vi: sio)</td>
<td>is sour 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시외</td>
<td>suburb, out skirt of city 10-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시간</td>
<td>time, hour 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>몇 시간</td>
<td>how many hours 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you have time? 6-N</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시간이 있으면</td>
<td>country, rural area 15-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>애시면 있습니까?</td>
<td>watch, clock 2-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>식당</td>
<td>restaurant, dining hall 3-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>식사</td>
<td>meal 12-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아침 식사</td>
<td>breakfast 12-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>식포</td>
<td>maid 16-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>식사</td>
<td>Chicago 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>식사</td>
<td>rudeness 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정식</td>
<td>Excuse me (on leaving or on interrupting) 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

537
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sillye-hakessimnita.</td>
<td>Excuse me (for what I’m going to do). 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sillye-hëssimnita.</td>
<td>Excuse me (for what I did). 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silhëha-ta (Vt: silhæ)</td>
<td>dislikes l-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sinm</td>
<td>downtown l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sinmun</td>
<td>newspaper l-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sinmunsa</td>
<td>newspaper publisher l1-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sip (Nun Ch)</td>
<td>ten l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siph-ta (Vt: siphæ)</td>
<td>I want to see. 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poke siphæsimnita.</td>
<td>begins 3-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sicak</td>
<td>beginning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sicak-ha-ta (Vi-Vt: sicak-hæ)</td>
<td>begins 3-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sicang</td>
<td>market-place 3-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sicang po-ta</td>
<td>goes food shopping 9-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sìchæng</td>
<td>city hall 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sìhæm</td>
<td>test, examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sìhæm (il) po-ta</td>
<td>takes an examination 15-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>singkæp-ta (Vi: singkæ)</td>
<td>is not salty, is bland 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se(s) (Nun K)</td>
<td>three 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seu-ta (Vt: sewæ)</td>
<td>parks, stops, erects l1-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>së (D)</td>
<td>new l1-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sëk</td>
<td>color l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sëngil</td>
<td>birthday 13-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sëngkak</td>
<td>idea, thought 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sëngkak-ha-ta (Vt-Vi: sëngkak-hæ)</td>
<td>thinks 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

538
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sangmyang</td>
<td>생명</td>
<td>life 16-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sangsan</td>
<td>생선</td>
<td>fish 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanghwal</td>
<td>생활</td>
<td>life, livelihood 15-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syassi</td>
<td>샴스</td>
<td>shirts 4-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swi-ta (Vi: swie)</td>
<td>쉬다: 쉬어</td>
<td>rests, takes a rest 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swin (Nun K)</td>
<td>쉬</td>
<td>fifty 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swip-ta (Vi: swiwe)</td>
<td>쉬다: 쉬워</td>
<td>is easy 5-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssa-ta (Vi: ssa)</td>
<td>쌓다: 쌓</td>
<td>is cheap 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssau-ta (Vi: ssawae)</td>
<td>쌓아두다: 쌓어</td>
<td>fights, quarells 14-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ssolyen</td>
<td>캐련</td>
<td>Soviet Union 6-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ssolyene</td>
<td>캐.SetString</td>
<td>Russian 8-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssi-ta (Vt: ssae)</td>
<td>쓰다: 쓰</td>
<td>writes, uses 8-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssi-ta (Vi: ssae)</td>
<td>쓰다: 쓰</td>
<td>is bitter (in taste) 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssik (P)</td>
<td>식</td>
<td>each 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hanasik</td>
<td>하나식</td>
<td>one at a time, one each 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cal (Int)</td>
<td>자</td>
<td>Here!, Well! 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca-ta (Vi-Vt: ca)</td>
<td>자다: 자</td>
<td>sleeps 11-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cak-ta (Vi: caka)</td>
<td>작다: 작어</td>
<td>is small 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cakin kes</td>
<td>작은 것</td>
<td>a small one 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cakke malssim-hasipsiyoe.</td>
<td>작게 말씀 하십시오.</td>
<td>Please speak softly. 16-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caknyoen</td>
<td>작년</td>
<td>last year 6-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catongcha</td>
<td>자동차</td>
<td>automobile 7-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean Word</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cal (Ad)</td>
<td>자 (well)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| cala-ta (Vi: cala) | 자타타: 자타 (grows up)]
<p>| calang      | 자랑 (boasting)    |
| calang-ha-ta (Vt: calang-hae) | 자랑하다: 자랑해 (is proud of (something)) |
| cali        | 자리 (seat)        |
| il cali     | 이 자리 (job)      |
| cam         | 잠 (sleep)          |
| Cam i omnita. | 잠이 옮니다. (‘I’m sleepy.’) |
| (Cam il) camnita. | 잠을 잡니다. [I’m sleeping.] |
| camkan (Ad) | 잡간 (for a moment) |
| Camkan man kitalise yo. | 잡간란 기타리세요 (Just a minute.) |
| can (C)     | 잡 (cup of)         |
| khæphi han can | 커피 한 잡 (a cup of coffee) |
| capsusi-ta (Vt: capsusye) | 집수 시다: 집수 서 (eats (honored)) |
| capci       | 집치 (magazine)    |
| cacænke     | 자전거 (bicycle)   |
| cacu (Ad)   | 자주 (frequently, often) |
| alma na cacu | 얼마나 자주 (how often) |
| cang (C)    | 장 (sheet of, piece of) |
| swin cang   | 신 장 (50 sheets)   |
| cang        | 장 (soy sauce)      |
| cangin      | 장인 (father-in-law) |
| cangkun     | 장군 (general)      |
| cangkap     | 장갑 (gloves)       |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cangkwan</td>
<td>장관</td>
<td>minister (of government) 16-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cangma (chal)</td>
<td>장마(처)</td>
<td>rainy season 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cangmo</td>
<td>장포</td>
<td>mother-in-law ('wife's mother') 14-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce</td>
<td>저</td>
<td>I (polite) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce o or ce</td>
<td>저의, 제</td>
<td>my 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce (D)</td>
<td>저</td>
<td>that 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce konmul</td>
<td>저 건물</td>
<td>that building (over there) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce(h)i</td>
<td>저희</td>
<td>we (polite) 17-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cak (DN)</td>
<td>졸</td>
<td>Have you ever eaten? 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>훈여 본 적이 있으십니까?</td>
<td>is little 5-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cak-ta (Vi: caka)</td>
<td>졸여</td>
<td>writes down, jots down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cak-ta (Vt: caka)</td>
<td>졸여</td>
<td>[I] wrote it down (for later use), 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caka tuassünnita.</td>
<td>졸여 두었음니다.</td>
<td>there, that place 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caki</td>
<td>저기</td>
<td>over there, at that place 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caki e</td>
<td>저기에</td>
<td>is like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calah-ta (Vi: calm)</td>
<td>저택</td>
<td>that kind of thing 18-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calan kes</td>
<td>저녁</td>
<td>that way, like that 18-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calahke (Ad)</td>
<td>저녁계</td>
<td>is young, is youthful 14-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cœ(l)m-ta (Vi: calmœ)</td>
<td>점억</td>
<td>lunch 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cansim</td>
<td>점심</td>
<td>gradually 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camcam (Ad)</td>
<td>점점</td>
<td>before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>전</td>
<td>five minutes to eight 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>역할 시 오 분 전</td>
<td>previously 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>전에</td>
<td>before coming to Seoul, before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>서울에 오기 전에</td>
<td>[I] came to Seoul 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
canysk
onil canysk

canysk (siksa)

ceño

ceño

ceño (VT: canhsa)
ceño hal mal(ssim)

ceño

ceño-ha-ta (ceño-hae)
ceño (lil) kal-ta
ceño penho chek

cos kalak

Cang

ceño

ceño

ceño (Ad)
ceño

Cengmal imnikka?

ceño

ceño

ceño

ceño

ceño

coyonghi (Ad)
cokim (Ad)
cokha
cokha ttal

evening 4-D
this evening 4-D
supper 12-D
telegram, cable 13-D
streetcar 7-G
delivers 16
message (to leave) 16
telephone 13-D
telephones 16
makes a telephone call 16
telephone book 16
chopsticks 13
Chung (family name) 1-D
the yard, garden 16-D
station, railroad station 3
government 8-D
certainly 18
truth 18
Are you sure?, Is it true? 18-N
politician 18-D
(law) court 10-D
quietly 16-D
a little 8 (see com)
nephew 14-D
niece 14-D
colap

colap-ha-ta (colap-hae)  준업  준업하다: 준업해  graduation  graduates (from) 11

com (Ad)  좀  a little 2

cop-ta (Vi: copa)  좀다: 좀아  is narrow 5-D

cooング사  소용사  pilot 16-G

coh-ta (Vi: coha)  좀다: 좀아  is good, is nice 4

cohaha-ta (Vt: cohahae)  좋아하다: 좋아해  prefers, likes 4

congi  종이  paper 5

Cu  주  State (U.S.) 15

cu-ta (Vt: cuæ)  주다: 주어  gives 4

  Cusipsiyo.  주십시오. Please give [me]. 4

  Ka cusipsiyo.  가 주십시오. Please go (for me). 11

cuil  주일  week 6

cuin  주인  master, owner, my husband

  uli cuin  우리 주인  my husband ('our master') 14-D

cuk-ta (Vi: cukæ)  죽다: 죽어  dies 11-G

culo (Ad)  주로  mainly, mostly 8

cumal  주말  weekend 12-D

cumun  주문  order (of goods, food, etc) 1

  13-D

cunpi  준비  preparation 15-G

cunpi-ha-ta (cunpi-hae)  준비하다: 준비해  prepares for 17-G

cuso  주소  (one's) address 16-D

cuchacang  주차장  parking lot 16-D

543
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Korean Meaning</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cung (PN)</td>
<td>종</td>
<td>among, during 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ki (kas til) cung ese</td>
<td>그(것들) 종에서</td>
<td>among them 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cungang</td>
<td>중앙</td>
<td>center, central 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cungyoha-ta (Vi: cungyohae)</td>
<td>중요하다: 중요해</td>
<td>is important 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cungkuk</td>
<td>중국</td>
<td>China 1-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cungkuk mal</td>
<td>중국 맛</td>
<td>Chinese (language) 1-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cungkuk salam</td>
<td>중국 사방</td>
<td>Chinese (man)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cungkuke</td>
<td>중국어</td>
<td>Chinese (language) 8-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cungtæha-ta (Vi: cungtæhae)</td>
<td>중대하다: 중대해</td>
<td>is important 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cunghakkyo</td>
<td>중학교</td>
<td>junior high school ('middle school') 10-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ci (DN)</td>
<td>지</td>
<td>Do you know where [it] is? 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sti e issnin ci asimnikka'</td>
<td>어디에 있노지 아심니구라요?</td>
<td>since I joined the State Department, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kukmusæng e tile on ci,</td>
<td>국무성에 들어 온지</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ci-ta</td>
<td>지다</td>
<td>gets colder 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuwe ci-ta (chuwe ca)</td>
<td>추위 지다: 추위 저</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cikap</td>
<td>지갑</td>
<td>wallet 16-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cikøp</td>
<td>직업</td>
<td>occupation, profession 18-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cikim</td>
<td>지금</td>
<td>now, present 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cikcang</td>
<td>직장</td>
<td>place of work 18-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cikkong</td>
<td>직공</td>
<td>factory worker, technician 18-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cilki-ta (Vi: cilkie)</td>
<td>지기타: 지기여</td>
<td>is tough 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cilmun</td>
<td>질문</td>
<td>question(iars) 13-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cina-ta (Vi: cina)</td>
<td>지나다: 지나 passes by, gets along</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yocim attohe cinasimnikka?</td>
<td>요즘 어떻게 지나십니까? How are you getting along these days?</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cinan</td>
<td>지난 last, past</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cinan sahil</td>
<td>지난 사흘 last three days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cito</td>
<td>지도 map</td>
<td>2-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cip</td>
<td>집 house, home</td>
<td>2-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce ka</td>
<td>제가 I (polite subject)</td>
<td>17-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cell (Ad)</td>
<td>제일 most, best, No. 1</td>
<td>10-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceil phyßllhamnitta</td>
<td>제일 편리합니다. [It]'s most convenient.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cemi</td>
<td>재미 fun, interest</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sansang in cemi attahsimnikka?</td>
<td>선생은 재미 어땠습니까? And how are YOU doing?</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cemi (ka) issimnita.</td>
<td>재미 가 있습니까. [It]'s interesting.</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geimsi</td>
<td>제임스 James</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cca-ta (Vi: cca)</td>
<td>자자다: 자자 is salty</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ccali (PN)</td>
<td>자자리 worth, value</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o-sip Šen ccali</td>
<td>오십 원 자자리 50 Won worth, W50 bill</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ccalp-ta (Vi: ccalpa)</td>
<td>젤다: 젤어 is short (in length)</td>
<td>10-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ccok (PN)</td>
<td>쪽 side, direction</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wen ccok</td>
<td>왼쪽 the left (side)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i ccok</td>
<td>이쪽 this way</td>
<td>2-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sichang ccok ilo</td>
<td>시청쪽으로 in the direction of the City Hall</td>
<td>2-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ccim (PN)</td>
<td>좌 좌 around, about</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tases si ccim</td>
<td>탑석 시 좌 around 5 o'clock</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ccœ (PN)</td>
<td>좌 좌 the second time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu pan ccœ</td>
<td>두 번 좌 좌</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영어</td>
<td>한국어</td>
<td>번역</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ch</td>
<td>차</td>
<td>car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cha</td>
<td>차</td>
<td>tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cha</td>
<td>차</td>
<td>black tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hongcha</td>
<td>홍차</td>
<td>is cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cha-ta (Vi: cha)</td>
<td>차다: 차</td>
<td>cold water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chan mul</td>
<td>찬물</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chako</td>
<td>차고</td>
<td>garage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cham (Ad)</td>
<td>참</td>
<td>really, very</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cham (Int)</td>
<td>참</td>
<td>By the way, Oh!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chac-ta (Vt: chacø)</td>
<td>찐다: 찐어</td>
<td>looks for, seeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=text</td>
<td>=text</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chacha (Ad)</td>
<td>찰차</td>
<td>gradually</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chang (mun)</td>
<td>창(문)</td>
<td>window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>che</td>
<td>처</td>
<td>my wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheim</td>
<td>처음</td>
<td>first, the first time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheim llo</td>
<td>처음으로</td>
<td>for the first time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chel</td>
<td>처</td>
<td>season</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chæm (P)</td>
<td>처림</td>
<td>like (or just as) New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nyuyok chæm</td>
<td>뉴욕처림</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen (Num Ch)</td>
<td>친</td>
<td>thousand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chænam</td>
<td>처남</td>
<td>brother-in-law ('wife's brother')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chænyø</td>
<td>처녀</td>
<td>maiden, single woman, spinster</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

jamp 13-D

car 14-N

tea 12-D

black tea 10-G

is cold

cold water 12-D

garage 16-D

really, very 9

By the way, Oh! 9-N

looks for, seeks 3

What (place) are you looking for? 3

gradiually 18

window 11-D

my wife 14-D

first, the first time 1

for the first time 7-N

season 18

like (or just as) New York 18

thousand 4

brother-in-law ('wife's brother') 14-D

maiden, single woman, spinster 14-D
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한국어</th>
<th>영어</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>천천히</td>
<td>slowly 11-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>천만</td>
<td>ten-million 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>천만에</td>
<td>of ten-million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>천만에 말씀드립니다.</td>
<td>You're welcome. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>첫</td>
<td>first 7 (see 첫번째)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>첫번째</td>
<td>first, the first 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>첫 번째</td>
<td>the first, the first time 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>처제</td>
<td>wife's younger sister 11-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>처형</td>
<td>wife's older sister 11-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>척다 보다: 척다 바다</td>
<td>looks up to, beholds 12-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>처</td>
<td>끼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>촌</td>
<td>village, rural area 15-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>촌장</td>
<td>president (of university) 16-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>촌대</td>
<td>invitation 13-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>촌각</td>
<td>bachelor, unmarried man 11-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>촌입구</td>
<td>exit-entrance 16-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>촌구</td>
<td>exit 16-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>출</td>
<td>dancing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>출은 추다: 출은 취다</td>
<td>dances 9-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>출다: 추위</td>
<td>is cold 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>출분</td>
<td>sufficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>출분하다: 출분해</td>
<td>is sufficient, is enough 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>칠 (Num Ch)</td>
<td>seven 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KOREAN BASIC COURSE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friend 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relatives 14-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>book 1-G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>book store 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table, desk 2-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choe (family name) 1-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>does 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What do you do (sir)? 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is white 14-N</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>white color 14-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with, and 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with me 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>book and pencil 9-G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semester 10-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>school 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grade (school year), grader</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>student 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scholar 8-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dean (of college) 16-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandfather 13-G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one day, the 1st day of the month 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandmother 14-D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean Word</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>han (D)</td>
<td>한</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>han sam nyŏn</td>
<td>한 삼 년</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>han(a) (Num K)</td>
<td>하나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hanil</td>
<td>하늘</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hansik</td>
<td>한식</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hankuk</td>
<td>한국</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hankuk mal</td>
<td>한국 말</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hankuk salam</td>
<td>한국 사람</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hankuke</td>
<td>한국 어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hanthe (F)</td>
<td>한테</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hapsing</td>
<td>합승</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hapcungkuk</td>
<td>합공국</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭangsan (Ad)</td>
<td>항상</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hangku</td>
<td>항구</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hangsi (Ad)</td>
<td>항상</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḍali</td>
<td>허리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hok (Ad)</td>
<td>흥</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoksi (Ad)</td>
<td>흥시</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hothel</td>
<td>호텔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honca</td>
<td>은자</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hocu</td>
<td>호주</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hongcha</td>
<td>홍차</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hu</td>
<td>후</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hue</td>
<td>후에</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
tehak il colap-han hu e  
대학을 졸업한 후에  
after graduation from the college

hullyungha-ta (Vi: hullyunghæ)  
 multeru holds: muleru he  
is excellent, is outstanding

huchu  
후추  
black pepper

huchu kalu  
후추 가루  
black pepper (power)

hili-ta (Vi: hiliæ)  
히리다: 히리어  
is cloudy

hilkie po-ta (Vi: hilkie pwa)  
흘겨 보다: 흘겨 박  
steers

hi-ta (Vi: hiæ)  
희다: 희어  
is whitish

hæ  
해  
year, sun

musin hæ  
 무슨 해  
what year

hwæ  
해외  
overseas, abroad

hyankim  
현금  
cash

hyonkim ilo  
현금으로  
in cash

hyuka  
휴가  
vacation

Hyuka lil patessìmnita.  
휴가를 밟았습니다.  
[I] took a vacation.

hyæng  
형  
older brother

nyæng nim  
형님  
older brother (honored)

hyængce  
형제  
siblings, brothers and sisters

Hwayoil  
화요일  
Tuesday

Hwalan  
화탄  
Holland

hwesa  
회사  
company, firm
Index to the Grammar Notes

References are to Unit and Grammar Note: for example, 3.1. refers to Unit 3, Grammar Note 1. The alphabetical order of the Index follows that of Korean-English Glossary. The letters which are not used in the Glossary are inserted as follows: D after T; F and Q after P; V after H.

Action Verbs 3.1.
Adverbial Phrases 6.4.
Adverbs 5.3.
an (negative) 'not' 3.4.
Auxiliary Verb 7.6.
ll/lill (Particle) 1.2.
-lle 'in order to-' 6.3. (See -lla.)
ilo (Particle) 2.2. (See lo/llo.)
-allye 7.3.
-allyanye 12.2.
in/nín (Particle) 1.2.
in/kka 'because-', 'since-' 12.1.
(See -ni kka.)
il/ka (Particle) 2.2.
in (Particle) 10.4. (See na.)
Indirect Quotative Particle 17.3.
Infinitive 4.1.
Infinitive + iiss- 14.5.
Infinitive + to 'even though-', 'although-' 10.2.
Infinitive + tu- (or noh-) 16.2.
Infinitive + po- 12.3.
Infinitive + pon lo iiss- 13.2.
Infinitive + sa 14.2.
Infinitive + ci- 18.2.
Infinitive + cu- 11.2.
Interrogative + -in/nín/ci 13.3.
Intransitive Verbs 3.1.
itunci (Particle) 12.4. (See tunci.)
lilato (Particle) 18.5. (See lat.)
innita vs. issimnita 2.5.
e (Particle) 'of', 's' 1.2.
e (Particle) 'at', 'on', 'in' 2.2.
e (Particle) 'to' 3.6.
Endings 2.1. (See Verb-Endings.)
ese (Particle) 'from', 'at', 'in', 'on' 3.5.
ye (Particle) 11.3.
Infinitive + ye + ha- 'has to-', 'must-' 11.3.a.
Infinitive + ye 'only when (or if)-', 'must- to-' 11.3.b.
yo (Particle) 4.4.
wa/kwa (Particle) 4.4.
ka (Particle) 2.2. (See 1/ka.)
kathi (Particle) 18.4.
kacang 'the most-' 10.3.
-ko 9.1.
ko (Particle) 17.3. (See laco.)
-kun yo 18.1. (See -minkun yo.)
-ki 8.1.
-ki con e 'before doing-' 15.2.
-ke 16.3.
kwa (Particle) 4.4. (See wa/kwa.)
kkači (Particle) 'to', 'as far as', 'until', 'till', 'by' 7.5.
taim 15.1. (See hu.)
to (Particle) 'also, too' 4.3.
tinci/tinci (Particle) 12.4.
Time Counters: nyan 'year', he 'year'
-wal 'month', tal 'month', guil
'week', il 'day', na'il 'day', -si
'o'clock', slikan 'hour', pun
'minute' 6.1.

two 'time', 'occasion', 'when' 14.1.
Transitive Verbs 3.1.
Dependent Nouns 13.4.
Description Verbs 3.1.
Determinatives 2.3.
Direct Quotative Particle 17.3.
lako/klo (Particle) 17.3.
lato/llato (Particle) 18.5.
lil (Particle) 1.2. (See al/lil.)
-lil kes i- 1.15.
-lil kyehek i- 'be planning to-' 18.6.
-lil kka yo? 'Shall I-? ', 'Shall we-?',
'Will [it] - (do you think)?' 5.2.
-lil su eps- 'cannot-', 'be unable
to-' 8.3.
-lil su iss- 'can-', 'be able to-' 8.3.
-lil + Nominal 9.3.
llo/llo (Particle) 'to', 'toward' 2.2.
llo/llo (Particle) 'as', 'in the capacity'
'by means of' 7.2.
-lyak 7.3. (See illyak.)
-lyonymen 12.2. (See illyonymen.)
man (Particle) 'only', 'just' 12.5.
mata (Particle) 8.2.
-myen/imyen 'if-' 10.1.
-na/ina 'but' 13.1.
na/ina (Particle) 10.4.
-n/in/nin ka yo? 7.3.
-n/in/nin + kes 11.4.
-n + 11 (or ok) + iss- (or eps-)
'has (or has not), sometime up to
present, done so-and-so' 13.2.
-n/in/nin kes kath- 18.3.
-n/in/nin te 16.1.
-n/in/nin + Noun 5.1.
-n/in/nin ci 16.4.

-n/in ci + period of time + two- (or
cine-) 'It has been-- (period of
time) since--' 15.3.
-n hu e 'after doing-' 15.1.
nin (Particle) 1.2. (See in/nin.)
-nin + tongan 'while doing so-and-
so' 15.4.
-ninkun/kun yo 18.2.
-n1/n1 kka 'since--', 'because--'
12.1.
Nouns 1.3.
Noun phrases 1.3.
Nominal (Expression) 1.3.
Nominal + e the se 'concerning
Nominal', 'about Nominal' 15.5.
Nominal + we (or pakk) e 14.3.
Numeral Phrases 7.1.
Numerals 4.6.
Past Tenses: Simple Past and Remote
Past 4.2.
Past Tense Suffixes 4.2.
Particles 1.2.
Personal Nouns in Polite and Plain
Speeches 17.2.
Personal Nominal + eke (or hanhe)
11.2.
Polite Speech: Formal 2.1.; Informal
4.1.
Possessive Particle 1.2. (See e.)
Post-Nouns 2.4.
pota (Particle) 'than', 'more than'
8.1.
Plain Speech: Formal and Informal
17.1.
Present Noun-Modifier Ending 5.1.
Present Noun-Modifier Words 9.3.
Prospective Modifier Ending 9.3.
Future Tense in Korean 3.2.
Future Tense Suffix 3.2.
Quotatives 17.3.
Suffixes 3.2. (See Verb Suffixes.)
salik 'each', 'at one time' 14.4.
can 'before', 'the previous time' 15.2.
-oi man '—but' 9.2.
-oi + anhaaminite 4.5.
-oi + ma(l) 11.1.
-oi mot ha- 'cannot—', 'is not—' 8.3.
-oi yo? 6.2.
ceil (or kacang) 'the most—' 10.3.
Copula 1.1.
Counter 4.6.
Counters: cang, can, kwan, kee, pun, mali, pal, ta 5.4.
chelam (Particle) 18.4.
hak (Particle) 9.4.
Honorifics 3.3. 11.6.
Honorific Suffix 3.3.
hu (or ta) 'after', 'the later time',
time', 'next' 15.1.
Verbs 1.1.
Verb-Endings 2.1.
Verbs: Action vs. Description and
Intransitive vs. Transitive 3.1.
Verb Phrases 7.6.
Verb-Stems 2.1.
Verb Suffixes 3.2.